

The background of the cover features several stylized, light green leaf motifs scattered across a pale yellow gradient. These motifs are simple, elongated shapes with small leaflets at the ends of short stems.

THE BOER WAR

Historiography and Annotated Bibliography

Fred R. Van Hartesveldt

The logo for Greenwood Publishing Group, featuring a stylized green leaf icon to the left of the company name.

Greenwood
PUBLISHING GROUP

THE BOER WAR

**Recent Titles in
Bibliographies of Battles and Leaders**

General Douglas MacArthur, 1880–1964: Historiography and Annotated Bibliography
Eugene L. Rasor

The Inchon Landing, Korea, 1950: An Annotated Bibliography
Paul M. Edwards

Dangerous Sky: A Resource Guide to the Battle of Britain
Eunice Wilson

The War of the Spanish Succession, 1702–1713
W. Calvin Dickinson and Eloise R. Hitchcock

The War in North Africa, 1940–1943: A Selected Bibliography
Colin F. Baxter

The Battles of the Somme, 1916: Historiography and Annotated Bibliography
Fred R. van Hartesveldt, compiler

Signals Intelligence in World War II: A Research Guide
Donal J. Sexton, Jr., compiler

The Southwest Pacific Campaign, 1941–1945: Historiography and Annotated Bibliography
Eugene L. Rasor

The Solomon Islands Campaign, Guadalcanal to Rabaul: Historiography and Annotated Bibliography
Eugene L. Rasor

The Dardanelles Campaign, 1915: Historiography and Annotated Bibliography
Fred R. van Hartesveldt, compiler

The China-Burma-India Campaign, 1931–1945: Historiography and Annotated Bibliography
Eugene L. Rasor

Field Marshal Bernard Law Montgomery, 1887–1976: A Selected Bibliography
Colin F. Baxter, compiler

THE BOER WAR

Historiography and Annotated Bibliography



Fred R. van Hartesveldt

Bibliographies of Battles and Leaders, Number 24
Myron J. Smith, Jr., *Series Adviser*



Greenwood Press
Westport, Connecticut • London

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Van Hartesveldt, Fred R.

The Boer war : historiography and annotated bibliography / Fred R. van Hartesveldt.

p. cm.—(Bibliographies of battles and leaders, ISSN 1056-7410 ; no. 24)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-313-30627-3 (alk. paper)

1. South African War, 1899-1902—Historiography. 2. South African War, 1899-1902—Bibliography. I. Title. II. Series.

DT1896.V37 2000

968.04'8'072—dc21 00-020398

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data is available.

Copyright © 2000 by Fred R. van Hartesveldt

All rights reserved. No portion of this book may be reproduced, by any process or technique, without the express written consent of the publisher.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 00-020398

ISBN: 0-313-30627-3

ISSN: 1056-7410

First published in 2000

Greenwood Press, 88 Post Road West, Westport, CT 06881

An imprint of Greenwood Publishing Group, Inc.

www.greenwood.com

Printed in the United States of America



The paper used in this book complies with the Permanent Paper Standard issued by the National Information Standards Organization (Z39.48-1984).

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

In order to keep this title in print and available to the academic community, this edition was produced using digital reprint technology in a relatively short print run. This would not have been attainable using traditional methods. Although the cover has been changed from its original appearance, the text remains the same and all materials and methods used still conform to the highest book-making standards.

Contents

<i>Acknowledgments</i>	vii
HISTORIOGRAPHY	
1. Introduction and Historical Background	1
2. Bibliographical Aids, Surveys, Memoirs, and Archival Sources	11
3. The Conventional Military Campaigns	17
4. "The Last of the Gentlemen's Wars"	32
5. Conclusion	40
ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY	43
<i>Index</i>	219

|This page intentionally left blank

Acknowledgments

There are always many people who deserve thanks when a book is finished—more than can be included when making acknowledgments. I appreciate all the help I received, but I must mention a few people who did more than I had any reason to expect. In the Fort Valley State University library, Robbie Walton Robinson dealt cheerfully and efficiently with a torrent of interlibrary loan requests that went on for more than a year. Her colleague Jerry Brown helped with finding elusive references and proofread much of the final manuscript. Professor B. Keith Murphy also proofed and made comments about the manuscript. My wife, Mary Ann, not only provided emotional support but also helped with library searches, proofing, and indexing. Without her I would not have finished. These people and many others tried to make me improve my work, and I tried. Where I have failed, it is my own fault.

|This page intentionally left blank

HISTORIOGRAPHY

|This page intentionally left blank



Chapter 1

Introduction and Historical Background

The centennial of the Boer War provides an impetus to assess the current state of historical interpretation concerning that conflict. In South Africa the war has significant nationalist overtones, while for the British, despite ultimate victory, it still engenders debate about what went wrong. Heroes and villains have been passionately attacked and defended on each side. It remains common for South African authors to label the 1899-1902 conflict the second war for freedom. The first was, of course, the brief passage of arms in 1881 when a small British Army force was humiliated at Majuba Hill and London chose to make peace. It is the purpose of this book to examine changes in interpretations and to provide an annotated listing of the major sources for the study of the Boer, or now more commonly, South African War. (Researchers should note that indexers and catalogers often make different lists under these two names and fail to cross-reference them.)

This book has two sections. First, in chapters one through five, there is a discussion of historiography in which the changing ideas about the war are examined and at least the more significant works in which the changes are expressed acknowledged. These works are cited by giving their numbers (in square brackets) from the annotated bibliography—the second section of the book. In the bibliography, the intention is to give the original publication data for each work. Subsequent editions and reprints, when identified, are noted by date, following the original copyright. Concurrent publications—English, American, South African editions for instance—though they may vary slightly in date, have not been indicated.

Some limits on content were necessary. As part of Greenwood Press's Battles and Leaders Series, the book focuses especially on military history. The available space prevented the inclusion of works concerning the political debates over the virtues of the war. To include the international outpouring of comment threatened to more than double the number of sources listed. Such debates do

have some limited significance for military history insofar as they influence decisions about the conduct of the war. British military authorities were only a little influenced by foreign comment but sometimes had to listen to critics at home. This led to the inclusion of some historical accounts of the political debate, especially those providing significant bibliographical information. The hope is to give those interested in such topics a starting point, to provide those interested in them as part of military history what they need, but not to overwhelm the bibliography with such entries. In Britain, the moral and political debate was often carried on through pamphlets. Several thousand were published. Fortunately, there is a bibliographical reference for this literature; it is discussed in Chapter 2.

Historical Background

Human events much less complicated than wars have long roots. It would be easy to argue that the Boer War began at the end of the Napoleonic era, when the British assumed final control over Cape Colony. Perhaps for the sake of succinctness, the beginning could be moved to the 1830s, when the Boers—the white residents descended from the original Dutch settlers and some others—moved north in the Great Trek to escape British intrusion, especially the elimination of slavery. British authorities saw no compelling reason to prevent this move, and the Boers, in a series of bloody conflicts with the Zulu and other indigenous people, carved out independent republics—the South African Republic (or Transvaal) and the Orange Free State. In the 1840s and 1850s, Boers, British, and natives struggled for control. In 1852 Britain acknowledged the Transvaal's independence by the Sand River Convention, but continued to annex territory in the region. How much the growing British interest in the area had to do with the 1867 discovery of diamonds along the Orange River may be wondered, but in 1871 the British annexed the diamond region—to the outrage of the Orange Free State. Some efforts at federation failed and in 1875 the Orange Free State's claims were officially settled by a payment of £90,000 (it is worth noting that by 1890 £39,000,000 worth of diamonds were mined).

Then in 1877, ignoring the Sand River Convention, Britain annexed the South African Republic [No. 746]. Boer protests, led by Paul Kruger, were in vain. The late 1870s found the British at war with black Africans, especially the Zulu, and despite the embarrassment of Isandhlwana, increasing their control of Southern Africa. The Boers continued to object. In 1879 the Afrikaner Bond [No. 294], a relatively moderate political party, led by Jan Hofmeyr rallied much of the Cape Colony in opposition to English as the official language and in the longer-term hope of reduction of British influence. The Transvaal, on December 30, 1880, reasserted its independence. A British force was defeated at Laing's Nek in January, 1881, and another humiliated on Majuba Hill at the end of February [Nos. 188, 214, 537, 735, 1035]. The government in London, controlled by the

Liberal Party under William E. Gladstone, perhaps for ideological reasons and certainly for fiscal ones, was unwilling to contest the issue. On April 5, the Treaty of Pretoria was signed recognizing the independence of the South African Republic, under the undefined "suzerainty" of Great Britain.

At this same time new powers were emerging to complicate the situation. Barnato Diamond Mining and De Beers Mining Corporation were organizing the diamond business. The latter was run by Cecil Rhodes and Alfred Beit, who were to play notable roles in the immediate causes of the war of 1899-1902. Natives renewed their militant resistance to British control. Germany, seeking its place in the sun, moved into the area, and the Boers established possession of two areas in Bechuanaland. Neither imperialist sentiments nor profitable business interests are likely to be dampened by competition. Challenged the British again began to expand control of the area, but by the Convention of London (1884), although the Transvaal agreed to yield its claims in Bechuanaland, the claim of suzerainty was not mentioned. Whether this represented a withdrawal of that claim or a failure to reiterate, was a key question for the future. Competition continued, and urged on by Rhodes, London began extending protection to native chiefs against Germany and also blocked an effort by the Boers to secure a republic in Zululand that would guarantee them access to the sea. Perhaps the ultimate issue was introduced in 1886 with the discovery of gold on the Witwatersrand, triggering a rush, including large numbers of foreigners or Uitlanders to the Boers, and action by Rhodes to extend both his economic and imperialistic aspirations. Rhodes soon convinced London to grant his chartered South Africa Company extensive powers north of the Transvaal, hoping to force the Transvaal into more cooperation. In July, 1890, Rhodes became prime minister of the Cape Colony. Through his Chartered Company Rhodes had already added enormous areas—Rhodesia—to British holdings in Southern Africa. He dreamed of a Cape to Cairo railroad and even British control of the entire continent.

During the early 1890s the British continued to expand their influence in Southern Africa, although their control often remained indirect, as with Rhodes' holdings. Rhodes suggested to President Kruger that the Transvaal join a customs union with the other South African states, and when refused, began to stir up Uitlander discontent in Johannesburg. In June, 1895, Britain annexed Tongoland blocking Transvaal's last potential access directly to the sea, though the opening of the Delagoa Bay Railroad the next month did provide Johannesburg with an outlet through Portuguese territory free of any direct British interference. The growing tension was exemplified in a dispute over shipping rates and efforts by Kruger to block goods coming from the Cape to force use of the new rail line. The confrontation was resolved only when Kruger yielded to a British ultimatum. November 11, 1895, at the instigation of Rhodes, British Bechuanaland was added to the Cape Colony. Eventually he got London to grant his company control of a strip of land along the western border of the South African Republic—supposedly for a railroad. It would be the launching pad for a raid, which was to become the

first military action of what became the Boer War of 1899-1902.

The plan was to take advantage of grievances of the Uitlanders—who were portrayed in England as subjects of the Queen but who in reality were a mixed group, many of whom had found wealth in the gold fields. There really was some discrimination. The newcomers were denied suffrage by long residence requirements, paid extra taxes, and faced high costs due to government controlled monopolies. Most hated of the latter was that on dynamite. As will be seen, however, the situation was more complicated than the raid's proponents were inclined to admit.

In theory the planned raid was to be led by Rhodes' employee/confidant Leander Starr Jameson [Nos. 86, 257, 411, 436, 690, 1102]. It was to be a response to a call for help from Uitlanders, who were to initiate a revolt in Johannesburg. Jameson's paramilitary group was to enter the Transvaal, ensure the revolt's success, and the British High Commissioner at the Cape, Sir Hercules Robinson, would step in to arrange a compromise that would ensure British control. Who was in the know, when, and to what extent, remain matters of much historical debate.

The Raid was launched on December 29, 1896. Jameson knew events in Johannesburg had not gone as planned, but he was Rhodes' man and only Rhodes could stop him. Jameson has been accused of acting against orders [Nos. 191, 581]. Rhodes did send a telegram telling him to stop, but it arrived too late. Anthony Thomas [No. 1218] makes a case that the lateness was deliberate. He suggests Rhodes was willing to make the desperate effort, but wanted to be able to deny responsibility for problems. The Raid was a dismal failure. The raiders were quickly rounded up. There was no general uprising, and the leaders of the effort in Johannesburg were arrested. The Uitlanders seem to have been less committed than the raiders believed and started backing out when it became clear that Rhodes would insist on British government—they had hoped to take over themselves [Nos. 636, 1218]. Rhodes was forced to resign as Prime Minister of Cape Colony, and Jameson, at the demand of London, was tried by the British and given a light sentence. The Johannesburg conspirators paid heavy fines but escaped other punishments. A number of them were needed in the gold fields to keep mines producing. The political results were, from London's point of view, unfortunate. The Transvaal and Orange Free State signed a military alliance. The Transvaal enacted more restrictions on the Uitlanders. Kruger's reputation was enhanced, and his government had an unarguable reason to arm. The Cape Dutch and British were more divided, with the former tending to increase their support of Kruger.

The political fallout in London, which could also have been serious, was mitigated by a telegram sent by Kaiser William II congratulating Kruger on his government's successful resistance to foreign intervention. What might well have been regarded as a shameful, possibly government-sanctioned, intrusion in the affairs of a small state was turned into an incident of great power rivalry.

Nationalist-imperialist feelings diverted attention from responsibility and produced support for the raiders. Though not seen so by the British at the time, some contemporaries like Jan Smuts and some subsequent scholars have, in fact, regarded the Raid as effectively the declaration of war [Nos. 561, 562, 990, 1161, 1284].

Historians analyzing the Raid and the events leading up to it have made a number of interpretations. The strong Afrikaner position, really an indictment of Britain, was powerfully asserted by W. J. Leyds [Nos. 746-47]. The Uitlander view is put by John Hays Hammond [Nos. 556-58; see also 215, 399-400, 738, 976, 1008, 1291], an American mining engineer who was part of the Johannesburg committee, the group that was supposed to organize the revolt. A defense of British policy before the Raid can be found in a number of early works many including Conan Doyle [No. 338], Bryce [Nos. 161-62], Rider Haggard [No. 537] P. Fitzpatrick [Nos. 346, 399-400], Nixon [No. 925], and Hammond [Nos. 556-58]. Such defenses tend to see the British efforts at control in the 1870s and 1880s as motivated by honest concerns about improving life in Southern Africa for whites and blacks alike. Such early comment about the Jameson Raid itself tended to accept at face value the complaints of the Uitlanders—they were denied civil rights and faced with economic disabilities. In this scenario, Jameson and Rhodes were heroes who stood up for the rights of Englishmen, and Kruger was an ignorant backwoodsman who stood forthrightly against the development of civilization. Some early analysts, however, such as P. E. Aston, who published in 1898 [No. 27], did acknowledge that the English had some responsibility and thought that London should have acted to prevent any long-term trouble.

Although it made patriotic Englishmen happy, this line of argument was simplistic and questions were soon being asked about the degree of Rhodes's involvement and the possible complicity of the government in London—especially that of Joseph Chamberlain, Colonial Secretary. A Parliamentary Select Committee and Chamberlain's early biographers [Nos. 658, 808] exonerated him and insisted that he simply had no idea about the Raid or the planning for it. The investigation was in part blocked by missing telegrams between Chamberlain and Rhodes's people, which may have been used to blackmail the minister into helping protect the charter of the South Africa Company [Nos. 1056, 1218, 1357]. As Colonial Minister Chamberlain was also directly involved in Parliament's work and the validity of the investigation has been questioned. Jean Van der Poel [No. 990], widely credited with doing the most thorough job of research into the Raid, dismisses the Parliamentary conclusion as a deliberate misrepresentation. Jeffrey Butler, in his excellent study of the Liberal Party and the Raid [No. 184], suggests that the Opposition was complicit in the cover-up for a number of political reasons. These include concern about Britain's great power rivalries and the desire not to cause too much trouble; Liberal leaders'—especially Lord Rosebery—ties to Rhodes; and a belief that Parliamentary Committees were not supposed to be grand juries out to indict. Peter Stansky argues that Sir William Harcourt, a key

Liberal Leader, was simply outmaneuvered by his friend Chamberlain, who was better at politics.

Assessments of Chamberlain's personal responsibility also changed. For much of the first half of the century, he was defended, most powerfully by his official biographer James L. Garvin [No. 439] and R. C. K. Ensor in his volume [No. 371] of the influential Oxford History of England [see also No. 973]. However, by the late 1930s there were more and more questions. Cecil Headlam [No. 581] Marshall Hole [No. 609], Marjory Juta [No. 670] Eric Walker [No. 1284] and C. W. De Kiewiet [No. 311] all suggested that Chamberlain did, in fact, have a degree of personal responsibility. None made him the central villain.

The work of Jean Van der Poel in the middle of the twentieth century powerfully asserted that Chamberlain was part and parcel of the plot behind the Raid. This idea got very strong support from several articles by Ethel Drus [Nos. 341-43; see also No. 1052], and few since that time have argued that the Colonial Secretary was entirely innocent—Rayne Kruger [No. 708] is an exception—but his degree of guilt has continued to be questioned. Philip Magnus [No. 801], who thinks Chamberlain knew about the general planning for a revolt of the Uitlanders but not of the Raid itself, notes that he was saved by the Kaiser sending his note of support to Kruger. Outrage in England rallied support behind the raiders and diverted questions about blame. J. S. Marais [No. 808] and Richard H. Wilde [No. 1319] are also convinced of Chamberlain's complicity, but the first is more restrained in criticisms of Chamberlain.

The Colonial Secretary does have some recent stronger defenders, however. J.A.R. Grenville [No. 519], Peter Fraser [No. 416], and jointly Ronald Robinson and John Gallagher [No. 1064] have all given Chamberlain some benefit of the doubt. Elizabeth Pakenham (later Longford) [No. 953], although critical of Chamberlain, does make the distinction, common for politicians of that day, between private and official knowledge, the former not being expected to affect policy [see also Nos. 1056, 668]. Robert Kubicek [No. 711] argues that due to the administrative structure of late 19th century government and the communications available, Chamberlain could not control events in South Africa.

Although continuing research has made it clear that Chamberlain knew more than he admitted, barring some new source of information his guilt will almost certainly remain in doubt. More detailed examinations of Chamberlain's role will be supported by Scott Newton and Dilwin Porter's bibliography of works concerning the Colonial Secretary [No. 923], and even more so, by Melvin Holli's excellent article "Joseph Chamberlain and the Jameson Raid: A Bibliographical Survey" [No. 610].

There is no question that Cecil Rhodes, whom Butler calls a "Robber Baron," was involved. J. A. Hobson [Nos. 604-05] offered the first influential interpretation arguing that Rhodes' motives were primarily economic. More recently scholars such as Jean Van der Poel [No. 990] and J. S. Marais [No. 808] shifted the focus to political-imperial considerations [see also Nos. 1064, 1218,

1056]. J. G. Lockhart and C. M. Woodhouse in their extensively researched account [No. 756] agree that political considerations were primary and suggest that by 1895 Rhodes was ill—perhaps sensing his own death—and impatient. The result was a rashness that led to the Raid. Others, however, suggest that such rashness had long been a hallmark of Rhodes' policy in Africa [No. 1034, 1218]. G. Blainey in a 1965 article [No. 104], however, reasserted the economic issues arguing that deep level mining was very expensive and the Transvaal government's tax and monopoly policies discriminated against it. He puts some of the blame on Rhodes but suggests that Alfred Beit, although usually portrayed as a supporter of Rhodes, was really more at fault.

After the Raid, the cast that would play out the drama of the origins of the 1899-1902 war was quickly assembled on the stage. In 1897, Sir Alfred Milner became British High Commissioner in Cape Colony. His instructions were to seek a peaceful resolution to the problems of the region, but within a year he had become convinced that war was necessary. His opponent, Paul Kruger, was, at the beginning of 1898, re-elected president of the South African Republic for another five year term. Kruger's victory ended Milner's hope that more moderate Afrikaner political forces would gain control of the country and ease restrictions on the Uitlanders. Kruger regarded them as a threat to his nation because, if given the vote, their numbers might soon give them control of elections.

The re-election of Kruger also led to increased Uitlander agitation, which helped convince Milner that force was necessary to resolve the dispute. In the winter of 1898, he visited London to urge his militancy on the apparently reluctant Chamberlain. While he was away, his substitute, General William Butler [No. 189, 782], refused to accept a petition from the South African League, which had been formed after the Raid to promote ties between Britain and South Africa, seeking redress for the Uitlanders. Milner was appalled, denounced him as pro-Boer, and worked for his removal. In March of 1899, the South African League sent, with Milner's cooperation, a petition with more than 21,000 signatures to Queen Victoria outlining Uitlander grievances. On May 4, 1899, Milner sent his infamous "Helot Despatch" comparing the condition of the Uitlanders to that of helots in classical Sparta. Through the good offices of President M. J. Steyn of the Orange Free State, Milner and Kruger met at the Bloemfontein Conference, May 29-June 5, 1899. Milner, rejecting what seem to have been limited but actual compromise suggestions from Kruger, proposed that Uitlanders of five years residence be granted suffrage. Kruger refused. His fundamentalist religious views made him regard his nation as "God's people." Their domination of the Transvaal was, he believed, divinely sanctioned and might be imperiled by hordes of new voters. After some further discussion, the conference was dissolved by Milner (just before a message from Chamberlain urging more negotiation arrived) with no resolution. Both sides were left feeling that the other had not acted in particularly good faith. Milner continued to urge military action on London, but publically the government seemed inclined to peace. Chamberlain may have been

supportive behind the scenes, but there were virtually no preparations made for war. Most scholars think it is fairly clear that to this point the Cabinet was not inclined to fight, but Andrew Porter has argued that silence meant consent to the Milner-Chamberlain line. The occasional notes of hesitance in the Cabinet, often taken as being the tips of icebergs of dissent, he takes as minor questions [No. 996].

Then in July, Jan Smuts, State Attorney of the Transvaal, arranged to renew the proposal of franchise after seven years, and London, clearly believing a peaceful settlement was now possible, proposed a joint enquiry into this arrangement. Kruger countered the suggested enquiry by offering a five year residency requirement in return for a formal repudiation of suzerainty. Such a formal repudiation of authority was more than Chamberlain and his Cabinet colleagues would stomach (Smuts had apparently hoped to make arrangements more informally to achieve the same results.) When the new offer was rejected, Kruger refused to continue negotiations. Chamberlain called for an ultimatum, but the Cabinet opted to propose Kruger's own earlier terms and send 10,000 soldiers to South Africa. Kruger denounced the British as unreasonable. Kruger was now convinced that the British would have the Transvaal one way or another and London that Kruger intended a South African confederation with complete removal of British control. Recently, Iain Smith [No. 1161] has rejected the assertion of Kruger's dominance, arguing that many Afrikaners disagreed with Kruger and his policies and that the idea of a confederation was a myth used by the British to create a false appearance of unity in their opponents.

Interpretations of what inspired the various decisions and controversies have abounded. Some participants and some scholars [Nos. 260, 556-58, 678] have emphasized the conflict between the Uitlanders and the Boer political leadership, while others have insisted that the war was, on the British side, essentially a defensive effort to oppose the unenlightened elements in what they call Krugerism [Nos. 312, 371, 1282]. J. A. Hobson, in perhaps the most widely known analysis [Nos. 604-05], puts the blame for the crisis squarely on the mining magnates and the British government for seeking to support their economic prosperity. Jan Smuts [No. 1046], at the time, regarded the war as a function of capitalist struggle. The idea of the magnates being the cause has been much criticized, and many scholars such as G.H.L. Le May [No. 737], Iain Smith [No. 1161], A. N. Porter [No. 995], and J. S. Marais [No. 808] insist that the magnates learned their lesson about keeping hands off from the Jameson Raid, and that the pressure on the Boers was really part of expansive imperialism—the Cape to Cairo concept—and would have occurred gold or not. The real effort to get the gold came later, they say, for in 1899 London was the financial capital of the world. The gold would wind up there in any case, and there was no profit in fighting for it. J. S. Marais, in *The Fall of Kruger's Republic* [No. 808], argues strongly that in fact it was the British authorities who were using the magnates to mask their efforts at conquest. According to this thesis, Kruger was actually willing to

compromise on the economic issues, and as Smith says, Kruger was really only inclined to a hard line on those financial matters—control of railroads and the dynamite monopoly—that he thought, perhaps misunderstanding capitalist business practices, vital to independence [see also 654, 811, 711, 995]. G.H.L. Le May [No. 737] has also offered evidence that the decisions that produced war in 1899 were made by imperial minded officials in London, not businessmen in South Africa. The argument that the motive was imperialism has been effectively made, but without the mines there would have been no rush of Uitlanders into the Transvaal, the Boers would have had few resources with which to arm themselves, and the British little reason or excuse to want more than vague suzerainty and communication across the Transvaal.

Beyond the economic and imperial forces, the debate about causes of the war boils down to three men: Paul Kruger, Alfred Milner, and Joseph Chamberlain. Each has been accused of rigid insistence on his own position and thus of causing the war. For Kruger [Nos. 126, 225, 246, 356, 395, 611, 670, 709, 758, 790, 842, 912, 1127, 1157, 1183, 1257] the issue was preserving Boer control of the Transvaal in the face of a flood of immigrants (Uitlanders) seeking wealth in the gold fields. Pressure to allow the newcomers civil rights seemed to him an effort to take electoral control from the very people who, along with their ancestors, had sacrificed to create the country. It cannot be denied that the government, which he dominated, continued to discriminate politically via the residency requirements for suffrage and economically by unequal taxation and granting monopolies. British and the Uitlanders did not understand that the most Boers did not care about the wealth from the gold mines and just wanted to be left alone. Better understanding might have helped avoid problems, but such attitudes were incomprehensible to most of the human race. Furthermore, Iain Smith [No. 1161] has suggested that Kruger was attempting to compromise with the owners—though he may not have fully understood their capitalist goals—only to find that concessions were met with new demands. Furthermore, Kruger was unsympathetic to British feelings that blacks should be given at least some degree of civil rights, an issue of significant importance to Milner [No. 185, 926, 1218].

The Englishmen involved were more complicated. Chamberlain [Nos. 416, 439, 651, 658, 668, 816-17, 1319] abandoned the Liberal Party, of which he was the rising star, over the question of Ireland. To the surprise of many, he took the Colonial Office when the Conservative (or with the Liberal supporters of retaining Ireland included Unionist) Party took office. He had a vision of what the empire might be and that certainly included South Africa. Thus many scholars argue [No. 813] his concern was really preserving British supremacy, and he cared little about the problems of the Uitlanders and only indirectly about the gold. Robert Kubicek and some others think that he was not able, for a variety of reasons, to control the situation and that Milner dominated the decision making.

Milner is harder to read. He arrived in South Africa in 1897 as High Commissioner, with instructions to calm the storm produced by the Jameson Raid.

Initially he tried, but perhaps due to misunderstanding the situation or from excessive devotion to British imperialism, he was soon inclined to forceful measures. Milner regarded race as a key element. He asserted that if the rights of the black population were ignored, problems in South Africa could easily be resolved. Jeffrey Butler [No. 185], however, questions this analysis and suggests that the real problem was Milner's commitment to a unified—even if essentially autonomous—South Africa. He did not really question the idea of white rule, but wanted to influence which whites were in power. Then, as Eric Stokes [No. 1196] suggests a new, "better," South Africa could be created. J. S. Marais in *The Fall of Kruger's Republic* has argued that along with Chamberlain, Milner was primarily concerned with British supremacy in South Africa and that Kruger was determined to build up an independent power which had to be stopped by diplomacy if possible and force if necessary. Once Kruger became convinced that London intended to have control over the Transvaal, he issued the ultimatum that led to war. The significance of British aggressiveness among the causes of the war is firmly emphasized by G. D. Scholtz [No. 1114] and J. H. Breytenbach [No. 140]. P. R. Botha [No. 126] has also considered the intrusion of the British into South African affairs, looking particularly at political manipulation intended to undermine the autonomy of the South African Republic.

Iain Smith [No. 1161], though he agrees that the immediate cause of the war was London's insistence on more control in South Africa, also rejects the idea there was any conspiracy to create a united South Africa, suggesting the idea is a myth created by the British so that the war could be blamed on the Boers. He sees the war as resulting from economic struggles, with Milner as the central figure defending the mine owners. He and A. N. Porter [No. 995] have discussed Milner's role in manipulating the press in an attempt to get the Uitlanders to fall in line with the pro-British effort.

G.H.L. Le May [No. 737] and Thomas Pakenham [No. 954] have put much more of the blame on Milner [see also No. 711]. Pakenham accuses him of intending to see South Africa under British rule with himself as London's agent, and of being complicit with gold magnates such as Alfred Beit and Julius Wernher in this plan. Sarah Millin [No. 865] says that Milner had decided on war before meeting Kruger at the Bloemfontein Conference in 1899 and had no intention of negotiating in good faith. Edgar Holt [No. 613], on the other hand, defends Milner as honestly seeking a peaceful compromise. It would have been foolishness in the extreme to have intrigued for a war when the British Army was neither prepared nor preparing to fight one. Le May argues that Milner had convinced Chamberlain that British supremacy was in jeopardy and Chamberlain had in turn convinced the Cabinet. Milner's aggressive attitude also gave Kruger the clear sense that it was fight or lose his nation's independence. The attitude is clear in the "helot" dispatch, and whatever the intentions of individuals, the result was war.



Chapter 2

Bibliographical Aids, Surveys, Memoirs, and Archival Sources

There are some bibliographical aids available for the study of the Boer War. The School of Librarianship at the University of Cape Town has issued a number of short bibliographies concerning various aspects of the situation [Nos. 81, 685, 876]. These are useful but not easy to acquire. More accessible but more general is *South African History: A Bibliographical Guide with Special Reference to Territorial Expansion and Colonization* by Naomi and Reuben Musiker [No. 906]. This volume includes a section concerning the war, which is particularly helpful with sources in Afrikaans, and provides a variety of references for background reading in South African history. The breadth of focus means that the volume is far from a complete bibliography of the war, however, and it was not intended to include the British side.

Ronald G. Hackett's *The South African War, 1899-1902. An Illustrated Bibliography of English Language Publications Relating to the Boer War of 1899-1902* [No. 535] is obviously a work of love. Hackett's amazing compilation has thousands of entries, but his criteria for selection are in some ways more those of an antiquarian than a historian. He is, for instance, interested in the nature of title pages, and works included are contemporary, or close to, with the war. His list is dominated by pamphlets. These are often political and/or moral diatribes about the issues of the war and of more value for the study of British domestic politics and attitudes than of the military situation in South Africa. Such pamphlets could not have been included in the present volume due to availability of space, but Hackett's work makes their inclusion unnecessary. Despite its limitations, *The South African War* is an extraordinary work that makes the study of some aspects of the war much easier than ever before.

There are other bibliographies and guides that are worth consulting, but these are mostly badly outdated and/or mostly focused on more general topics than the war [Nos. 536, 663, 851, 897, 907, 1216, 1224-25]. None of these are of enormous value for the modern military historian. Consulting the Musikers for

background reading, Hackett for the pamphlet material if that is needed, and the present volume, will provide any researcher with all necessary references and far more than could actually be consulted.

General surveys are commonly the introduction to the study of a subject and in many cases the only account a student ever reads. Their authors, therefore, often have significant influence on how a particular topic is viewed by general and even scholarly readers. The Boer War, a relatively small conflict in a confined and out-of-the-way place, has generated many more such overviews than most colonial conflicts. There are some clear reasons for the attention. Many of the early studies were by soldiers interested in the first conflict with modern artillery, machine guns, and bolt-action magazine-fed rifles on both sides and seeking to learn for the future [see Nos. 118, 420, 585, 726, 732, 763, 802, 1018,]. Unfortunately, the general conclusions were that modern weaponry had been misapplied by the British Army, frontal assaults dependant on manpower rather than firepower could break entrenched enemy lines, and in all too many cases, cavalry would still be the shock weapon. The price for such conclusions was paid in blood by the Germans at Verdun, the French in the Nivelle offensive, and the British at the Somme. Although often filled with details about military operations, such studies by soldiers seem to have been read mostly by other soldiers and their general influence has been limited.

Englishmen had other reasons to examine the Boer War. The army of the world's greatest empire had been initially humiliated and then successfully resisted for more than two years by a rabble in arms. Something had gone badly amiss, and explanations, sung by the "pro-Boers," based on the simple frontier virtues and field craft of the Boers were not satisfying. Had something of the determination that had made the Victorian master of large parts of the globe been lost? The Official History [No. 830] ran to four volumes of text and started appearing in 1906. It provides extensive detail, but is often inclined to advocate British points-of-view. The authors, for instance, have a tendency to accept exaggerated estimates of Boer forces when explaining British defeats. Furthermore, in the way of official documents, it is bland and not inclined to passionate advocacy. *The Times History of the War in South Africa* edited by Leo Amery [No. 12] is six volumes of text and openly opinionated. Much more fun to read than the Official History, it is far more commonly cited. Amery is nationalistic and asserts that the Boers were the cause of the war and accepts uncritically charges against them for mistreatment of British subjects—the Uitlanders. He is quite critical of the British military, which due to outnumbering the Boers should have crushed them. Amery is particularly hard on Redvers Buller, for whom he appears to have had a personal dislike. As the usual source for basic factual information, the influence of *The Times History* has been considerable. Although the continuing value of both these works for details cannot be denied, their interpretations should be used cautiously.

Arthur Conan Doyle, best known for the Sherlock Holmes mysteries, was

a doctor serving in South Africa during the war. His account, *The Great Boer War* [No. 338] was initially published in 1900 in the assumption that the fall of Pretoria to British forces marked the conclusion of the military aspects of the conflict. It was extended to cover the rest of the war later. Despite having some value for details of military operations, the book is filled with nationalistic bias. Since the details are easily available elsewhere, there seems little reason to consult Doyle, but his fame for other works continues to make his history noticeable. A much more judicious early survey was written by the American military historian Alfred Thayer Mahan [No. 802], though he does not delve in detail into the controversies concerning causes.

Recent surveys have more to recommend them. A series of volumes collectively titled *Die Geskiedenis van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog in Suid-Afrika, 1899-1902* [No. 137] by J. H. Breytenbach is thoroughly researched and despite some tendency to be pro-Boer may, when finished, be regarded as the definitive history. Unfortunately, Breytenbach's work is not translated. Although the tendency of Boer partisans to write about what for them is their war for independence in their own language is hardly unreasonable, Afrikaans is not widely read. The lack of a translation denies this extensive study to the much larger English-reading community that is interested in the Boer War. It is hoped that the lack will soon be corrected.

There are some excellent modern surveys, though none as extensive as Breytenbach's, available in English. Edgar Holt's *The Boer War* [No. 613] is clear and well-organized. Holt's emphasis, however, is on the first half of the war, and although the guerrilla phase is not omitted, details are few. His failure to provide documentation is also frustrating. *Goodbye Dolly Gray: The Story of the Boer War* by Rayne Kruger [No. 708] is the best survey for the military history of the conflict. Kruger has a bit of pro-Boer flavor to his interpretations, and like Holt does not give much attention to concentration camps, POWs, and such controversial issues in the second half of the war. Given his focus on military activity, this is less of a flaw than with Holt. Published within a few years of each other, *The Boer War* by Thomas Pakenham [No. 954] and *The Great Anglo-Boer War* by Byron Farwell [No. 381] vie with one another for the status of being the best English language survey of the war. There are some differences. Farwell is more popular—fewer citations—and a bit more readable, but Pakenham is certainly not difficult to read and offers more interpretive revision than Farwell. It was Pakenham, for instance, who initiated the rehabilitation of the reputation of Redvers Buller, which his most recent biographer [No. 1000] has somewhat overdeveloped. The last three survey accounts mentioned are still available in paperback editions, although the most recent is more than twenty years old. Such availability is a testimony to the quality of the authors' writing and the continued interest in the South African War. Finally, *The South African War* edited by Peter Warwick [No. 1296] is a superior work. The essays included, all by excellent scholars, are so wide-ranging that a military historian is likely to read selectively

in the volume. As a compilation of what was known in 1980 about the entire complex of issues involved in the British-South African conflict, Warwick's volume has no rival. There are a few other shorter survey histories that provide effective introductions to the war. See for instance Nos. [Nos. 51, 68, 85, 444, 667, 684, 808, 1132]. Bill Nasson's *The South African War* [No. 909a] is an important contribution to the survey literature but appeared too late to be included in this discussion.

In addition to full surveys, there are a number of books that cover significant parts of the conflict or authors whose collected works do more than any single survey, other than Breytenbach's, who deserve mention in the context of general studies. In the latter category Johannes Meintjes is most notable. Meintjes has written numerous biographies about Boer leaders and other sorts of monographs about the war [Nos. 838-44]. His work, though from the Boer perspective, is scholarly and generally evenhanded. A.W.G. Raath's series [Nos. 1021-26] concerning the concentration camps, none of the volumes translated, provides an in-depth look at a particular and quite controversial subject. Julian Symons' *Buller's Campaign* [No. 1212] provides a significant amount of background concerning the British Army as well as a clear account of the campaign to relieve Ladysmith. For an understanding of the military background and the initial, some would say decisive, campaign of the war, Symons' book is a good choice. W. Baring Pemberton's *Battles of the Boer War* [No. 965] is misnamed. Like Symons, his account is only of the Natal campaign in the first part of the war. He argues that this campaign, due more to Boer mistakes than British successes, made the outcome inevitable, and so there is no need to study subsequent encounters to understand the result. Unless one notes the dates, the title of Owen Coetzer's *The Anglo-Boer War: The Road to Infamy, 1899-1900* [No.250] is also misleading. The book is also concerned with the early battles and is an effort to defend Sir Charles Warren, an interesting if not entirely successful effort at revision.

Firsthand accounts of the war are numerous and varied. On the Boer side, Christiaan De Wet's *Three Years' War* [No. 326] is an excellent work with details of life as a soldier as well as a leader of the Boers. *Commando* by Deneys Reitz [No. 1043] ranks among the classic war journals. It is the sort of memoir that is read for pleasure. Although not as well written, Dietlof Van Warmelo's *On Commando* [No. 1260] is also a useful account of the Boer military experience. J. D. Kestell's *Through Shot and Flame* [No. 681] gives a very real sense of the Boers and their leaders, from the perspective of a chaplain. In *An English South African's View of the Situation* [No. 1122] Olive Schreiner offers the unusual perspective of an English resident of South Africa critical of both sides in the dispute. Victor Pohl's *The Adventures of a Boer Family* [No. 991] puts a human face on the Boers and includes both military and civilian life, with some emphasis on the willingness to sacrifice for victory. Pohl's book makes an interesting contrast to R. N. Currey's *Vinnicomb's Trek* [No. 286]. Currey has compiled from

family records the saga of a burgher of English origins who tried to refuse military service. In this telling the conflict seems more like a civil war than is usually the case. Other important memoirs of political and military leaders include those of Paul Kruger [No. 709], Ben Viljoen [No. 1269-70], and Jan Smuts [No. 651, 1167]. [see also Nos. 323, 595-96, 608, 680, 682, 807, 828, 858, 898, 988, 1004-05, 1020, 1108, 1112, 1217, 1236, 1261, 1273.]

On the British side, consideration of eyewitness accounts must start—due to fame if not quality—with Winston Churchill's two volumes [Nos. 236-37] which were based on his experience and writing as a war correspondent. Reading Churchill is never dull and often instructive. He rarely wrote merely to instruct, however, and it is notable that his wartime praise for Redvers Buller was reversed in his later *My Early Life* [No. 238]. Whether study and contemplation had led him to more accurate conclusions or he had trimmed to the prevailing breeze of criticism of Buller cannot be known. He remains for all his flaws worth reading.

Other than Churchill, there are few British memoirs that approach the literary merit of the better ones written by Boers, and not all autobiographical accounts can be regarded as of much value. R.S.S. (later Lord) Baden-Powell, famed for his involvement with the organization of the Boy Scouts, wrote a number of accounts [Nos. 40-41] of his command during the siege of Mafeking. In these accounts he overstates the importance of holding Mafeking, exaggerates the number of Boers investing the place, and enhances his own heroic derring-do. The degree of overstatement grew as time passed. Whether this was due to self-aggrandizement or poor memory, his accounts simply cannot be trusted. Far and away the best eyewitness account of Mafeking is the diary [No. 985] of Sol Plaatje, a black court clerk and translator, who describes not only the everyday life in the town but the suffering of the majority of the black population, which is entirely ignored in Baden-Powell's account. In this early work, Plaatje shows the talent that was to make him a noted South African literary figure in the years after the war. The various works of Emily Hobhouse [Nos. 599-603] give a powerful if perhaps overly emotional portrayal of the suffering of Boer women and children in the concentration camps. The cautious may want to also consider Millicent Fawcett's *What I Remember* [No. 383] for a more conservative account. Memoirs by journalists are too numerous to detail, though some are particularly good [for instance, Nos. 44, 64, 518, 541, 631-32, 1147, 1186] and are cited in other places.

Archival resources for the study of the Boer War are substantial. The extensive number of published sources, also important, makes the space available for discussion of archives very limited. It would not be appropriate, however, to ignore primary sources. There are some published guides. These include C. G. Botha, *The Public Archives of South Africa, 1652-1910* (New York: Franklin, 1969; orig. 1928); Government Archives, *List of Archivalia in South African Depots* (1977); and there is a computerized National Register of Manuscripts done by the National Archives in collaboration with the South African Library. The number of archives that hold materials relevant to the study of the Boer War is

large. In Britain the major collections are at the Public Records Office at Kew and the National Army Museum in London. These collections include both private papers, such as those of Lords Roberts and Kitchener, and most of the government records, particularly those of the War Office. Also worth consulting in British archives are the Rhodes Papers at Rhodes House Library, Oxford, and the Milner Papers at the Bodleian Library. Other valuable collections include the Chamberlain Papers at the Birmingham University Library; Lord Methuen's Papers at Corsham Court, Wiltshire; and the Buller Papers at Downes (the family home) and at the Devon Record Office. Archival holdings in South Africa are much more scattered. Some of the more important are at the Cape Archives, Cape Town; the Free State Archives, Bloemfontein; the Human Research Council, Pretoria; the Mafeking Library, Mafeking; Natal Archives, Pietermaritzburg; and the Transvaal Archives, Pretoria.



Chapter 3

The Conventional Military Campaigns

The South African War began late in 1899 with the collapse of the negotiations that followed the Bloemfontein Conference. The South African Republic (Transvaal) sent an ultimatum demanding that its independence be recognized and British military forces be recalled. This was, of course, rejected, and on October 11 war was declared. Initially the advantage seemed to be with the Boers, for the British had relatively few troops in South Africa. It has been suggested by a number of commentators, including some Boers, [Nos. 85, 326, 563, 1035, 1270, 1344] that had the Boers struck decisively into the Cape Colony, seized the ports, and stirred up support from Cape Afrikaners (residents of Cape Colony who by birth and/or sentiment favored the Boer side), it would have been a triumphal *coup de main*. Whether the British were there for imperial dreams or gold or both, it seems unlikely that they would have abandoned all so easily, but negotiations with a more accommodating man might have been arranged. It is a moot point because the Boers—the Orange Free State felt honor bound to join in the war—chose instead to invest Mafeking, Kimberley, and Ladysmith. Each of these sieges was controversial, though for quite different reasons.

Mafeking was of relatively little strategic importance. It was west of the area where the main campaigns were to occur and with the growth of the network of tracks, no longer so important as a railroad center as in the past. Colonel R.S.S. Baden-Powell had been sent to the Bechuanaland-Transvaal border to raise troops and protect the flank of the main theater of operations. When the war began, he had two regiments each numbering less than 800 effectives and having no hope of standing against the numbers threatening him, chose to fortify Mafeking with half his force. The other half was left to operate on the border. His arguments for doing this were that his small force could tie down a large number of the enemy and abandoning the area would be conducive to revolt by the indigenous i.e., black population.

Brian Gardner [No. 433] and Michael Rosenthal [No. 1081] suggest that

the siege was militarily unnecessary and conditions during it were not actually so bad. Their analysis is based on accounts by J. A. Hamilton [No. 555] and F. D. Baillie [No. 44], both correspondents who were in Mafeking. These historians think that Baden-Powell exaggerated the significance of Mafeking's military importance, the number of enemy troops involved, and the difficulties of standing the siege. It cannot be denied that Baden-Powell, the British commander with the least formal military education, was remarkably creative about his defenses. Tricks that seem the stuff of historical fiction served him well and fooled the Boer garrison. For instance, he leaked word of mines, buried boxes filled with sand, and then exploded a few charges as examples. The "minefields" were marked to "protect" the people of Mafeking, and kept the Boers hesitant about attacking a garrison that they might well have overwhelmed. Baden-Powell's cool, often sarcastic, responses to danger also helped. For instance, he started one casualty report: "Killed: One Hen" His critics have suggested that Baden-Powell was deliberately aggrandizing himself and at the expense of hungry citizens, and they note that he was consistently able to get messages out concerning his nonchalant handling of the situation. They even suggest he was in no hurry to have the siege lifted, and made no effort to cooperate with a column from Rhodesia, led by Herbert Plummer, that came very close to breaking through the Boer lines.

Tim Jeal, Baden-Powell's most recent biographer [No. 652] makes the best defense, though he is not alone [Nos. 403, 524, 591, 1000, 1281]. He argues that there were administrative and railroad connections to Mafeking that made it important enough to defend. For the Boers that importance was magnified by the fact that the town had been a launching point for the Jameson Raid. He points out that until mid-November when Piet Cronjé left with 4,000 troops, a significant number of Boer soldiers were kept away from the main theaters of the war. He asserts that the large numbers of besiegers made no major attack due to Baden-Powell's bluffing. Jeal dismisses Gardner's account of an order from President Kruger that no risky assault be made as based on unconfirmed hearsay evidence. He believes that Baden-Powell made the Boers cautious. Finally Jeal asserts that holding Mafeking was an important aid to British ultimate victory [see also 388, 646].

In one sense, however, this seems a sterile debate, for Mafeking became a symbol that buoyed hope for the British cause in South Africa and at home. Although it was essentially meaningless militarily, the relief of Mafeking on May 17, 1900, triggered such a riotous celebration through out Britain that "maffick" became an English verb meaning to celebrate riotously. Had the besieged not held out the judgement might have been different, but given events, Baden-Powell, self-aggrandizing or not, had done his nation a service [Nos. 381, 388, 646, 708].

Unfortunately, a much more invidious charge has been leveled at Baden-Powell. It has been asserted, most importantly, by Thomas Pakenham [No. 954] and Peter Warwick [No. 1295], but by a number of other scholars as well [Nos. 134, 433, 667, 1081, 1325], that Baden-Powell knowingly and callously allowed

blacks in Mafeking to starve and die to ensure that there were plenty of rations for whites. Although he does not deny that Baden-Powell gave whites preferential treatment, Tim Jeal defends the colonel against the extremes of this charge. He asserts that it arose from a misinterpretation by Pakenham which was accepted by many others. Jeal is convinced that official figures of available food were in error and further the blacks in the town had private supplies of their own. The local residents, mostly Barolongs, had adequate rations. There were some 2,000 black refugees in Mafeking, and some of them did go hungry. Baden-Powell was told to send them away—he has been accused of trying to drive out all blacks—and made arrangements for them to get food en route to safety. The besiegers prevented many from leaving, and according to some reports others refused to go [Nos. 85, 667]. When he found out that they were actually starving, Baden-Powell arranged for soup kitchens. Food for the indigent was free. Some still did without, but food was available. Jeal marshals his evidence effectively and makes a good case. Geoffrey Powell [No. 1000] agrees that Baden-Powell made the best effort possible, but draws the distinction between blacks involved in defending the city and those who were not. It was the latter, he says, who went hungry.

The situation at Kimberly was also dominated by a personality—Cecil Rhodes. Kimberly was the center of the diamond mining industry and Rhodes's company, De Beers, had extensive holdings there. Rhodes, apparently looking to play a role in the conflict, ended up being trapped in the siege. In some ways he was an enormous support for the defense. The military commander, Lieutenant-Colonel R. G. Kekewich, like Baden-Powell, was short of men, guns, and ammunition. Rhodes produced 450 rifles from De Beers' stores, helped supply water from mining sources when the besiegers cut the city's supply, and convinced the company's board of directors to help with food supply (there was little hunger in Kimberly during the siege). Company engineers manufactured ammunition, and the American engineer George Labran even made a large, long-range cannon (called "Long Cecil") with which to answer Boer weapons (called "Long Toms") out of the range of Kekewich's guns. Rhodes might have been a hero, but he constantly fretted and demanded special privileges. He wanted a role in military decision making—at times a dominant role—and often favored more aggressive tactics than were feasible. He bombarded Kekewich with demands that the siege be broken, and when it was not, set up his own system so that he could communicate over the commander's head with the authorities in Cape Colony and even London. Eventually he was implying that if relief were not prompt and/or he was not given assurance that it would be, he would organize the civilians to surrender. He and Kekewich hardly spoke, and the colonel finally got official permission from Lord Roberts to arrest Rhodes, though he feared the impact of such a move on the people of Kimberly.

The military importance of holding Kimberly seems questionable, but it has been defended [No. 646] and some Boer forces were kept away from potentially more productive efforts. Protecting the wealth of the diamond mines

and the loyalty of their owners also was of significance. Although there are a number of journalistic accounts [Nos. 252, 328, 461, 974], the best overall history of the situation is Brian Gardner's *The Lion's Cage* [No. 432]. Gardner, while giving Rhodes his due, portrays him as arrogant and out of line [see also 618, 1218], but he thinks Kekewich should have been firmer and gotten control of the situation. Kekewich's account [No. 934] is surprisingly moderate, for an officer as badly mistreated as he. General John French, commander of the initial relief force reaching Kimberly, reported to Rhodes. Kekewich was left to rush over from headquarters, only to be treated with disdain. Rhodes continued to speak ill of Kekewich even after the relief, and the officer's career was to some degree stunted despite having successfully defended the city.

The third siege was militarily the most significant. The city of Ladysmith was in Natal and on the railroad line from the port of Durban to Johannesburg. Sir George White [Nos. 248, 358], the newly arrived officer sent to command the area at the beginning of the war, had the largest body of British troops in South Africa. He also had several matters to consider. The Boers could initially bring a numerically superior force against him. There was a significant defensive barrier, the Tugela River, some twelve miles south of Ladysmith behind which he could make a stand. To many [Nos. 12, 167, 388, 954, 1048], the best and obvious strategy was to move behind the Tugela and hold off the Boers until reinforcements arrived. Such critics tend to be among the earlier commentators on the situation, although Thomas Pakenham is an exception. Others think White's decision was not quite so simple and straightforward. The civilian authorities had warned him that any apparent weakness—such as a withdrawal—might well lead to an uprising by the local black population [Nos. 250, 381]. Furthermore, defending the Tugela would mean holding a 150 mile line [No. 965], and White was deficient in cavalry. Having a flank turned could open the way to Durban and/or into the Cape Colony. A major defeat could mean that much of the British base in South Africa would be lost and pro-Afrikaner factions, such as the Afrikaner Bond in Cape Colony, might be inspired to join the Boer side openly [No. 235]. In the end, he decided to make a stand at Ladysmith, believing that the Boers would not take the chance of bypassing a strong military position. Owen Coetzer [No. 250] is unusual in believing that White's decision was due to previous strategic planning, and the usual interpretation is that the decision was due to the immediate circumstances. Most of those who believe his decision was correct agree with Winston Churchill's [No. 236] sentiment if not his language when he said that "the flower of the Boer army" was held at Ladysmith for four months, and some go as far as claiming that White saved Natal [Nos. 142, 235, 238, 802, 965, 1131, 1321]. Even some on the Boer side agree [No. 307].

Before White instituted his plan to hold Ladysmith, his aggressive subordinate Major General Sir William Penn Symons ranged out to Dundee, some miles northeast of Ladysmith. Penn Symons forced a tactical retreat by the Boers at the Battle of Talana [No. 728], got himself killed, and left his force—now

commanded by Brigadier General James Yule—to make a dangerous withdrawal back to Ladysmith. The battles at Talana and nearby Elandslaagte, where Major-General John French led his cavalry to a tactical success, gave the British claim to initial victories, but offered White no advantage if the plan was to hold Ladysmith. White, as he took command, decided to retain the cavalry, for which he had little use and which would be badly needed elsewhere [No. 12], though he did allow French and his second in command, Douglas Haig, to leave on the last train out before the investment. Ultimately most of the cavalry's horses were eaten, and the manpower was probably not significant in the defense. White also kept General Archibald Hunter, who had been designated chief of staff to General Sir Redvers Buller, who was being sent out to command all British forces in South Africa. The British army was painfully behind the times regarding both numbers and employment of staff officers. Hunter's reputation suggests he was among the best available, and considering that in the end Buller had virtually no staff at all, he was a serious loss. There is no evidence to indicate that his presence in Ladysmith was of much benefit to the defense, and a number of scholars have asserted that he would have been of great help to Buller [Nos. 12, 235, 613, 628, 965].

Redvers Buller [Nos. 33, 167, 187, 350, 657, 697, 847-48, 860, 1000, 1211-12, 1220] has stirred controversy from the time of the war to the present. He was given at best vague instructions, a few inaccurate maps, and a force lacking mobility. His orders were to defeat the Boer Army that was made up entirely of mounted troops, knew the ground intimately, and was as well armed as his own forces. John Fortescue [No. 414; see also 21] has argued that the lack of men and materiel was really the result of government cheese-paring and the Cabinet chose to send Buller without what he needed rather than admit fault. He even found it difficult to convince his political superiors in London that it was impossible to plan an invasion without knowing whether the Orange Free State was to be a belligerent. Logistical requirements, Buller thought, could be met only by moving along one of the main railroad lines running from the coast into the Transvaal, and one of those passed along the Free State, opening a flank to commandos from that nation [Nos. 1000, 1153]. Not only was the situation difficult, but Buller was also ambivalent about his own capacity. When appointed he asserted to Lord Lansdowne, the Secretary of State for War, that he was better as a second-in-command.

When he arrived in South Africa October 31, 1899, Buller found the military situation worse than expected. The three sieges already mentioned had begun, and so the bulk of the British troops already in South Africa were trapped in Ladysmith. Milner and the political authorities were fearful over the possibility of an invasion of the Cape Colony and the loss of Natal, especially if Ladysmith were not promptly relieved. Rhodes, in Kimberly, was already beginning to press for that city to be relieved. Buller's army corps was arriving piecemeal—there would clearly be no time for molding it into a unit. Oliver Ransford [No. 1036]

suggests that Buller was overwhelmed and confused, but as Ruari Chisholm [No. 235] points out, he was very effective in getting the military in South Africa organized and moving to the fronts during his first three weeks in country. His organizational efforts in Cape Town are given some high marks, but many commentators have maintained that he was secretive and even slipped away to Natal without telling his staff [Nos. 235, 869, 1048]. Geoffrey Powell, his most recent biographer, rejects that interpretation [No. 1000]. Powell argues that everyone who needed to know was kept informed and that the basis for the attack on Buller is the memoir of Lady Violet Cecil [No. 869], Milner's gossipy friend, who was deliberately not informed lest all of Southern Africa be told.

Buller's plan was to drive into the Transvaal and the Orange Free State along the central railroad, and force surrender by taking the capitals—Bloemfontein and Pretoria. The need to protect Natal and raise the sieges led to this idea being abandoned. Buller decided instead to divide his force, sending Lord Methuen to relieve Kimberly, General William Gatacre with a smaller force to Stormberg to protect Cape Colony, and a third—the largest—unit, which he accompanied though he did not technically command, to Natal to move from Durban along the railroad to Ladysmith.

Contemporaries regarded Buller as a premier soldier when he was appointed to command in South Africa. Winston Churchill praised the general highly at the time of the war, but criticized him in later years [Nos. 236-38], perhaps driven by the power of hindsight. Churchill is not alone in wondering if Buller were actually as competent as the high command and public believed in 1899. Buller's reluctance about accepting the position of commander has been taken as prescience, and his rather inept performance at the 1898 maneuvers on Salisbury Plain then offered as proving his own point [Nos. 444, 564, 613, 1036]. In other general criticisms, he has been described as lazy [No. 564], lacking determination and character [Nos. 274, 1018], and thoroughly incompetent [No. 71]. He has also been accused of allowing his taste for good food and champagne to dull his abilities, and in some cases this self-indulgence has been seen as actual dissipation [Nos. 667, 847, 1036, 1292]. In a demonstration of differing interpretations, however, one critic [No. 1292] comments about his "gobbling sandwiches" while supposedly directing the battle of Colenso, but Geoffrey Powell [No. 1000] remarks on his devotion to duty leading to many hours in the saddle with nothing but occasional sandwiches to sustain him.

Criticism of Buller is not, however, universal. Thomas Pakenham [No. 954] gives him some credit and Powell, as already noted, finds little to fault. His defenders point out that Buller was sent out with vague instructions, few and mostly inaccurate maps, and far too few mounted troops for the nature of the conflict. The army's intelligence corps was so small as to be a joke by the standards of other military powers at the beginning of the twentieth century, though its efforts are defended by Malmesbury [No. 806]. Buller's staff—the army put little importance on staff work—was pulled together with neither much concern

nor consultation with him, not to mention the fact that the putative chief was held in Ladysmith. His planning is often criticized [Nos. 423, 965, 1344] because dividing his forces left the British dominant on no front. Others, like David James [No. 646], assert that the decision was both politically and militarily right, for the loss of Ladysmith would have meant loss of Natal. The other cities were symbols of British authority and to abandon them would encourage the Boers and their foreign sympathizers. [Nos. 646, 667]. His original plan had, however, been made in ignorance of the situation in South Africa. When Buller arrived, he was pressed by Milner concerning the need to protect against an invasion of Cape Colony, while others insisted that the loss of Rhodes and the diamond mines in Kimberly would be a devastating blow. The largest part of the forces he had expected to find, along with his intended chief-of-staff, were unexpectedly shut up in Ladysmith. Buller may have done the best he could in a difficult and quite unexpected situation. Powell certainly thinks so. Nonetheless, it seems hard to argue that he was not slow to learn both about his lacks, such as adequate mounted troops, and tactical adaptation to the new weapons.

The execution of Buller's revised plan resulted in a series of reverses known to the British as "Black Week." December 9-10 Gatacre made an attack on Stormberg Junction. Little was done well. Communications were so inept that one unit of 400 men was not told to report for the attack and changes in plans did not reach all units so that medical and other support forces were saved from blundering into the enemy only by being told by confused returning newspapermen that the main force was not on the road ahead of them. The attack force was worn out. Gatacre, infamous for his vitality, had increased the length their march in the revision of his plan, ordered them to march with fixed bayonets making rifles awkward to carry, and the column was misdirected by local guides who got lost (the intelligence officer who knew the area had been left behind) and led in a roundabout way to the point of attack. It was then sent against a small force of Boers in a position that forced the assault to move up a particularly steep, rocky hill. This position could have been by-passed and the main objective easily taken. Instead the men fell back in confusion, and Gatacre decided to retreat—unintentionally leaving behind 600 men who later had to surrender. There was hardly any fighting to the "battle." It was clearly a tactical setback and certainly did not speak well for the command-control structure of the British Army. The reaction, however, suggests that the decisiveness of a battle is at least sometimes determined by how it is perceived. Stormberg became in the public's and apparently and more destructively in Buller's mind the first of the three disasters of Black Week.

Historians have commonly blamed Gatacre [Nos. 338, 563, 708, 965], but he has been defended, not surprisingly by his wife [No. 441] and more impressively by Edgar Holt [No. 613]. Both defenders suggest that the problems were no fault of the general, whose force was pieced together and who had no control over lost guides and breakdowns in communications. His mistake was

assuming that newly arrived troops in units not accustomed to working together could manage fairly complicated maneuvers to get into combat.

Even as Stormberg was ending, Lord Methuen was preparing what he expected to be the final drive on Kimberly. He had been successful in three relatively small engagements thus far, and expected to relieve the city in a matter of days. In retrospect, it has been noted that his initial victories were achieved by frontal assault against Boer forces that were inexperienced, poorly positioned, and who tended to withdraw if the pressure got too great. Some analysts have also pointed to the relatively high casualty rates in his early engagements and to Methuen's tendency to make frontal assaults rather than flank Boer positions as harbingers of future problems. These critics think that Boer leaders, especially Koos De la Rey and Christiaan De Wet, learned how to use modern weapons more quickly than the British general [Nos. 432, 965, 1131].

As Methuen prepared to move against Magersfontein, that situation was changing. Boer troops were now blooded, and the general he had been opposing, Piet Cronjé, was supplemented by one of the gifted amateurs that would make the Boers into truly formidable opponents—Koos De la Rey [No. 840]. Thus far, the Boers had dug-in on hills where they suffered under British artillery fire and their own small arms fire tended to arc over attacking forces. De la Rey suggested entrenching at the foot of the hills so that the trajectory of their fire would be flat and sweep the ground over which the attack might be expected. Cronjé—like most Boers reluctant to take a stand without clear lies of retreat—resisted the idea. Fortunately, President Steyn of the Orange Free State arrived to back De la Rey. Carefully camouflaged narrow (to protect against shrapnel) trenches were dug in front of the hill line. De la Rey had stopped Methuen at the Modder River with such a plan, and the British were only able to claim victory because the Boers withdrew the night after the battle.

Methuen, reluctant to move away from his line of communication along the railroad and dismissive of Boer military prowess, decided on a night march leading to a frontal assault at dawn. His artillery preparation targeted the hills and caused virtually no harm to the Boers. He chose the newly arrived Highland brigade commanded by the popular and professionally highly regarded Major-General A. J. Wauchope as the spearhead. It was just what De la Rey had planned for and due to a variety of factors, Wauchope delayed dispersing his troops until he was within a few hundred yards of the trenches, thus providing a nearly perfect target. A fusillade cut down the Highlanders. Many officers, including Wauchope, who rose to assess the situation, were among the first to go. The rest of the attack force, some of which had dispersed, sought what cover it could and spent a very difficult day under fire. Methuen continued to attempt to drive forward and made no attempt to flank the Boer position. Some nine hours later confusion over an order to a unit to pull back led to a disorderly retreat. Methuen then waited out the night hoping that, as at the Modder River earlier, in the aftermath of the fight the Boers would leave. They did not, and Methuen did. The

second disaster of Black Week had occurred, and this one was a real defeat, though it too was not necessarily decisive.

The popularity of Andy Wauchope fueled debate over Magersfontein. His friends did not want his death regarded as the result of his own foolishness. Popular accounts and regimental histories [Nos. 45, 336, 1304] have suggested that Wauchope tried to get Methuen to revise the plan, but though he seems to have initially not liked it, professional historians have found little reason to think there was any serious dispute between the two officers [Nos. 563, 613]. His failure to disperse has been regarded as an unlucky choice based on the desire to get his men as close to the Boers as possible before spreading out and inevitably slowing down; misperception of where the enemy was positioned; and coming to a belt of thorn bushes just as he was ready to deploy and moving through it first. He has, however, been criticized for waiting, [Nos. 563, 965], and Arthur Conan Doyle asserted that the Highland Brigade could have carried the day had it just pressed on when the shooting started [No. 338].

Whatever Wauchope's failures, they were tactical, and more discussion has arisen over Methuen's overall handling of the campaign than of those directing the details of combat. The commander has been faulted for: 1) not learning more about the battlefield before attacking; 2) being too concerned about his line of communication (the railroad) and failing to use flanking tactics because that would mean moving away from it; 3) moving too slowly; and 4) ending his bombardment too long before attacking so that the Boers had time to prepare [Nos. 336, 432, 667, 1018, 1131]. Others, however, maintain that his plan was good, and that he had concluded reasonably from Graspan and Belmont that the Boers could be crushed—physically and morally—by frontal assault [Nos. 965, 1018]. Flanking maneuvers and reconnaissance, his defenders continue, depended on cavalry and through no fault of his own, Methuen was woefully short of that [No. 965]. Furthermore, the maps provided by the intelligence service were inaccurate, though he had no reason to think so. His defenders cap their argument by noting that Methuen was retained by Roberts and gave a good account of himself later in the war.

The final disaster was orchestrated by Buller himself. He was moving toward Ladysmith and planning to flank a Boer position at Colenso on the Tugela River. The defense was commanded by Louis Botha [Nos. 56, 58, 369, 841, 1174], another gifted amateur soldier. When news of Stormberg and Magersfontein arrived, from panic or calm reason, accounts differ widely [Nos. 778, 965, 1036, 1212, 1153]. Buller changed his plan to a frontal assault (on a position he had reported impregnable) in hopes of regaining the overall initiative. The attack went wrong almost from the beginning. On the right, Colonel Arthur Fitzroy Hart, misled by guides and lacking accurate maps, blundered into a loop of the river. His reaction was to drive more troops into the cul-de-sac, where they suffered heavy casualties, were pinned down, and had to be rescued. Most historians are critical of Hart. Some like Ruari Chisholm [No. 235] portray him

as an ignorant martinet whose idea of tactics was limited to the frontal assault in close order [see also Nos. 444, 563, 708, 954]. A few, however, think he was right to attempt to force the issue when the guides failed him [Nos. 572, 697, 1067].

In the center, ignoring instructions but doing what had produced success against less well-armed foes, Colonel C. J. Long pushed his guns in front of the infantry and very close to the Boer positions, and although some authorities including Botha himself [No. 217] maintain that he sprang a Boer trap into which many men might have advanced, Long was quickly under heavy, accurate fire. The brave gunners, who were suffering serious casualties, however, seem to have been on the verge of suppressing Boer fire and opening the way for an infantry attack when ammunition ran short. The wounded Long and his men then moved into shelter to wait for resupply. Buller intended for Long to engage at longer range and with infantry cover, but was perhaps not clear in his instructions [No. 563]. Long's tactics, although often criticized [Nos. 235, 444, 563, 954] for ignoring the artillery's need for infantry cover, have been supported as conforming to the doctrine that moving forward was most effective. Thus, even without the luck of springing the trap, Long was right [Nos. 1036, 1344].

Both of the problems might have been resolved successfully, according to both contemporary and more recent analysts. Hart's troops, although pinned down, could have been left while a move around the Boer flank was mounted to relieve them. Long's guns merely needed ammunition, and despite the price in casualties, they might well have ensured the success of an infantry attack, especially since long range naval guns, which moved more slowly, were coming into position to provide additional fire on Boer positions [Nos. 174, 2365, 965, 1340]. The key was decisive leadership and adequate ruthlessness to make the men pay the blood price of their commanders' errors. Buller promptly ordered help for Hart's unit, although he did not seek to take advantage of the situation by making a move against the Boer flank. Then he heard about the guns, and went to see about that problem. He met officers sent for shells who told him inaccurately that the gunners had been decimated and the guns put out of action [No. 1048]. This seemed to be confirmed by observation because the gunners had taken cover, seeing no reason to risk their lives if they had no shells to fire. The idea of losing guns was anathema to British soldiers, and Buller, looking at what appeared to be abandoned guns, seemed to panic. Worse he was hit by a shell fragment and badly bruised, though not seriously injured. He called for extraction of the guns which proved not only impossible but deadly—the only son of Lord Roberts won a Victoria Cross at the expense of his life in the effort. He then ordered the guns abandoned after all. Critics suggest, however, that the guns could have been saved either by pushing ammunition up to them and continuing the attack or by covering them by rifle fire until dark [Nos. 71, 235, 1344], though sending volunteers to try to extract them without other protection seems of little virtue.

Buller gave up, disengaged, and retreated. He sent a message to White

in Ladysmith with instructions about surrender—he would later insist that it was intended as a contingency in case White could not hold out. The wording and tone, however, make it hard to see as anything other than a surrender instruction. Ladysmith did hold, and Buller has been condemned for being willing to yield ever since, far more than a message sent in a moment of despair merits. Perhaps, the results of Colenso, added to the first defeats of "Black Week" destroyed his spirit [No. 965], and Julian Symons [No. 1212] goes so far as to suggest that he was, in modern terms, clinically depressed and simply unable to provide consistent leadership. Although he has been praised for heroically pulling back to prevent useless casualties [No. 28], Buller's withdrawal when he still had substantial numbers of uncommitted reserves has also been attacked as a tactical blunder [Nos. 563, 708, 1048]. The most hostile critics attribute his problems to inherent incompetence worsened by excessive indulgence in food and drink.

As word of the third defeat in a week spread there was a strong reaction. Boer confidence grew, while in London the government lost all belief in Buller [No. 801], as did some of his generals [No. 778]. Field Marshal Frederick Roberts, 1st Baron of Kandahar, who had been lobbying for command, was put in charge of the war. Buller, however, was left in command in Natal. This was perhaps a reasonable choice [No. 926], made in recognition of the fact that a theater command was too much to add to the task of commander-in-chief. It may also have been due to Roberts' concern not to appear vengeful for the death of his son at Colenso [Nos. 144, 381]. Other possible factors in the decision were the lack of an appropriate successor and Buller's enormous popularity with his men [Nos. 71, 381].

While the grieving Roberts traveled to South Africa, Buller made another try to relieve Ladysmith, although his new commander had suggested standing on the defensive for the time being. Significantly reinforced, including a new division under Sir Charles Warren, he decided to flank the Boer position. He put Warren in command of the new attack. Some authorities have asserted this was to avoid responsibility. There are also charges that Buller resented Warren and hoped he would fail due to Warren's holding a dormant commission (i.e., he was to take supreme command if Buller were put out of action) [Nos. 444, 965]. Warren was supposed to cross the Tugela and roll up the Boer lines and move on to Ladysmith. He proved far better at preparing than at actually fighting. He gathered and drilled his forces but accomplished little. Buller's patience ran out, and he demanded action or withdrawal. Warren remarked that the hill called Spion Kop dominated the position and should be taken. Buller agreed, but insisted that Warren get on with it. What followed was a battle that turned on confusion.

The beginning was eerily like Majuba. The British moved up Spion Kop with minimal resistance, and in a fog took what they thought was the top. Having left their sandbags and some tools behind they could do only a little entrenching in the rocky soil. When the mist cleared, they realized that their position was on a secondary crest and was dominated by Aloe Knoll and overlooked on two other

sides by other heights. The initially panicked Boers soon rallied and found that they could climb the steep slopes on their side of the hill in relative safety. The British had not moved guns up the hill and so could not threaten Boer camps, nor had they arranged diversionary attacks to tie down opposing forces. Boer guns could fire on the British position from three sides, and infantry soon swarmed around the top of the hill. There followed a day of bitter, often hand-to-hand, fighting as the Boers attacked and the British counterattacked, neither gaining much of an advantage. The heroic figure on the British side was Lieutenant-Colonel A. W. Thorneycroft of Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry. Thorneycroft rallied British forces repeatedly, even rushing into the lines on a badly twisted ankle to stop the surrender of a small group from turning into a more general submission.

When General Sir Edward Woodgate, the commander on the hill, became a casualty, Buller who could actually see some of the hill from his position (Warren could not and had to wait sometimes hours for reports) sent a message urging that Thorneycroft be put in command. Warren, despite having sent General John Coke, still limping from a broken leg, as a replacement, sent word to Thorneycroft but not to Coke. Meanwhile, the senior officer on Spion Kop, who was unfortunately at the other end of the line from Thorneycroft, also assumed command. Thus for some time three officers each believed he was in command of the battle. None of them could maintain regular contact with Warren, however. Although the technology was available, no one had thought to take telegraph wire up the hill, oil for signal lamps ran out, semaphore flags were not seen or messages sent inaccurately, messengers some times failed to get through and had a journey of perhaps two hours one-way. Winston Churchill [No. 236], present as a correspondent, went up and returned to urge reinforcement. He was on his way back to report that help—including guns—was on its way when he met British forces headed down the hill. In pain and horrified at seeing his men under enfilade fire, Thorneycroft's nerve had broken. He ordered withdrawal, and by the time another "commander" found out it was too late to stop the movement, and efforts to reoccupy the hill were not pressed. The irony was that at the same time the Boers, believing they were beaten [Nos. 307, 1043], were withdrawing. Chance favored their side, however, for in the very early hours of the next morning two burghers went up looking for a wounded comrade, discovered the hill was abandoned, and got word to their commanders. The Boers retook Spion Kop, and Buller retreated to the Tugela again. The best account of the battle is Oliver Ransford's *The Battle of Spion Kop* [No. 1036], but there are many others: See Nos. 121, 142, 209, 219, 223, 492, 894, 965, 994, 1048].

Controversy over Spion Kop boils down to which officer was most to blame: Buller or Warren. Buller, in his reports, blamed Warren and a number of historians have agreed. Oliver Ransford [No. 1036], though he distributes plenty of criticism to a variety of people, is firm in condemning Warren's failure to discover the topography of the hill, information that was available. Along with

many others he wonders how Warren could have ignored his own cavalry's report that a flank was open and mounted units were in position to ride unopposed into Ladysmith [Nos. 235, 350, 563, 613]. Warren's view was that cavalry was to provide a screen and reconnaissance and not take the initiative. He angrily called it back. Among other criticisms, advanced vigorously by Thomas Pakenham [No. 954] and Julian Symons [No. 1212], are that he was vacillating and hesitant about developing his battle plan, failed to keep his officers informed, and should have acted promptly to reoccupy the hill rather than acquiescing in the withdrawal and trying to get Buller to decide what to do [see also Nos. 167, 174, 381, 696, 1036].

An early attempt to argue that Buller was primarily accountable came from Watkin Williams [No. 1334], Warren's grandson. Writing with family prejudice but full access to Warren's papers, Williams blames Buller for interfering and Thorneycroft for abandoning the hill without orders. A recent book by Owen Coetzer [No. 250] argues these themes vehemently [see also Nos. 174, 309, 444, 613]. Buller has also been faulted for a variety of other failings in the conduct of this battle. The Boers were allowed time to prepare because Buller was initially slow to make a plan and then failed to press Warren into prompt action [Nos. 235, 667, 1048]. William Pemberton says that although Buller's plan was good, he put Warren in charge with a divisional commander's staff, due probably to personal dislike and resentment [No. 965]. Not everyone approved of the plan. Charles Repington, who was on Buller's headquarters staff, reports that the divisional commanders did not like it, though none would confront Buller [No. 1048]. Once the battle began, Buller stopped efforts at flanking and diversionary attacks that might have been very helpful [Nos. 350, 613], and, as at Colenso, he failed to use his reserve to support the attacking force. Oliver Ransford [No. 1035] goes as far as saying that Buller was at times drunk and unable to make considered decisions.

Geoffrey Powell [No. 1000], who considers Buller a scapegoat for British military failures in South Africa, refutes all criticisms by shifting blame to officers and the War Office's earlier failures to prepare adequately for war. His response to the accusation of excessive consumption of champagne is that in the 19th century the wine was regarded merely as a pick-me-up and Buller did not abuse it. Although Powell's arguments are sometimes effective, he tends to be defensive and make Buller too good to be true [see also Nos. 33, 187, 657, 847, 995].

Buller made another false beginning at Vaal Kranz, where after some dithering he launched a flank attack, getting forces across the river. As in the past the slow development of his maneuver had let the Boers prepare and when resistance was more than expected he dithered again and withdrew back across the Tugela, earning the sobriquet "Sir Reverse Buller the Ferryman of the Tugela." Michael Barthrop [No. 68] argues that Buller was learning the nature of modern war. A fourth try in which he finally used all his forces crushed the defense and opened the way to Ladysmith, though his failure to pursue the fleeing Boers has led to more criticism than praise of this success [Nos. 85, 250, 563, 1043, 1334].

The victory was too late, and his reputation would never recover.

Meanwhile, Buller's replacement was establishing his control. Lord Roberts was the rival of Buller's patron, Lord Wolseley, for dominance in the army, and had made his name primarily in India. Roberts brought with him Herbert Horatio Kitchener (Lord Kitchener of Khartoum) [Nos. 801, 1294] as his chief-of-staff. Kitchener had won fame fighting in Egypt, and had a reputation for ruthlessness. Certainly he was ambitious and determined. He and Roberts, in analyzing the problems in South Africa, determined correctly enough that logistics were a problem, and they set out to reorganize the supply system, initially causing more confusion than improvement [No. 414]. Later commentators, however, tend to think that although the new system took time to get organized, it was effective and needed. Problems were more the fault of incompetent Army Service Corps personnel than inherent in the reformed system. [Nos. 85, 563, 708, 801]. The effort did, at least, make clear that they would not allow tradition to block progress.

Roberts had a new and ambitious plan.¹ He would flank the enemy defensive position in Natal, drive into the Boer Republics, and take Bloemfontein and Pretoria. He, like most British planners, assumed that the taking of their capitals would result in Boer capitulation. Unlike Buller, he was willing to leave the relief of sieges to others, but under political pressure he agreed to a dog leg in his line of advance to relieve Kimberly. Conveniently he had Buller and his force to keep the pressure on the Boers at Ladysmith, and he would later send a flying column to save Mafeking. Unlike Buller, he was ready to take risks. When Christiaan De Wet captured his main supply train at Waterval, he put his army on half-rations for a time but made no pause in his advance.

Roberts sent cavalry forces under General Sir John French to relieve the Kimberley, and the result was a rather panicked withdrawal by the Boers commanded by Piet Cronjé. French's exhausted cavalry—still much too small a force for the work to be done—managed to cut off the Boer retreat at Paardeberg, at least in part because Cronjé failed to abandon his wagons and luggage. French was able to hold the Boers until the infantry caught up and surrounded them. A minor illness kept Roberts from the scene and Kitchener was sent with orders that his word was to be taken as Roberts'. Kitchener used the orders to assert command over the senior General Sir Thomas Kelley-Kenny, who some have asserted was a superior tactician [No. 1164]. In accordance with his reputation, Kitchener determined on assaulting the Boer laager, although the opinion of other general officers on the scene was that it should be invested and shelled into submission [Nos. 613, 708]. Ever since Kitchener has been criticized for acting with too little knowledge of the situation and for trying to control a battle without using a staff (a problem for him in the Great War as well) [Nos. 85, 801, 1018, 1164]. The result was the bloodiest day of the war for the British, but no victory. Roberts arrived and decided not to renew the attacks. Kitchener was sent on a mission to protect supply lines, and Kelley-Kenny's idea of bombardment was adopted.

Although Roberts' plans at Paardeberg have been praised [Nos. 410, 564, 1018, 1344], Thomas Pakenham [No. 954] has asserted that when De Wet took a hill from which he could cover an escape from the trap, Roberts was ready to disengage (De Wet pulled out first) very much like Buller who usually suffers in comparison with his new commander. Furthermore, Roberts kept his force drinking the polluted water of the Tugela River, which led to a typhoid epidemic, causing more casualties than continuing frontal attacks [Nos. 381, 708, 950, 1131]. And as Kitchener's partisans, who believe he had the right tactical concept, point out, a quick victory would have made possible the trapping of significant parts of the Boer forces as the British drove on toward Bloemfontein [Nos. 71, 613, 1018, 1131]. A decisive stroke at this point, according to this analysis, had the potential to bring the war to an end. In the end Cronjé surrendered on Majuba Day, February 27, 1901, to the joy of the British and the outrage of his countrymen.

Though slowed by typhoid and logistical problems, the invasion continued. Ladysmith and then Mafeking were relieved. There seemed no doubt that the momentum of the war had shifted in favor of the British. As planned, Roberts took Bloemfontein, but was forced to regroup and resupply while waiting for the typhoid epidemic to ease. In retrospect, however, there were continuing signs of problems [No. 708]. He had driven the Boer forces away but not really defeated them, and isolated British units kept getting picked off. The result of a surprise attack by De Wet at Sanna's Post was the destruction of the waterworks for Bloemfontein, to the discomfort of the occupying force along with the worsening of the epidemic. It is easy to look back and see what such skirmishes portended, but at the time they seemed mostly bad luck and/or minor misjudgement. Roberts drove on to Pretoria, again brushing aside defending forces without actually crushing them. With the fall of the second capital, Roberts announced that the war was essentially over and requested and got permission to go home, leaving Kitchener to "mop up." Kitchener, apparently expecting to be given command of British forces in India—one of the army's highest honors—was also eager to be done with South Africa. It was not to be, at least not quickly.

The British had defined the war in terms of geography. The Boers, however, fought for ideology—nationalism and freedom (though not necessarily freedom for all). Led by younger and bitterly determined men like Christiaan De Wet, Koos De la Rey, and Jan Smuts, they fought on. De Wet quickly saw that small dedicated bands of mounted guerillas could roam virtually at will, striking at isolated targets and keeping the war alive. If outright victory was not likely, perhaps the British could be worn down to the point of making acceptable terms. The war became a guerrilla-style contest, with non-conventional tactics often involving civilians. Many of the qualities that had won it the sobriquet "Last of the Gentlemen's Wars" disappeared over the last eighteen months.



Chapter 4

“The Last of the Gentlemen’s Wars”

The phrase “last of the gentlemen’s wars” has been widely used to describe the Boer War. J.F.C. Fuller chose it as the title of his memoir [No. 424] of the conflict. The idea is that the opposing forces respected one another and followed some set of rules for behavior. There certainly were regular truces for the removal of the dead and care of the wounded. Roberts accepted Cronjé’s surrender at Paardeberg with generous words and an invitation to lunch. Cronjé, when sent to a prisoner of war camp out of the country, was allowed to take his wife with him. The modern inclination to dehumanize the foe as “slopes,” “gooks,” etc. was not very noticeable. There was even respect for the other side among the everyday soldier as expressed, for instance, in *Private Tucker’s Diary* [No. 1230]. The idea of such mutual respect and acceptance of rules of conduct is a theme in John Selby’s *The Boer War: A Study in Cowardice and Courage* [No. 1131]. Although such arguments can be sustained, they seem to apply best to the first year of the conflict and also may have some tie to the widely asserted idea that it was “a white man’s war” [see for instance 52, 64, 424, 1017, 1294].

Such judgements are measured by the rules for military action established in the Hague Convention of 1899 which may not have legally applied [No. 1177], and which the Boers actually may not have been aware of [No. 52]. The debate about the degree of gentlemanly behavior has continued in the literature, nonetheless. Each side has accused the other of using dum-dums (i.e., soft-nosed bullets) in contravention of the rules of war. The British had used such ammunition in the past but rejected it because it too often misfired in fouled rifle barrels. They did, however, apparently ship a significant quantity to South Africa before deciding it could not be used. Certain commentators have suggested that the Boers found some of this and assumed the worst [Nos. 250, 593, 613]. Boer accusations, perhaps due to the limited number of sources, are much fewer than those of the British.

The anecdotal evidence charging the Boers with using soft-nosed and/or

explosive rounds is substantial and ranges from the likes of Winston Churchill [No. 237] to the military surgeon E. Blake Knox [No. 697; see also Nos. 18, 64, 849, 869, 954]. Hunting ammunition was often soft-nosed, and so there may have been some assumptions made by the British similar to those made by the Boers who found unused dum-dums in British Army supply dumps. It has also been asserted that the belief about the type of bullets was really due to misjudging the effects of modern, high-powered rounds and the effect of multiple hits possible with repeating rifles [No. 708]. Edgar Holt [No. 613] has argued that while each side may have occasionally used such ammunition, it was against the policy of both and essentially inadvertent. Nonetheless, the frequency of reports of finding soft-nosed bullets in Boer positions after battles leaves the impression that at least some use of such munitions was made, and British soldiers apparently believed it enough to have retaliated against their foes [No. 954].

Another frequent accusation, again from both sides, was misuse of the white flag. The literature suggests some truth on both sides. J. B. M. "Judge" Hertzog, a Boer legal advisor and commando leader, reports [No. 984] having had to explain to his compatriots that reconnoitering under a flag of truce was not acceptable. The British reported instances of small units raising a white flag to surrender and then having that decision overruled by higher authority, and were accused by De Wet of drawing Boers into a trap with a false surrender [Nos. 326, 954, 1131]. The British also asserted that the Boers failed to respect the Red Cross, sometimes firing on medical personnel and advancing while pretending to be medical units [No. 64]. E. Blake Knox insists, however, that he never saw such behavior. Any firing on his people occurred when they were mixed with combat troops [No. 697]. Although these issues do not seem to have been a major problem for the soldiers involved, they did have a role in the long-term bitterness between the British and the South Africans.

If there was some controversy about the chivalric behavior of soldiers at the beginning of the war, in the last eighteen months the degree of civility seemed noticeably less. After the fall of the Boer capitals—Bloemfontein and Pretoria—Lord Roberts made one final offensive. He moved east hoping to and nearly trapping most of the Boer forces, and most importantly Christiaan De Wet, in the Brandwater Basin. De Wet and most of the important leaders managed to escape the net, however. Roberts had already made clear that he regarded the capture of the enemy's capital cities the step that defined overall victory. Again and again he mistook his foes' withdrawal from a battlefield to mean victory even though he had inflicted relatively little actual damage to them. Like many traditionally trained generals from the American Revolution through Vietnam, he failed to understand the nature of guerrilla war. Unfortunately for the British, Boer commanders, such as De Wet, Koos De la Rey, and Jan Smuts, seem to have grasped that nature almost intuitively. Even as Roberts was "conquering" their countries, they were adapting their commando organization to the new reality. Increasingly they shed encumbering baggage and equipment, including artillery,

and began to range about the countryside striking at targets of convenience. Willing to live on what they could carry, get from sympathizers, and capture, and mounted on tough, small horses used to the climate and the wiry veld grass, they were to say the least elusive. By the end of the war, these commandos were using captured British rifles and ammunition (like most large traditional forces the British Army was sloppy and left a trail of cartridges in its wake for the picking up); wearing captured British uniforms; and often eating captured rations. Ultimately, in other words, the British taxpayer was funding virtually the entire war effort. The guerrilla conflict is very well described from the soldier's point of view in Deney's Reitz's *Commando* [No. 1043; see also Nos. 979-80, 1260], from a commander's in De Wet's *Three Years War* [No. 326], and in overall context in Rayne Kruger's *Goodbye Dolly Gray* [No. 708; see also Nos. 13, 381, 954].

When Roberts declared victory and went home to receive a step up in the peerage, a £100,00 award from Parliament, and the post of commander-in-chief of the army, he left Herbert Horatio, Lord Kitchener of Khartum, to mop up. Kitchener was well-known for his campaigns in Egypt, and reputed to be cold, ruthless, and ambitious [Nos. 24, 801, 1294]. The South African campaign proved the personal qualities in his reputation, but despite the ultimate victory, left some questions about his military prowess. Supposedly left a short, relatively easy task, he found himself in a situation that would later be called a quagmire. The perception that the war was essentially won, steadily fueled by Roberts' claims of victory, meant that every setback was magnified in importance. The government was eager to reduce costs by bringing troops home and the enlistments of many volunteers were ending, but Kitchener found that he needed more, not fewer men. He got them eventually, but the replacement of experienced campaigners with sometimes only partially trained novices to fight Boers, who had been weeded by adversity and had mostly been fighting since the beginning, was not conducive to immediate success.

The notoriously ineffective Army Remount Service [Nos. 14, 430, 494, 1135] had actually shut down South African supply efforts, and though reactivated, was even worse than usual about both quality and quantity of animals acquired. In the field, as J.F.C. Fuller [No. 424] comments, the British often lacked "horse sense." The suffering and death of some 350,000 horses is one of the less noticed tragedies in the South African War. There is little doubt that getting and managing livestock was a logistical nightmare for the British.

Rayne Kruger [No. 708] argues that at the end of 1900 the Boers were militarily in many ways as well or better off than they had been at the beginning of the year. President Steyn commented in August, 1901, that not only were commandos ranging almost freely through the Cape Colony but also in the former Boer republics British authority was limited to the range of the army's guns. Kitchener's strategy for bringing the Boers to concession developed into two overlapping efforts. As it became clear that the Boers were not close to defeat, Kitchener began struggling to increase his proportion of mounted troops. He

began to organize columns to sweep the countryside trying to trap commandos. There followed three "De Wet Hunts" over the final eighteen months of the war in which increasing numbers of British Army forces sought to corner the man who was not only the key instigator of Boer guerrilla tactics but the most implacable defender of Afrikaner independence. With the exception of a few scout units, British columns remained much more heavily loaded and slower than the commandos, but they created webs that De Wet needed luck as well as skill to avoid. Successful generals always have luck, and the Boer leaders were no exception [Nos.326, 708, 991, 979-80, 1043, 1260].

A major element of Kitchener's problem was the size of the war zone—about equal to France. Once a commando slipped through a gap in the closing net it could disappear until the next raid. As he came to realize this, Kitchener began to develop a counter-tactic. Barbed wire fences with periodic fortified posts had been used to protect cities, and he extended the system until the country was literally divided into manageable sections by some 5,000 miles of fence and 10,000 blockhouses. Although construction was more substantial at first, his engineers developed a blockhouse made of concentric circles of corrugated iron, the space between filled with loose rock, and capped with a conical roof of the same metal. These looked something like water tanks with loopholes, but provided a secure post for seven men (sometimes with a few natives as servants and/or guards and scouts). The fences, running at angles to avoid putting blockhouses in one another's line of fire, were loaded with alarms and larger bodies of reinforcements were posted within reach [Nos. 135, 181, 381, 424, 708, 954, 1351].

The idea was that raiders would be driven into these lines, often along railroads, detected, fired upon, and trapped by arriving reinforcements. Kitchener could not ensure alertness and the commandos frequently were able to slip through the fences [No. 326, 979, 991, 1043]. But as the system got into place, raids began to fail, and commandos were sometimes forced to flee for their lives. The system was never perfect, as clearly shown by the fact that Jan Smuts was recalled from an attack on the mining center of O'okiep in the western part of Cape Colony [Nos. 19, 173, 269, 560, 562, 687, 742, 845, 865, 1166] to attend the final peace negotiations. Nonetheless, it was successful in increasing the cost of operating to the guerrilla units [Nos. 326, 381, 667, 708, 954, 1043], a success that commanders in future guerrilla wars would have been glad, indeed, to achieve. To a degree then, Kitchener's tactics worked and to the degree that they involved pursuing commandos, they did not violate the spirit of the "gentlemen's war."

There were other problems to be solved, however. Commandos were operating in friendly territory. Most farms, even in the Cape Colony, were places of succor. Food, information, sometimes horses and weapons caches could be found. Guerrillas could one day be on campaign and the next quietly plowing their fields. Boer soldiers had never had formal uniforms anyway. It was the conundrum of all regular armies fighting irregular forces—just who was the

enemy? To deal with this difficulty, Kitchener again expanded a previous policy and took the British war effort into real controversy. Toward the end of his tenure in South Africa, Roberts had ordered the burning of farms where it was shown that Boer soldiers were sheltered or that were in the vicinity, and therefore had to be in the know, of raids on railroads. These policies were in alignment with German efforts to deal with *franc-tireurs* during the Franco-Prussian War. They were applied with some caution. The fact that a man was away on commando was not regarded as cause to burn his farm. Brian Roberts [No. 1058; see also No. 954] has, however, postulated a personal motive. Lord Roberts' wife joined him in South Africa and from bitterness over the death of their son, effectively urged him to greater destructiveness. Most authorities, however, do not strongly condemn Roberts in this regard [Nos. 410, 564, 613, 646].

Kitchener, however, with some sense of the emergence of modern total war, began to understand the need to convince the enemy population that continuing the war was hopeless and meant only the destruction of its very means of existence. Farm burning became a major element in his strategy. Homes and outbuildings were set alight, crops destroyed in the fields, livestock taken or slaughtered. The amount of destruction was enormous and spread over much of the Transvaal and Orange Free State [Nos. 326, 708, 812].

Militarily the result was positive, for the Boers themselves admitted that their farms were a major logistical support for the commandos [Nos. 85, 326, 613, 667, 820, 913, 1043, 1099]. The involvement of the total population is, however, one of the most unfortunate elements in total war, and the British had to pay in terms of morale. Some soldiers found the destruction of homes and the slaughter of animals demoralizing [Nos. 405, 424, 647, 975], though others took it simply as part of the requirements of their profession and seemed inured to the horror [Nos. 424, 812]. J.F.C. Fuller also noted that the farms could be traps for guerrillas who came to visit loved ones, and so burning them was tactically a mistake [No. 424]. As Clausewitz perceptively noted, however, war is an extension of politics, and if the British purpose was to bring the Boer republics into some sort of federation as part of the British empire, farm burning was not a good idea. It created bitterness, strengthened the determination of the Afrikaners to continue the struggle at the time [Nos. 326, 613, 667, 1164], and proved a long term factor in the issue of South African nationalism [Nos. 71, 613, 667, 975, 1043, 1164]. Sometimes it is vital for a soldier to be a politician. Kitchener was not and the price proved high, even though militarily his plan made sense.

Farm burning caused the expansion of another policy. Camps—later called concentration camps—had been established for "loyalists" (Afrikaners from the Cape Colony and republics who supported the British) who needed protection from their neighbors, who regarded them as traitors. Initially it was planned to force the women and children from the burned farms to join the commandos, thus creating a logistical nightmare for the Boers. This was condemned as an inappropriate use of civilians for a military purpose, and was often impossible

anyway. The result was homeless families adrift on the veld. The authorities moved them into the camps, which expanded rapidly. Unfortunately the camps were hastily established and not all well sited for provision of water and sanitation. The result was repeated waves of epidemics, particularly among the children [Nos. 820, 948, 1024, 1259]. By the end of the war there had been perhaps 120,000 inmates with a peak death rate of 344 per thousand in one month (October, 1901). Total deaths during the war were about 20,000.

Stories of deliberate brutality and cruelty by the authorities, some no doubt true, others just as certainly false, spread [Nos. 130, 324, 916, 948]. The defenders of the camps argue that the death rates were not unusual for a wartime situation and that compared to the typical death rates for civilians in city slums at the time not so terribly out of line. They acknowledge that there were problems, but insist that the British authorities were humane [Nos. 820, 1018, 1154], and often blame the inmates. The Boer women, these writers insist, were more used to an open frontier life and did not always understand the importance of boiling drinking water and other such sanitary measures, nor did they particularly trust the British officials—often hastily assembled from available personnel rather than chosen for their knowledge—who lectured them about how to behave [Nos. 71, 1294]. Of course the other side maintains that conditions were horrible and deliberately so to put pressure on the Boers to surrender. They assert that the food supplied was inadequate for healthy existence [No. 737], and that sanitation was so badly handled that serious problems with illness were inevitable [No. 708]. The two sides of the debate can be explored in detail in A. C. Martin [No. 820] for the defenders and S. B. Spies [No. 1178], J. C. Otto [No. 948] and E. Neethling [No. 916] for the attackers. Such a study should be supplemented by the series of studies of individual camps done by A.W.G. Raath [Nos. 1021-26], but these, unfortunately for the chance of wide distribution, are only available in Afrikaans. Other accounts, mostly memoirs, include Nos. 20, 38, 79, 98, 130, 324, 489-91, 575.

The feelings of the people on the British Isles were inflamed. A faction of the Liberal Party opposed the war [Nos. 296, 698] and had been determined to embarrass their opponents in any way possible. The cause was taken up by a Quaker spinster named Emily Hobhouse [Nos. 50, 396, 422, 599-03, 671, 1058, 1215] who proceeded to South Africa to visit the camps. Her reports [Nos. 599-02] were nothing short of horrific. Women and children were inadequately fed, denied the most fundamental sanitary services, and dying like the proverbial flies from typhoid and other epidemics. These reports, if emotional and perhaps at times exaggerated, were too accurate to be brushed aside. The authorities bought time by appointing a commission of women, headed by Millicent Fawcett, a moderate women's rights advocate, to investigate [Nos. 79, 383, 1058, 1200]. The commission did find problems, and its recommendations were taken seriously and improvements made. The camps were also shifted from military to civilian control during 1901, and conditions improved, if for no other reason than that the civilian

authorities had more expertise and time to deal with the problems.

Another important issue regarding the concentration camps was the impact on attitudes in South Africa, in both the long and short term. Boers on commando took a mixed view. Some were outraged [Nos. 307, 326, 916, 948, 1178, 1260], and some leaders did report that the condition of the women and children was a factor in the decision to surrender. Others, including Commandant Louis Botha, claimed to be pleased that their dependents were cared for and safe [No. 582, 647, 820, 954, 1154], though many who have made this assertion were pro-British in attitude. It does seem at least possible that the men on commando did feel freer to go on fighting because their dependents were relatively safe. The long-range effect seems clearly to have been bitterness toward the British and an increase in national sentiment. The camps may have been militarily useful, though that is not entirely agreed or clear, but politically, like farm burning, they made the goals of British imperialism less likely of achievement.

The final issue about which the war was less than gentlemanly was race. The Boer War was widely proclaimed a white man's war (and sometimes still is [No. 1294]) and not a few regretted that whites were fighting one another rather than asserting their natural dominance over South Africa [Nos. 52, 424, 801, 1017]. The racism of the day comes out clearly in the memoir of J.F.C. Fuller who wrote disparagingly of the characteristics of blacks and casually about naming his black horse "Nigger" while in the same book describing with pride the work, including fighting, of the black scouts he commanded [No. 424].

Each side insisted that it would not arm blacks, though in fact, each did. The British employed blacks as guards, guides, and policemen. Such employment sometimes included arms. More significantly in the war effort, they used black scouts who were not only armed but expected to take the offensive against the enemy. Black leaders were encouraged to deny Boers access to their territory, and the Kgatla fought a campaign to achieve this [No. 894]. Blacks in the besieged cities performed numerous services from cattle raiding to actual defensive fighting during the sieges. At Mafeking, Baden-Powell has been accused of not including them in his assessment of food to person ratios and they suffered badly from hunger [Nos. 44, 433, 555, 667]. While refuted by some scholars [Nos. 591, 652, 1002], the accusations make clear the bitterness of the reactions to race.

The racial situation in Kimberly was also very bad. In both cities, efforts were made to get the native population to leave, but the besiegers were not inclined to allow such a reduction the number of mouths the defenders had to feed. The death rates for black children in Kimberley and Mafeking were staggering. One report was that virtually no black babies survived the siege in Kimberley, where Cecil Rhodes was known to comment about the inherent inferiority of blacks from time to time [Nos. 235, 667, 1295]. Although natives hoped for recognition, if not recompense, for their efforts, they got little. As is clear from the experiences of Sol Plaatje, one of the few blacks to write about the situation [Nos. 985, 1325], the response from British authorities was niggardly at best.

Nonetheless the natives were not unaware of the lesser evil. The British had shown some signs of support for democracy, and British law, in theory, treated blacks and whites alike.

For the Boers the arming of blacks was more problematical. They had for several generations been fighting local tribes for the land where they lived as a minority. Unlike the British, who at least in theory and in law if not in practice supported racial equality, they were not inclined to think that blacks were equal or should have civil rights, certainly not to the degree that would make their countries into democracies. Nonetheless, many Boers had black servants who accompanied them to war to hold horses and load guns in battle as well as provide cooking and other such aid. Such servants apparently did sometimes fight. They would have been under fire, and loading a gun for another to shoot comes pretty close to participating in combat [Nos. 908-11, 894, 1295] Literature from the Boer side also expresses outrage at the depredations [Nos. 326, 708, 954, 991] of natives especially during the later months of the war, and although they and their ancestors had made strong efforts to discourage resistance to their authority, there is little sense that their erstwhile foes might have some reason to seek revenge. The threat does, however, seem to have encouraged the desire to bring the war to an end.

The only conclusion from the literature is that the Boer War was neither gentlemanly nor white. The contemporary writings, of course, assert that it was both or that the side of the author was while his foes were not. More recent accounts often leave such issues—vital to the understanding of the impact of the war on national and imperial attitudes—on the sidelines. In this case, modern historians have really failed in their task of insisting that we acknowledge the problems of the past even if they are shameful. There is literature concerning blacks and the war, but it has not really permeated the overall picture. As the excellent scholarship of Peter Warwick [No. 1295] and Bill Nasson [Nos. 908-11] has begun powerfully to show, however, it was not really a white man's war at all. A full scale and dispassionate study of race and racial attitudes regarding the Boer War in both Britain and South Africa is, however, badly needed.



Chapter 5

Conclusion

The last year of the war was frustrating for the British, and the tactics of farm burning and concentration camps were the subject of much criticism (see Chapter 4). The vast resources that the British Empire brought to bear did finally force the Boers to accept a settlement [No. 984]. There had been abortive talks between Kitchener and Louis Botha early in 1901 at Middleburg. At that meeting, however, the basic terms that would be accepted the next year were laid out. The talks early in 1902 that led to the Treaty of Vereeniging were greatly furthered by Kitchener, who was eager to be done in South Africa, both because of his concern that the war was physically and morally undermining the empire and his desire to take up the command of the British army in India. Milner opposed accepting any terms due to his belief that a few more months of war would produce unconditional victory. Such a triumph would allow Britain to remake South Africa, a recreation that Milner expected to oversee. The Boers almost played into his hands from a mix of stubbornness and naïvete. They seem to have thought that if there were to be negotiations, they could ask for whatever they wanted, including retaining independence. They were wrong, and only Kitchener's pragmatic efforts to keep both sides talking saved the peace. He even told Smuts, informally, that the election of a Liberal Party government was likely in the next few years, and such a government would almost certainly reverse the more onerous aspects of a peace.

The treaty that was finally agreed upon left the former Boer republics in colonial status but promised self-government as soon as it was feasible. As Kitchener had predicted the Liberals took over in 1905 and after the election of 1906 agreed to autonomy. The decision has to leave some wonder about the cost of the struggle to retain control. There was a greater cause for puzzlement however. In the beginning, the British had insisted that they favored protection of the rights of blacks. Chamberlain had stated publically that a peace that did not protect the rights of blacks (he did not mean equality) would be "shameful." The

treaty clearly asserted that black suffrage would be deferred until after self-government, when, of course, London could not impose it. During the discussion of ratification, members of the Cabinet questioned this clause. Shamefully, when told that the Boers would not accept a treaty on any other terms, all question of protection for blacks was abandoned.

There were also problems about the Cape Dutch, British subjects who had sided with the Boers, who were regarded as traitors in London. Milner insisted they be treated as traitors, but with Kitchener's support, it was decided to include them in an amnesty, except for leaders who were disfranchised for life. The term was soon reduced to five years. Loyalists who had supported Britain and whom Milner had expected to control the future were largely thrust aside. The only other point of dispute in London was a promise to help pay for war damages. The problem was not payment but making it appear a gracious gift rather than a bribe for peace. For the Boers, once the more extreme nationalists, most importantly Louis Botha (President Steyn of the Free State was too ill to be a factor), agreement was quick. The best account of the negotiations is by J. D. Kestell and D. E. van Velden [No. 683], though Kestell's *Through Shot and Flame* [No. 681] and De Wet's *Three Years' War* [No. 326] provide valuable personal comment.

Conclusions about historiography are always tentative. Scholars are agreed that the fighting stopped. Why it started, why one side or the other was successful at one time or another, which commander's choices were right or best, whether political or military issues dominated, whether the results were worth the candle are all part of continuing debate. The arguments will be extended and repeated in the future, and new generations will have new perspectives. The details of the current views have been provided in the preceding chapters. Some general conclusions can be made, however.

The early interpretation that the war began due to British desire for the enormous gold resources of South Africa has given way to a much more varied mix of motives. A variety of imperial goals have been added, though the relative importance of these factors continues to be debated. The involvement of Rhodes has never been questioned. Arguments about his willingness to back away from the Jameson Raid, however, continue to be offered. Milner, too, is generally regarded as supporting confrontation. The likelihood of Joseph Chamberlain's direct involvement has been much more controversial. Although the early exonerations are now regarded as simplistic, the insistence that he was directly and deeply involved has also been modified. Biographers have and seem likely to continue to take differing positions as to the degree of his involvement.

The interpretations of military aspects of the war also continue to evolve. Although Amery's early criticisms of the British military continue to be repeated, there is now more of a sense that the problems were institutional and caused in significant degree by changing technology that soldiers were only just learning to use. Considerations of changes between the Boer War and World War I suggest that much learning was accomplished. Problems of generalship initially found

mostly on the British side are now attributed to the Boers as well. Buller made some mistakes, but was, perhaps, not as totally incompetent as often portrayed. Boer failure to pursue major strategic goals at the beginning of the war made their success unlikely. The tactical skills of Botha, De Wet, and De la Rey continue to draw praise, but they are no longer presented as quite as superior to their opponents as was once the case. If Buller's reputation has improved somewhat, Lord Robert's has deteriorated. Robert's brushing the Boers aside, taking their capitals, and assuming he had won has been recognized as a significant failure to understand. Kitchener has not drawn such revisionist attention. There has been some discussion about his tactics at Paardeberg, and of course his use of farm burning and concentration camps caused and continues to cause outrage. There is little controversy about these issues, however. Farm burning added to his use of fences and blockhouses did ultimately pressure the Boers into a settlement. Despite the military success, however, the political consequences were unfortunate. Although debate will certainly continue, the hundred years since the war have seen interpretations become more subtle and varied. Definitive conclusions are at best unlikely.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

|This page intentionally left blank



- 1 Abadie, Eustace Henry Egremont. *A Soldier in South Africa: The Experiences of Eustace Abadie, 1899 to 1902*. Edited by S. P. Spies. Houghton, South Africa: Brenthurst Press, 1989. Describes the details of a soldier's experiences of the war.
- 2 Abbott, J.H.M. *Plain and Veldt: Being Studies, Stories, and Sketches of My Own People. In Peace and at War*. London: Longmans, 1903. Includes some journalistic accounts of the war in South Africa.
- 3 Abbott, J.H.M. *Tommy Cornstalk: Being Some Account of the Less Notable Features of the South African War From the Point of View of the Australian Ranks*. London: Longmans, Green, 1902. Very readable and generally evenhanded account and particularly desirable for comments on everyday life on campaign.
- 4 Ackerman, W. H. *Opsaal: Herinneringe aan die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [Saddle-Up: Memories of the Second War for Freedom.] Johannesburg: Voortrekkerpers, 1969. Provides an account of a Boer fighting against the British.
- 5 Ackermann, P.C.M. *Aardrykskundige invloede in die stryd tussen Brittanje en die Boererepublieke met besondere verwysing na die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [Geographical Factors in the Struggle Between Britain and the Boer Republics With Special Reference to the Anglo-Boer War.] D. Phil. Dissertation. University of South Africa, Pretoria, 1957. Ackermann offers an unusual and important perspective to the analysis of the war. The British had clearly failed to take geography into account in planning for the campaign.

- 6 Airlie, David, 9th Earl of. *The Happy Warrior: A Short Account of the Life of David, 9th Earl of Airlie*. Winchester: Jacob and Johnson, 1901. Airlie gives a personal account of his experiences with the 12th Lancers until his death in June, 1900, at the Battle of Diamond Hill.

- 7 Aitken, W. Francis. *Baden-Powell: The Hero of Mafeking*. London: Partridge, 1900. Although this book covers the siege, the author's excessive admiration for Baden-Powell makes his interpretations suspect.

- 8 Allen, Vivien. *Kruger's Pretoria: Buildings and Personalities of the City in the Nineteenth Century*. Cape Town: Balkema, 1971. Although the conflict is not directly included, Allen provides useful background details for the study of the Boer War.

- 9 Alt, Brian. *Brian Alt*. London: Ballantyne, Hanson, 1900. Includes letters describing the experiences in South Africa of a member of the City Imperial Volunteers, who was killed at Diamond Hill.

- 10 Altham, E. A. "The Ladysmith Pigeon Post." *Journal of the Royal United Service Institute* 44 (1900): 1231-36. Provides some information about the problems of communications during the siege.

- 11 Amery, L. S. *My Political Life*. 3 Vols. London: Hutchinson, 1953-55. Amery, chief correspondent of *The Times* and editor of *The Times' History of the War in South Africa*, offers observations of many of the important people in South Africa and the political situation in Cape Colony. His descriptions of campaigning are, however, limited and superficial.

- 12 Amery, L. S., ed. *The Times' History of the War in South Africa, 1899-1902*. 7 Vols. London: Sampson Low, Marston, 1900-09. The meticulous efforts of the contributors make these volumes the best place to go for details of the conflict. The bibliography is also excellent. The editor does not, however, deny his pro-British feelings, and had some personal dislike for General Buller which colors the account.

- 13 Anderson, Ken. *Heroes of South Africa*. Cape Town: Purnell, nd.; rpt. 1983. Anderson includes biographical sketches of South African heroes, including Paul Kruger, Christiaan De Wet, Jan Smuts, and J. D. Kestell. He offers no references, however.

- 14 Anglesey, Marquess of. *A History of the British Cavalry 1816-1919*. 7 Vols. London: Leo Cooper, 1973-96. Anglesey defends the cavalry suggesting that in South Africa it was outnumbered, provided poor remount support, and successful with traditional tactics at times. He does admit that British horsemanship was poor.
- 15 Appelgryn, M. S. *Thomas François Burgers; Staatspresident, 1872-1877*. [Thomas François Burgers; President, 1872-1877.] Pretoria: HAUM, 1979. Burgers was president of the South African Republic just before the first Boer War and struggled to prevent British annexation of the territory before that. His biography includes information about Anglo-Boer relations leading toward the confrontation in 1899.
- 16 Appleton, Francis M. *The Volunteer Service Company (1st South Lancashire Regiment) in South Africa During the Boer War, January, 1900-July, 1901. Compiled With the Assistance of the Officers and Men of the Company*. Warrington: Mackie, 1901. Provides details of campaigning during the South African War.
- 17 Appleton, Lewis. *Britain and the Boers. Who Is Responsible for the War In South Africa?* London: Simpkin, Marshall, Hamilton, Kent, 1899. Appleton includes excerpts from many of the documents exchanged between the British and the Boers between 1881 and 1899 and comments about the situation made by prominent Englishmen on both sides of the question. He concludes that the Boers are at fault in the dispute.
- 18 Archibald, James F. J. *Blue Shirt and Khaki: A Comparison*. New York: Silver, Burdett, 1901. This analysis by an American officer, who spent time with both armies in South Africa, attempts to compare British and American methods using the Boer War as the British example. His comments include equipment, tactics, and military doctrine.
- 19 Armstrong, H. C. *Grey Steel: J. C. Smuts A Study in Arrogance*. London: Arthur Barker, 1937. This is a detailed biography providing accounts of Smuts as States Attorney in the Transvaal and of his role toward the end of the war as commando leader during the guerrilla campaign.
- 20 Armstrong, Henrietta E. C. *Camp Diary of Henrietta E. C. Armstrong: Experiences of a Boer Nurse in the Irene Concentration Camp, 6 April-11 October 1901*. Edited by Thariza Van Rensburg. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council, 1980. Gives details of conditions in the camp widely regarded as the worst of all.

- 21 Arnold-Forster, H. O. *The War Office, The Army, and the Empire. A Review of the Military Situation in 1900.* London: Cassell, 1900. This book is a diatribe against the British military and government. The criticisms do highlight problems that affected the military's ability to respond effectively and quickly when the war began.
- 22 Arnoux, Jules. *Histoire du peuple boer.* [History of the Boers.] Paris: Gedalge, 1905. Arnoux's extensive history includes an account of the war.
- 23 Arthur, George. *General Sir John Maxwell.* London: John Murray, 1932. Maxwell was military governor of Pretoria and decorated for his work with the concentration camps. Arthur's account tends to be pro-British and uncritical.
- 24 Arthur, George. *Life of Lord Kitchener.* 3 Vols. New York: Macmillan, 1920. Kitchener served first as Lord Roberts' chief of staff and then as overall commander in South Africa. Arthur, who is quite supportive of his subject, argues that the staff position in the Royal Army really meant a field command and that Redvers Buller and Roberts, Kitchener's predecessors as commander, went home proclaiming victory. They left Kitchener the dirty work of pacifying the country, which took time and harsh methods, both of which led to unfair criticisms.
- 25 Ashe, E. O. *Besieged by the Boers.* London: Hutchinson, 1900. Ashe, a medical doctor, in Kimberley during the siege, provides a detailed account of daily life and the condition of the town's inhabitants. Although he describes the problems between Rhodes and Kekewich, he praises both warmly.
- 26 Ashman, Patricia Ann Shaw. *Anti-War Sentiment in Britain During the Boer War.* Ph.D. Dissertation, St. Louis University, 1972. Detailed examinations of the popular opposition to the war, such as Ashman's, help set the difficulties of military decision-making into political context.
- 27 Aston, P. E. ed. *The Raid on the Transvaal by Dr. Jameson.* London: Dean & Son, nd. Aston includes a detailed account of the situation going back to the first Boer War. He is critical of the Boers, but notes that there were Englishmen who were determined to provoke conflict. He asserts that the English had to decide whether the "white races" were to be divided by war.

- 28 Atkins, J. B. *The Relief of Ladysmith*. London: Methuen, 1900. Atkins was the *Manchester Guardian's* correspondent and was present for the campaign to relieve Ladysmith. Unfortunately, his account is largely superficial.
- 29 Atkinson, C. T. *History of the Royal Dragoons, 1661-1934*. Glasgow: Robert Maclehose/The University Press for the Regiment, nd Atkinson provides a detailed tactical description of the campaign to relieve Ladysmith and then follows the unit through its pursuit of guerrillas with the forces commanded by Sir John French.
- 30 Athill, A.W.M. *From Norwich to Lichtenburg Via Pretoria Being Some Personal Experiences with the 2nd Norfolk Volunteer Active Service Company in South Africa 1901-2; Together with Extracts From Letters Written by Colin G. Cubitt Between June and December, 1901*. Norwich: Soman, 1909. Describes personal experiences on campaign in South Africa.
- 31 Auld, John William. *The Pro-Boer Liberals in Britain During the Boer War, 1899-1902*. Ph.D. Dissertation, Stanford University, 1970. Auld's study helps make clear the importance of the opposition in the political control of the war.
- 32 Avant, Deborah D. *Political Institutions and Military Change: Lessons from Peripheral Wars*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press, 1994. Avant attempts to analyze the responsiveness of the military to civilian goals in several conflicts including the Boer War. She concludes that the relative autonomy of the U.S. military makes it less responsive than the British, which adapted more effectively.
- 33 Average Observer, An. *The Burden of Proof: Some Aspects of Sir Redvers Buller's Work During His Recent Campaign in South Africa Considered From an Ordinary Commonsense Standpoint*. London: Grant Richards, 1902. The Observer is more opinionated than informed.
- 34 Ayde, John. *Soldiers and Others I Have Known*. London: Jenkins, 1925. Ayde helped raise and was eventually in charge of all colonial forces in South Africa. He maintains that had the British initially had a superior commander and competent staff officers, the Boers—he calls them rebels—would have been crushed much faster than they were. He praises Kitchener, except for failing to appoint a chief of staff and delegate authority to avoid red tape. Although his observations about

staff problems are useful, Ayde is often chatty and superficial.

- 35 Aylward, Alfred. *The Transvaal Today*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood and Sons, 1878. Written by an adventurer, this pro-Boer account of the first war provides valuable background to the conflict of 1899-1902.
- 36 Backeberg, H.E.W. "Die Betrekkinge Tussen die Suid-Afrikaanse republiek en Duitsland tot na die Jameson-Inval (1852-1896)." [Relations Between the South African Republic and Germany After the Jameson Raid.] *Archives Yearbook for South African History*. Vol. 12, Part 1 (1949). Provides background concerning German support for Boer militancy and ultimately its decline as Berlin backed away from a confrontation with the British.
- 37 Backhouse, J. B. *With 'The Buffs' in South Africa*. Aldershot: Gale & Polden, 1903. Backhouse describes experiences of the 2nd Battalion of the East Kent Regiment in the Boer War.
- 38 Badenhorst, Alida. *Tant Alie of the Transvaal, Her Diary 1880-1902*. Trans. by Emily Hobhouse. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1923. Badenhorst's account of her experiences is emotional, for it includes having her farm burned and living in a concentration camp. A fuller account was later published in Afrikaans: *Tant Alie van Transvaal: die dagboek van Alie Badenhorst*. Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1939.
- 39 Baden-Powell, B. F. S. *War In Practice: Tactical and Other Lessons of the Campaign in South Africa, 1899-1902*. London: Isbister, 1903. Baden-Powell has practical advice for soldiers and details of Boer War battles for historians. His ideas about the importance of artillery to suppress fire, surprise, and dispersion in attacking entrenched forces with modern weapons might have profitably been adopted by generals at the beginning of World War I.
- 40 Baden-Powell of Gilwell, Lord. *Lessons From the Varsity of Life*. London: Pearson, 1933. Baden-Powell's accounts of his experiences in the Boer War—especially the siege of Mafeking—are colorful but they contradict one another. These accounts must be used cautiously, for the evidence suggests that he overstated his own importance as well as the size of his opposition.
- 41 Baden-Powell, R.S.S. *Sketches in Mafeking and East Africa*. London: Smith, Elder, 1907. Baden-Powell includes a description of the siege

and his handling of it in this volume. It is not as exaggerated as in later autobiographical writings.

- 42 Badsey, S. D. *Fire and Sword: The British Army and the Arme Blanche Controversy, 1871-1921*. Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Cambridge, 1981. Badsey asserts that the British cavalry in the Boer War did relatively well. It was outnumbered and often not provided with adequate horses, but managed notable successes at Paardeberg, Elandslaagte, and Klip's Drift.
- 43 Bagot, Dosia. *Shadows of the War*. London: Edward Arnold, 1900. Provides an account of hospital work.
- 44 Baillie, F. D. *Mafeking: A Diary of the Siege*. London: Constable, 1900. Baillie, a journalist, includes many day-to-day events and descriptions of the siege.
- 45 Baird, W. *General Wauchope*. Edinburgh: Oliphant, Anderson and Ferrier, 1900; rpt. 1972. Wauchope, commander of the Highland Brigade, was killed at Magersfontein. Popular and well thought of, Wauchope has been criticized for not deploying his troops at Magersfontein until he had them massed in front of entrenched Boer riflemen. This uncritical biography does little to clear up the questions.
- 46 Baker, Herbert. *Cecil Rhodes*. London: Oxford University Press, 1934. Written by Rhodes' architect, this biography has some personal details but does not deal significantly with his role as politician and imperialist.
- 47 Bakkes, C. M. *Die Britse deurbraak aan die Benede-Tugela op Majubadag 1900*. [The British Breakthrough on the Lower Tugela on Majuba Day 1900.] Pretoria Sentrale Dokumentasiediens, S.A.W., 1973. Bakkes provides a detailed account of the British victory at Paardeberg, where General Cronjé surrendered on the anniversary of the Boer victory at Majuba Hill in 1881. The symbolism of the occasion made the battle a morale boost to the British and undermined it for the Boers.
- 48 Bakkes, C. M. "Die militêre situasie aan die benede-Tugela op die vooraand van die Britse deurbraak by Pietershoogte, 26 Februarie 1900." [The Military Situation on the Lower Tugela on the Eve of the British Breakthrough at Pieter's Heights, 26 February 1900.] *South*

- African Archives Yearbook*. Vol. 30, Part 1 (1967). Offers a concise analysis of the situation just before the relief of Ladysmith.
- 49 Ballard, C. R. *Kitchener*. New York: Dodd Mead, 1930. Ballard provides a detailed but very uncritical account of Kitchener's activities in South Africa.
- 50 Balme, Jennifer Hobhouse. *To Love One's Enemies: The Work and Life of Emily Hobhouse Compiled from Letters and Writings, Newspaper Cuttings and Official Documents*. Cobble Hill, B.C.: Hobhouse Trust, 1994. Balme includes much factual information about Hobhouse, whose work was significant in identifying the problems of the British concentration camps in South Africa.
- 51 Barbary, James. *The Boer War*. New York: Meredith Press, 1969. Although portrayed by the publisher as for the general reader, Barbary's book seems to belong in the juvenile section of libraries. His analysis is simplistic and significant facts are sometimes omitted and occasionally incorrect. He does, however, survey the war from origins to peace.
- 52 Barclay, Glen St. J. *The Empire Is Marching: A Study of the Military Effort of the British Empire, 1800-1945*. London: Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1976. Barclay is so eager to point out British errors that he tends to overstate and to leave out mitigating factors in his discussion of the Boer War.
- 53 Barker, A. J. *Townshend of Kut: A Biography of Major-General Sir Charles Townshend*. London: Cassell, 1967. Townshend went to South Africa without orders, and his biographer follows him from commander to commander looking for a job. His descriptions provide some information about conditions during the war and more about the Royal Army's organization at the time.
- 54 Barlow, Arthur G. *Almost in Confidence*. Cape Town: Juta, 1952. These memoirs of an Orange Free State journalist, while episodic, provide a variety of details of South Africans during the war of 1899-1902.
- 55 Barlow, Tafford B. *President Briand and His Times*. Cape Town: Juta, 1972. Although clearly sympathetic to the subject, Barlow's account of Briand's career as president of the Orange Free State, including his involvement in the first Anglo-Boer War, is not overtly biased and is well documented and readable.

- 56 Barnard, C. J. *Generaal Louis Botha op die Natalse Front, 1899-1900*. [General Louis Botha on the Natal Front 1899-1900.] Cape Town: Balkema, 1970. Barnard analyzes Botha as a military leader in the first year of the war.
- 57 Barnard, C.J. "General Botha at the Battle of Colenso." *Military History Journal* 1 (Dec., 1970): 1-6. Concisely describes Botha's role in the battle.
- 58 Barnard, C. J. "General Botha in the Spioenkop Campaign." *Military History Journal* 2 (June, 1971): 1-6, 14. Provides a concise but clear account of Botha's activity.
- 59 Barnard, C. J. "Studies in the Generalship of the Boer Commanders." *Military History Journal* 2 (June, 1973): 151-64. Barnard assesses both the strengths and weaknesses of the Boer generals.
- 60 Barnard, C. J. *Die vyf swemmers: die ontsnapping van Willie Steyn en vier medekrygsgerangeses mit Ceylon 1901*. [The Five Swimmers: The Escape of Willie Steyn and Four Comrades in Ceylon, 1901.] Kaapstad: Tafelberg, 1988. The British exiled POWs far from South Africa and the prisoners resisted. Bernard provides an account of one such prison and a dramatic escape.
- 61 Barnard, C. J. ed. "General Botha's Own Report on the Battle of Colenso." *Military History Journal* 1 (Dec. 1970): 6-16. Botha's observations make an interesting comparison to those of British commentators.
- 62 Barnes, James. "The British at Pretoria." *Outlook* 66 (Sept. 8, 1900): 41-51. Barnes offers observations of the Boer city after it fell to the British.
- 63 Barnes, James. "Fight at Magersfontein." *Outlook* 64 (Feb. 3, 1900): 249-58. Barnes, a correspondent on the scene, offers personal observations of the battle.
- 64 Barnes, James. *The Great War Trek: With the British Army on the Veldt*. New York: Appleton, 1901. Barnes, a correspondent, arrived in time for Black Week and was at Magersfontein with Methuen. He subsequently accompanied Robert's forces during the invasion of the Boer states and reports about the relief of Kimberley, the battles at Paardeberg and Sannah's Post, and the entries into Johannesburg and Pretoria. He gives a very detailed account of life on the march and of

the experience of some individual soldiers but seems to lack information (or understanding) of the larger issues of the war.

- 65 Barnes, James. "Roberts' March to Pretoria." *Outlook* 65 (Aug. 11 and 25, 1900): 861-68; 911-18; 959-63. Barnes is better than most correspondents in providing details and local color relevant to the military situation.
- 66 Barrett, C. R. B. *History of the XIII Hussars*. 2 Vols. Edinburgh: William Blackwood, 1911. Provides details of the unit on campaign in South Africa.
- 67 Barrow, George. *Life of General Sir Charles Carmichael Monro*. London: Hutchinson, 1931. Monro served as Assistant-Adjutant General to the 6th Division for the same period that Roberts commanded in South Africa. Barrow's account is short but does include significant extracts from Monro's letters describing and commenting on the war.
- 68 Barthorp, Michael. *The Anglo-Boer Wars: The British and the Afrikaners, 1815-1902*. London: Blandford Press, 1987. Barthorp's short book is clear, readable, and extensively illustrated.
- 69 Barton, G. B. *et al.* *The Story of South Africa. An Account of the Despatch of Contingents from Australia and New Zealand and Their Exploits on the Battle Fields*. 2 Vols. Sydney: World Publishing, nd. Barton gives a detailed account of the war in South Africa as experienced by troops from the antipodes. A number of editions have been published.
- 70 Baschet, Eric. 1900: *l'Afrique decouvre l'Europe*. [1900: Africa Unmasks Europe.] NP: E. Baschet, 1978. This pictorial history contains illustrations of the Boer War.
- 71 Bateman, Philip. *Generals of the Anglo-Boer War*. Cape Town: Purnell for South African Historical Mint, 1977. Includes biographical sketches of significant generals on both sides.
- 72 Batten, A.G.M. ed. *The Post Office Militant, 1899-1902: The Anglo-Boer War*. Woking, England: A.G.M. Batten, 1981. Batten has collected articles by and about postal employees who volunteered for service in South Africa published in the Post Office Staff Magazine entitled *St. Martin's Le Grand*. Although the focus is philatelic history, there is a variety of other information included.

- 73 Battersby, Henry Francis Prevost. *In the Web of a War*. London: Methuen 1900. Provides a personal account of the first part of the war.
- 74 Batts, H. J. *Pretoria From Within During the War*. London: John F. Shaw, nd. Batts' account is the personal narrative of a chaplain.
- 75 Baty, Thomas. *International Law in South Africa*. London: Stevens & Haynes, 1900. Provides details of legal matters regarding military activity during the war.
- 76 Baylen, J. O. "W. T. Stead and the Boer War: The Irony of Idealism." *Canadian Historical Review* 40 (1959): 304-14. Baylen's article is a very important contribution to the understanding of attitudes about the war.
- 77 Baynes, Arthur Hamilton. *My Diocese During the War: Extracts From the Diary of Arthur Hamilton Baynes*. London: George Bell & Sons, 1900. Provides observations of the war and the problems it caused from the point of view of an Anglican clergyman in the Transvaal.
- 78 Baynes, John. *Far From a Donkey: The Life of General Sir Ivor Maxse*. London: Brassey's 1995. Baynes chapter about the Boer War includes a description of Maxse's work as a transport officer and his involvement with the reorganization of the British army's transport service. In less detail, it also covers Maxse's subsequent posting as Commissioner of Police in Pretoria and its district. Baynes is overly quick to defend Maxse from criticism.
- 79 Bean, Lucy and Elizabeth Heyningen. eds. *The Letters of Jane Elizabeth Waterston, 1866-1905*. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 1983. Waterston was a medical doctor and a member of the Women's Commission that investigated the concentration camps. Her letters provide background regarding that situation.
- 80 Beck, Henry Houghton. *History of South Africa and the Boer British War: Blood and Gold in Africa: the Matchless Drama of the Dark Continent From Pharaoh to 'Oom Paul': the Transvaal War and the Final Struggle Between Britain and Boer Over the Gold of Ophir: a Story of Wild Beasts and Wilder Men in Search of Sport and Guns and Gold*. Philadelphia: Globe Publishing, 1900. Beck's work is superficial. He rushed into print to take advantage of Americans' interest in the war.

- 81 Beckerling, Joan Letitia. *The Medical History of the Anglo-Boer War: A Bibliography*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town, School of Librarianship, 1967. Provides a useful but dated reference.
- 82 Beevor, W. *With the Central Column in South Africa: From Belmont to Komati-Poort*. London: Office of the "King and his Navy and Army," 1903. Beevor includes a collection of photographs from the war.
- 83 Begbie, Harold. *Kitchener: Organizer of Victory*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1915. Written before Kitchener's death, this biographical sketch gives the sense of being wartime propaganda. Kitchener's work as field commander in South Africa is discussed, but not his role in ending the conflict through the use of concentration camps and other harsh methods, which have drawn criticism.
- 84 Begbie, Harold. *The Wolf That Never Sleeps*. London: Richards, 1900. Begbie's biography of Baden-Powell is superficial.
- 85 Belfield, Eversley. *The Boer War*. London: Leo Cooper, 1975. This clearly written, well-organized short survey is a good introduction to the conflict. Its handling of the origins and of the concentration camps is, however, cursory.
- 86 Bell, F. W. *The South African Conspiracy; or The Aims of Afrikanerdom*. London: Heinemann, 1900. Bell regards the Afrikaners as the cause of the war.
- 87 Bell, Moberly E. *Flora Shaw, Lady Lugard*. London: Constable, 1947. Shaw, who wrote for *The Times*, was involved in the South African situation, and Bell's biography includes significant discussion of the inquiry regarding the Jameson Raid and her interview with Chamberlain.
- 88 Bell, W. H. Somerset. *Bygone Days: Being Reminiscences of Pioneer Life in the Cape Colony and the Transvaal, with Some Account of the Jameson Raid and Its Consequences*. London: H. F. & G. Witherby, 1933. Provides an account of the Jameson Raid by a member of the Johannesburg Reform Committee.
- 89 Bellairs, Blanche. *The Transvaal War 1880-1*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons, 1885; rpt. 1972. This account, actually written by Colonel Bellairs and edited by his wife, of the first Anglo-Boer conflict, has been superseded by more recent accounts, but on the

whole it is evenhanded and includes a discussion of the causes and details of the campaigns. Bellairs' conclusion is that the Boers should have gotten autonomy.

- 90 Benbow, Colin H. *Boer Prisoners of War in Bermuda*. Devonshire, Bermuda: Bermuda College, 1981; rpt. 1994. An earlier version of Benbow's work describing the situation of Boers held in Bermuda was issued as a pamphlet. Treatment of prisoners resulted in some bitterness on both sides after the war.
- 91 Bengough, H. M. *Notes and Reflections on the Boer War*. London: William Clowes, 1900. Bengough's comments are focused particularly on tactics.
- 92 Bennett, Ernest N. *With Methuen's Column on an Ambulance Train*. London: Swan Sonnenschein, 1900. Bennett was an Oxford Fellow who volunteered to serve as a medical orderly. He gives a detailed account of medical problems and conditions during the drive to relieve Kimberley and some description and comment on the overall situation.
- 93 Benyon, John. *Proconsul and Paramountcy in South Africa: The High Commission, British Supremacy and the Sub-Continent-1806-1910*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 1980. This study of British political action in South Africa offers insight into the imperial planning and background to the war.
- 94 Berry, R. P. *The King's Guards: History of the Household Cavalry*. London: Nisbet, 1903. Unit histories such as this one provide details that are hard to find elsewhere but usually lack broader context.
- 95 Berry, R. P. *The Right o' the Line: Being Some Stories from the History of the Royal Regiment of Artillery*. London: Nisbet, 1904. Includes some details of campaigns in South Africa.
- 96 Bester, Ron. *Boer Rifles and Carbines of the Anglo-Boer War*. Bloemfontein: War Museum of the Boer Republics, 1994. The technical focus makes this volume, perhaps, best for military hardware enthusiasts.
- 97 Bethell, L. A. *Outpost Duties as Learnt in South Africa*. London: William Clowes, 1903. Bethell was a lieutenant during the war and describes his experiences.

- 98 Bezuidenhout, G. E. *Uit die donker woud*. [Out of the Dark Forest.] Johannesburg: Afrikaanse pers-boekhandel, 1946. Provides a study of the concentration camps in South Africa.
- 99 Billington, R.C.A. *A Mule Driver at the Front*. London: Chapman and Hall, 1901. Billington provides an eyewitness account, particularly important because of the focus on logistics.
- 100 Birch, James H. in collaboration with Henry Davenport Northrop. *History of the War in South Africa, Containing a Thrilling Account of the Great Struggle Between the British and the Boers; Including the Causes of the Conflict; Vivid Descriptions of the Fierce Battles; Superb Heroism and Daring Deeds; Narratives of Personal Adventures; Life in Camp, Field and Hospital, Etc., Etc.; Together with the Wonderful Story of the Transvaal, the Orange Free State; Natal and Cape Colony; the Kaffirs and Zulus; Richest Gold and Diamond Mines in the World, Etc., Etc.* Halifax, N.S.: Globe Publishing, 1899. This volume is a very popular and superficial account, and it was issued by several publishers.
- 101 Birdwood, W. R. (Lord Birdwood). *Khaki and Gown: An Autobiography*. London: Ward, Lock, 1941; rpt. 1957. Birdwood, most famed for his role with the Australians in the First World War, served as Kitchener's military secretary in South Africa.
- 102 Birkin, R. L. *History of the 3rd Regiment Imperial Yeomanry*. Nottingham: J. & J. Vice, 1906. The author, the unit's commander, has written a full history of his regiment's involvement in the war.
- 103 Blackburn, Douglas and W. Waithman Cadell. *Secret Service in South Africa*. London: Cassell, 1911. This volume describes a variety of government activities in the Transvaal in the 1880s and through preparations for the war which began in 1899. It contains significant information regarding the war of 1880-81, the place of blacks in the society, and acquisition of arms after the Jameson Raid.
- 104 Blainey, G. "Lost Causes of the Jameson Raid." *Economic History Review*. 2nd Series, 18 (1965): 350-66. Blainey argues that the raid was motivated by concern about the costs of deep level mining, which were seriously increased by the policies of the Transvaal government. He puts the blame on Cecil Rhodes and even more so on Alfred Beit.
- 105 Blake, J.Y.F. *A West Pointer With the Boers*. Boston: Angel Guardian

Press, 1903. Blake commanded the South African Irish Brigade and remained with Boer forces after it was disbanded. The account of his experiences spans the entire conflict.

- 106 Blanch, H. J. and Martin Rywell. *English Guns and Gun Makers*. Harriman, TN: Pioneer Press, 1956. Blanch and Rywell provide an account of the first (1880-81) Anglo-Boer War. The volume includes work by Blanch published in 1909.
- 107 Bleibtreu, Karl. *Strategische Taktik der Schlachten. Mit Berücksichtigung des Burenkriegs*. [Battle Strategy and Tactics with Examples from the Boer War.] Zurich: T. Schroter, 1900. Bleibtreu attempts to analyze modern war using the South African conflict as his example.
- 108 Bleloch, W. *The New South Africa: Its Value and Development*. London: Heinemann, 1901. The author, a correspondent for the *London Standard*, discusses the war and the future of South Africa.
- 109 Blerk, J. A. van. *Op die Bermudas beland, my herinneringe uit de tweede vryheidsoorlog*. [On Arriving in Bermuda: Recollections of the Second War for Freedom.] Kaapstad: Balkema, 1949. Provides personal reminiscences of the South African War by a POW held by the British in Bermuda.
- 110 Blood, Bindon. *Four Score Years and Ten; Sir Bindon Blood's Reminiscences*. London: George Bell & Sons, 1933. General Blood was brought from India to command one of the columns seeking to trap commandos in 1901. Although not in South Africa very long, he provides personal observations of the guerrilla war.
- 111 Boas, Guy. *Sir Winston Churchill*. London: Macmillan, 1966. Boas describes Churchill's experiences as correspondent and prisoner in South Africa.
- 112 *The Boers and the British: A History of the Events Leading to the Hostilities in South Africa*. Melbourne: Smith, 1889. Although it has some information about the situations leading to the Boer War, this volume contains little of major value.
- 113 Boguslawski, A. von. *Taktische Folgerungen aus dem Burenkriege und der Gruppenangriff*. [Conclusions From the Boer War About the Tactics of Mass Attacks.] Berlin: Eisenschmidt, 1903. All the major military powers studied the Boer War and drew the wrong conclusions

about the tactics used.

- 114 Bond, Brian. "The Disaster at Majuba Hill, 1881." *History Today*. 15 (July, 1965): 486-95. Bond's description of the battle and analysis of what went wrong is clear and well-argued.
- 115 Bond, Brian. "The South African War." In *Victorian Military Campaigns*. Edited by Brian Bond. London: Hutchinson, 1967. Bond's description of the 1880-81 is clear and concise. He tends to defend General Colley's plan for Majuba and to condemn the British government for giving ambiguous orders and lacking firmness. He also argues that the first conflict's settlement was not a major cause of the second, which he suggests was really caused by the struggle over gold.
- 116 Bond, Brian. *The Victorian Army & the Staff College, 1854-1914*. London: Eyre Methuen, 1972. Bond sets the intelligence and organizational problems of the British army in South Africa into the context of military education and attitudes in the late 19th century.
- 117 Bonham-Carter, Victor. *The Strategy of Victory, 1914-1915: The Life and Times of the Master Strategist of World War I: Field-Marshal Sir William Robertson*. [Published in England as *Soldier True*.] New York: Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, 1963. Although his account of the South African conflict is brief, Bonham-Carter provides useful details of its influence on reform in the British army.
- 118 Bonnal, H. *La récente guerre Sud-Africaine et ses enseignements*. [The Lessons of the Recent South African War.] Paris: Librairie militaire Chapelot, 1903. Bonnal argues that the British used their artillery ineffectively, causing frontal attacks to fail and also failed to use cavalry aggressively in pursuit of retreating Boers. Given these flaws, he thinks there is no reason for fundamental revision of the doctrine of the offensive based on experiences in South Africa.
- 119 *Border Regiment in South Africa, 1899-1902, The. From Photos. By Officers of the Regiment*. London, Eyre & Spottiswoode, nd. Includes contemporary illustrations of the war.
- 120 Bordie, J. ed. *The Muster-Roll of Angus: South African War, 1899-1902: A Record and a Tribute*. 2nd ed. Arbroath: Brodie & Salmond, 1903. Includes a variety of personal accounts, lists and other details.

- 121 Boscawen-Wright, C. *With the Imperial Light Infantry Through Natal*. London: Straker, 1903. Although quite short, this account is very good on the Battle of Spion Kop.
- 122 Bosman, Casp. ed. *Slaan en vlug*. [Hit and Run.] Johannesburg: Afrikaanse pers-boekhandel, 1946. Provides information about guerrilla warfare and the editor's father, J. P. Bosman.
- 123 Botha, J. P. *Die beleg van Mafeking tydens die Anglo-Boereoorlog*. [The Siege of Mafeking During the Anglo-Boer War.] D. Litt. Dissertation, University of South Africa, 1967. This is a particularly vivid account of the siege at Mafeking.
- 124 Botha, Johannes Petrus. *Met ryperd en mauser*. [With Saddle Horse and Mauser.] Pretoria: Bienenell, 1990. Provides a personal narrative of the war and biographical information about the author.
- 125 Botha, P. R. *Die Staatkundige Ontwikkeling van die Suid Afrikaanse Republiek onder Kruger en Leyds: Transvaal, 1844-1899*. [The Evolution of Statesmanship in the South African Republic Between Kruger and Leyds: Transvaal, 1844-1899.] Amsterdam: Swets & Zeitlinger, 1926. Botha offers valuable background regarding the situation leading up to the outbreak of war, but his strong anti-British bias limits the usefulness of his book.
- 126 Botha, Paul M. *From Boer to Boer and Englishman*. Translated by C. L. Botha. London: Hugh Rees, 1901. Originally *Van Boer tot Boer en Engelschman*. Cape Town: Juta, 1900. This is a political diatribe by a South African who favored the British. Botha denounced extremism on both sides, but particularly among the Boer leaders. He regarded "German and Hollander" influence as particularly subversive, and called on the British to eliminate it. He believed that South African prosperity depended on the British connection, but urged London to give more attention to Boer problems. The pamphlet is useful as a statement of a particular view, but the bias is too extreme to use it in any other way.
- 127 Bousfield, H. B. *Six Years in the Transvaal: Notes of Founding the Church There*. London: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, nd. Provides some information concerning the war of 1880-81.
- 128 Bowlby, Anthony A., et al. *Report of the Committee of the Portland*

- Hospital*. London: John Murray, 1901. Includes details of medical treatment and operation of the hospital during the first six months of 1900 as described by the institution's staff.
- 129 Bradlow, Edna. "A South African Year of Crisis 1899." *History Today* 11 (Oct., 1961): 712-19. Bradlow outlines very clearly and concisely the events that led to the war.
- 130 Brandt, Johanna. *Het concentratie-Kamp van Irene*. [Irene Concentration Camp.] Amsterdam: Hollandsch-Afrikaansche Uitgeversmaatschappij, 1905. Brandt describes one of, if not the worst, concentration camps. She spent several months as a nurse at Camp Irene, and so her comments have the strength of personal observation. She was, however, a bitterly pro-Boer partisan, reporting on a short experience in ward, thus it would be foolish to take her generalizations purely at face value.
- 131 Brandt, Johanna. *Die Kappie kommando of Boerevrouen in geheime dienst*. Amsterdam: J. H. de Bussy, 1913; rpt. 1958. Translated as *The Petticoat Commando, or Boer Women in the Secret Service*. London: Mills & Boon, 1913. The author (at the time Johanna Van Warmelo) served as a courier and helped hide Boer agents from the British. Her adventures were exciting and at times dangerous.
- 132 Bredell, H. C. *Dagboek van H. C. Bredell, 1900-1904*. [The Diary of H. C. Bredell.] Edited by A. G. Oberholster. Pretoria: Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing, 1972. Provides a South African's memories of the war.
- 133 Bremmer Smith, R. J. *Col. R. S. S. Baden-Powell*. London: 1900. Although this biography does have an account of the siege at Mafeking, its author's admiration for Baden-Powell colors the interpretations.
- 134 Brendon, Piers. *Eminent Edwardians*. London: Seker & Warburg, 1979; rpt. 1996. Brendon's biographical sketch of Baden-Powell is very critical.
- 135 Brett, G. A. *A History of the 2nd Battalion The Monmouthshire Regiment*. Pontypool: Hughes & Son, The Griffin Press, 1933. Includes a brief account of volunteers from the regiment who served with the 2nd Battalion South Wales Borderers in South Africa. There are details of a fight at Zand River, May 10, 1900, and of later arrivals who did

blockhouse duty in 1901.

- 136 Brett-Smith, Richard. *The 11th Hussars*. London: Leo Cooper, 1969. Provides an account of campaigning in South Africa.
- 137 Breytenbach, J. H. *Die Geskiedenis van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog in Suid-Afrika, 1899-1902*. [The History of the Second War For Freedom in South Africa, 1899-1902.] 6 Vols. Pretoria: Staatsdrukker, 1969-1996. These volumes are the South African equivalent to the British Official History. The scholarship is meticulous and based on state records. They have, perhaps not surprisingly, somewhat of a pro-Boer bias.
- 138 Breytenbach, J. H. *Komdt. Danie Theron: baasverkenner die tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [Commandant Danie Theron: Master Scout of the Second War for Freedom.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Boekhandel, 1950. Breytenbach's account of Theron's dramatic career makes clear how much better the Boers were served in the area of reconnaissance than the British.
- 139 Breytenbach, J. H. *Majuba Gedenkboek: Uitgee ter Herdenking van die Boere se Stydter Verkryging van Hul Onafhanklikheid 'n Eeu Gelede*. [Majuba Memorial Book: In Commemoration of the Boer Struggle for Independence of the Past Century.] Roodepoort: Cum Books, 1980. This volume is a popular account of the Battle of Majuba and includes many pictures.
- 140 Breytenbach, J. H. *Die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [The Second War for Freedom.] 2 Vols. Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1948-49. Breytenbach describes the background to the war and initial Boer military preparations. He is inclined to regard the British as the aggressors in the origins of the war.
- 141 Breytenbach, J. H., ed. *Gedenkalbum van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [The Memorial Volume of the Second War for Freedom.] Cape Town: Nasionale Pers, 1949. This volume is an anthology commemorating the 50th anniversary of the war. It covers the Anglo-Boer conflict from origins through peace in fifty-one essays. There is some bias in favor of the Afrikaner point of view.
- 142 Bridges, Tom. *Alarms and Excursions: Reminiscences of a Soldier*. London: Longmans, Green, 1938. Bridges, who went to South Africa without orders, managed to get connected to the Imperial Light Horse,

and got his men trapped in the open and under fire at Colenso. He then improved his reputation with some derring-do at Vaal Krantz and Spion Kop. He continued to serve as a scout until wounded and sent home.

- 143 Bridgland, Tony. *Field Gun Jack Versus the Boers*. London: Pen and Sword, 1998. Bridgland's account of the naval infantry brigades and the naval guns they brought ashore is particularly good regarding the technical problems involved. His account of the units' activities is also well done, however.
- 144 Briggs, Lady. *The Staff Work of the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1901: Embodying Some of the Letters Sent to the Morning Post from South Africa*. London: Grant Richards, 1901. This volume, based on letters Briggs sent to the *Morning Post* during the war, takes her beyond her expertise. It does, however, include descriptions of virtually all aspects of military service and life, outside combat, often based on personal observation.
- 145 Brink, J. N. *Oorlog en ballingskap*. [War and Banishment.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1940. Brink describes his adventures including experience as a prisoner.
- 146 *Britain and the Boers*. New York: North American Review, 1899. This compilation of three articles from the *North American Review* sets out a largely pro-Boer case regarding the origins of the war.
- 147 British Officer, A. [Cairnes, William Elliot.] *An Absent-Minded War Being Some Reflections on Our Reverses and the Causes which Have Led to Them by a British Staff Officer*. London: John Milne, 1900. The author attempts to analyze the British army's problems with staff work. Such problems continued, however, throughout the war.
- 148 British Red Cross. *Report by the Central British Red Cross Committee on Voluntary Organizations in Aid of the Sick and Wounded During the South African War*. London: HMSO, 1902. This volume provides information concerning the work of such organizations as the National Aid Society, St. John's Ambulance Association, Red Cross contingents from various countries, and private hospitals.
- 149 Bron, Alice. *Diary of a Nurse in South Africa Being a Narrative of Experiences in the Boer and English Hospital Service*. Trans. by G. A. Raper. London: Chapman and Hall, 1901. Bron's narrative is a

description of her medical work during the war.

- 150 Brooke-Hunt, Violet. *Lord Roberts: A Biography*. London: George Bell and Sons, 1901. Although Brooke-Hunt was in South Africa during the most active part of the campaign and adds personal memories, her account is popular and superficial.
- 151 Broughton, E. C. *A Continuation of the Historical Records of the 1st Regiment. Of Militia or 3rd West York Light Infantry, Now 3rd Battalion. York and Lancaster Regiment, from 1875 to 1905*. London: William Clowes, 1906. Includes details of enlistment and campaigning in South Africa.
- 152 Brown, Harold and E. Sharpe Grew. *With the Boers: An Account of the Past and Present Troubles with the South African Republics*. 5 Vols. London: Virtue, nd. Provides a superficial but extensive account of the war and its background.
- 153 Brown, John. "Boers' Worst Enemies." *Military History* 10 (Aug., 1993): 55-60, 90. Although lacking in depth, Brown makes a case for the importance of Australian and New Zealander troops and that their skills as frontiersmen gave them an edge against the Boers.
- 154 Brown, Stanley M. *With the Royal Canadians*. Toronto: Publishers' Syndicate, 1900. Brown describes the actions of Canadian troops in South Africa.
- 155 Bruggen, J.R.L. van. *Bittereinders*. [Diehards.] Potchefstroom: H. W. Huyser, 1935. Bruggen discusses the problems of the concentration camps and the Boers who fought to the very end.
- 156 Brunner, H.M.E. *Boer War, 1899: Chart Showing Organization and Distribution of the British Forces Selected for Service in South Africa with a Nominal List of the Staffs of All Units and Estimate of Strength of Our Available Forces*. London: William Clowes, 1899. Includes statistics and other data concerning the British forces.
- 157 Brunner, H.M.E. *Boer War, 1899-1900. Organization of the British and Boer Forces*. London: William Clowes, 1900. Includes information about the opposing forces in the South African War.
- 158 Bryant, Arthur. *Jackets of Green: A Study of the History, Philosophy, and Character of the Rifle Brigade*. London: Collins, 1972. Bryant

discusses the siege of Ladysmith in detail and follows units of the Rifle Brigade through the entire war.

- 159 Bryant, H. J. *The Autobiography of a Military Scapegoat, Being a History of the 1st Norfolk Volunteers Active Service Co., 1900-01*. London: Jarrold, 1907. Provides details of campaigning in South Africa. Published under the name Harold Josling
- 160 Bryant, Hallman B. "'Breaker' Morant in Fact, Fiction, and Film." *Literature/Film Quarterly* 15 (1987): 138-45. Bryant's overview of the Morant incident is clear and concise, and he adds a review of the literature concerning the case.
- 161 Bryce, James, *et al.* *Briton and Boer: Both Sides of the South African Question*. New York: Harper & Brothers, 1900. This volume, taken from articles published in the *North American Review*, provides a cross section of contemporary commentary about the war.
- 162 Bryce, James. *Impressions of South Africa*. London: Macmillan, 1898. Bryce was an effective observer and provides valuable background to the South African conflict.
- 163 Buchan, John. *History of the Royal Scots Fusiliers*. London: Thomas Nelson, 1925. Although well-written, this book covers 250 years and no topic, including the Boer War, is given very extensive coverage.
- 164 Buel, J. W. *Fighting in Africa*. New York: Official Publishing, 1899. Buel gives a histrionic account of imperialism in Africa in the 19th century including the background of the Boer War and a description of the first few months of fighting.
- 165 Bufton, John. *Tasmanians in the Transvaal War*. Newtown, Hobart: S. G. Loone, 1905. Bufton provides an extensive study of this colonial contingent in South Africa.
- 166 Bull, P. B. *God and Our Soldiers*. London: Methuen, 1904; rpt. 1914. This memoir of the war was written by the chaplain to General John French's unit.
- 167 Buller, Redvers. *Evidence of General the Rt. Hon. Sir Redvers Buller, V.C., G.C.B., G.C.M.G., Taken Before the Royal Commission on the War in South Africa*. London: Longmans, Green, 1904. Buller attempted to explain his conduct of the war and especially his apparent suggestion

after Colenso that Ladysmith surrender. His version is not particularly convincing.

- 168 Bulpin, T. V. *Lost Trails of the Transvaal*. Rev. Ed. Cape Town: Books of Africa, 1965. This edition includes the material from the author's *The Golden Republic* (1953) and *Storm over the Transvaal* (1955). It is a readable history of the Transvaal through 1900 with quirky personal details about important people.
- 169 Bunce, C. T., et al. *The Real Kruger and the Transvaal: The Britons' Side, the Historical Facts, Compiled from Various Sources*. New York: Street & Smith, 1900. Provides a very noticeably pro-British account of the situation.
- 170 Burdett-Coutts, W. L. *The Sick and Wounded in South Africa: What I Saw and Said of Them and of the Army Medical System*. London: Cassell, 1900. The author was sent to South Africa by *The Times* to investigate due to the enteric epidemic, and his report is detailed and highly critical of the medical care provided to soldiers in South Africa.
- 171 Burger, A.J.P. ed. *Worsteljare: heinneringe van ds. A. P. Burger, veldprediker by die republikeinse magte tydens die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [Years of Struggle: Memories of A. P. Burger, Chaplain of the Republican Forces in the Anglo-Boer War.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1936. Provides a personal narrative of the war from the Boer side.
- 172 Burger, S. J. *Oorlogsjoernaal van S. J. Burger, 1899-1902*. [War Journal of S. J. Burger, 1899-1902.] Edited by Thariza van Rensburg. Pretoria: Institute of Historical Research, Human Sciences Research Council, 1977. Burger's account covers fighting against the British in the early stages of the war and then being captured at Paardeberg and held on Ceylon until the end of the war.
- 173 Burke, Peter. *The Siege of O'Okiep: Guerrilla Campaign in the Anglo-Boer War*. Bloemfontein: War Museum of the Boer Republics, 1995. At the very end of the war, Jan Smuts having become a commando leader, overwhelmed a number of mining centers. In April, 1902, he attacked but left without taking O'Okiep, one of the most important. Burke tells this story.
- 174 Burleigh, Bennet. *The Natal Campaign*. London: Chapman and Hall, 1900. Burleigh, the correspondent for the *Daily Telegraph*, provides

a detailed account of the main campaign of the war. He is critical, and was criticized by Lord Dundonald particularly for biased coverage.

- 175 Burne, C.R.N. *With the Naval Brigade in Natal 1899-1900. Journal of Active Service Kept During the Relief of Ladysmith and Subsequent Operations in Northern Natal and the Transvaal under General Sir Redvers Buller*. London: Edward Arnold, 1902. The naval brigade provided important assistance to the army particularly with long range-artillery. Burne includes a detailed account of the sailors in action.
- 176 Burne, G.H.P. *The Leicester Militia in South Africa*. Leicester: Clarke & Satchell, 1902. Provides a variety of details about campaigning during the Boer War.
- 177 Burnett, Charles. *The 18th Hussars in South Africa. The Records of a Cavalry Regiment During the Boer War 1899-1902*. Winchester: Warren & Son, 1905. The necessity for mobility to counter the fast-moving Boer forces makes this history of a cavalry unit that was in South Africa for the entire war particularly useful.
- 178 Burnham, Frederick Russell. *Scouting on Two Continents*. London: Country Life Press, 1926. Burnham, an American, was Roberts' chief scout until invalided home in 1900. His account is good for some details of derring-do, but he is not critical and is openly pro-British.
- 179 Burnitt, Tom. *"Dear Tom" : Diary of a Young Soldier During the Boer War*. Bath: British Nostalgia, 1987. Although short, this work does provide information about a soldier's activities in South Africa.
- 180 Burn-Murdoch, J. H. *With Lumsden's Horse Agin the Boers*. Taunton: Barnicott & Pearce Printers, 1901. Gives a superficial account of experiences in the South African War.
- 181 Burrows, John W. *The Essex Regiment*. 6 Vols. Southend-on-Sea: John H. Burrows & Sons, 1923-1935. Burrows' account is solid and factual and includes details of fighting at Paardeberg, Driefontein, and the Orange River. It also describes the taking of Johannesburg and Pretoria and the tedium of blockhouse duty. It further includes descriptions of individual achievements.
- 182 Burton, Antoinette. "States of Injury: Josephine Butler on Slavery, Citizenship and the Boer War." *Social Politics* 5 (Fall, 1998): 338-61. Burton examines Josephine Butler's *Native Races and the War*

(1900) in the context of modern feminism.

- 183 Butler, Jeffrey. "The German Factor in Anglo-Transvaal Relations." In *Britain and Germany in Africa: Imperial Rivalry and Colonial Rule*. Edited by Prosser Gifford and William Roger Louis. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1967. Butler makes clear the significance of concern about the growth of German influence among the causes of the Boer War.
- 184 Butler, Jeffrey. *The Liberal Party and the Jameson Raid*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1968. Butler is very critical of Rhodes, whom he calls a "Robber Baron," rash, and unconcerned about means to achieve his ends. He describes the reaction of Liberal leaders to the raid and the choice to allow the matter to drop. The party's reaction is an important backdrop to the continuing crisis that led to the war.
- 185 Butler, Jeffrey. "Sir Alfred Milner on British Policy in South Africa in 1897." *Boston University Papers in African History* 1 (1964): 243-70. Butler examines Milner's attitude, perhaps most notably regarding race, and how he influenced British thinking. He also points out some weaknesses in the published version of Milner's papers.
- 186 Butler, Josephine E. *Native Races and the War*. London: Gay & Bird, 1900. Butler defends the British involvement in the Boer War by appealing to abolitionism.
- 187 Butler, Lewis. *Sir Redvers Buller*. London: Smith, Elder, 1909. This short biography, drawn mostly from *The King's Royal Rifle Corps Chronicle*, is very uncritical. The author does a reasonable job of describing the problems Buller faced when he arrived in South Africa, but passes very lightly over tactical errors in his first battles. He then describes in some detail Buller's successful campaign conducted before he returned to England.
- 188 Butler, W. F. *The Life of Sir George Pomeroy Colley*. London: John Murray, 1899. Butler's work lacks critical analysis. He offers a blanket defense of Colley, who is commonly blamed for the British defeats at Laing's Nek and Majuba Hill in 1881.
- 189 Butler, W. F. *Sir William Butler: An Autobiography*. London: Constable, 1911. Butler was British military commander in South Africa just before the Boer War. He was accused by Milner and others of being pro-Boer and ultimately sent home in some disgrace. He gives his

version in his own book.

- 190 Buttery, John A. *Why Kruger Made War, or, Behind the Boer Scenes*. London: Heinemann, 1900. Buttery was an editor with the *Standard and Diggers' News* in Johannesburg before the war. He regards Kruger as quite unreasonable and arrogant, and suggests that the Boers miscalculated the possibility of foreign aid, British military incompetence, and likelihood of divine aid for their cause. Buttery gives some account of the campaigns but is more interested in the causes of the war and the problems that had to be resolved in the peace than in military operations.
- 191 Buxton, Earl. "The Jameson Raid." *Journal of the African Society* 30 (April, 1931): 113-18. Buxton gives a description of the raid and concludes that Jameson, who acted against orders, was responsible for the outcome.
- 192 Buys, M. H. *Militêre regering in Transvaal, 1900-1902*. [Military Government in the Transvaal, 1900-1902.] D. Phil. Dissertation, University of Pretoria, 1972. Although in some ways more political than military history, Buys has focused on an issue of significant concern to the military.
- 193 Cairnes, W. E. *Earl Roberts as a Soldier in Peace and War: A Biography*. London: Hodder and Stoughton. 1901. Offers a superficial and uncritical account of Roberts' career.
- 194 Cakars, Janis. "Koos De la Rey in the Transvaal." In *Great Raids in History*. Edited by Samuel A. Southworth. New York: Sharpedon, 1997. Cakars describes and critiques De la Rey as a guerrilla leader.
- 195 Caldwell, Theodore C. ed. *The Anglo-Boer War: Why Was It Fought? Who Was Responsible?* Boston: D. C. Heath & Co., 1965. Caldwell presents, with commentary, excerpts from major works. Although intended for students, his book is a clear overview of ideas regarding the causes of the war.
- 196 Callwell, C. E. and J. Headlam. *The History of the Royal Artillery*. 3 Vols. London: Royal Artillery Institution, 1931-40. The authors discuss the guns used in South Africa and the lessons that were learned from the experience.
- 197 Callwell, Charles. *Small Wars, Their Principles and Practice*. London:

HMSO, 1899. Callwell's work was the basis for British colonial war tactics, and makes clear the causes for some of the problems the Royal Army struggled to overcome in South Africa.

- 198 Callwell, Charles. *Stray Recollections*. 2 Vols. London: Edward Arnold, 1923. Callwell describes service with the artillery in Natal, the Transvaal, and finally the Cape Colony during the South African War.
- 199 Callwell, Charles. *The Tactics of To-Day*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood and Sons, 1900. Callwell, a prominent soldier as well as historian, offers an analysis of the tactics employed by the British army as the Boer War began.
- 200 Cameron, N. G. *South African War Record of the 1st Battalion Queen's Own Cameron Highlanders*. Inverness: The Northern Counties Printing and Publishing Co., 1903. Provides details of the unit's action in South Africa from 1900 to the end of the war.
- 201 Cammack, Diana. *The Rand at War, 1899-1902: The Witwatersrand and the Anglo-Boer War*. London: J. Currey, 1980. Cammack's book is a scholarly study of the "homefront" and offers little specifically military information. The impact of the war on South Africa, however, was an important factor in its outcome, and so her book is valuable for understanding the conflict. Cammack is particularly good on the Uitlander community's divisions and the problems it caused for the Milner administration during the war.
- 202 Campbell, John. *Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902; Illustrated Postcards & Covers*. Auckland: Radway Press, 1992. Includes a variety of illustrations including cartoons and caricatures.
- 203 Canada. Department of Militia and Defense. *Organization, Equipment, and Despatch and Service of the Canadian Contingents During the War In South Africa, 1899-1900; Supplementary Reports, 1901 and 1903*. Ottawa: S. E. Dawson by Order of Parliament, 1901-03. Includes extensive details of Canadian soldiers in South Africa.
- 204 Canada. Parliament. House of Commons. Select Committee on Emergency Rations. *Reports of the Select Committee Appointed to Inquire into the Purchase of Emergency Rations for the Use of the Canadian Troops in South Africa, Also With Minutes of Proceedings and Evidence of and Exhibits*. Ottawa: S. E. Dawson by Order of Parliament, 1900. Although generally more relevant to Canadian

history than South African, this volume does provide some evidence concerning logistics during the Boer War.

- 205 Canada. Parliamentary Reports. *Copies of Orders in Council, General Orders, Appointments to Office and Militia Orders Affecting the Contingents, in Connection With the Despatch of the Colonial Military Force to South Africa*. (Sessional Paper No. 49). Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1900. Includes details of Canadian units contributed to the war effort in South Africa.
- 206 Canada. Parliamentary Reports. *Correspondence Relating to the Despatch of Colonial Military Contingents to South Africa*. (Sessional Paper, No. 20, 20a). Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1900. Provides details of the Canadian effort to take part in the imperial contribution to the war in South Africa.
- 207 *Canadians in Khaki; South Africa, 1899-1900; Nominal Rolls of the Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers & Men of the Canadian Contingent and Strathcona's Horse with Casualties to Date and also R.M.C. Graduates with the Army in South Africa*. Montreal: Herald Publishing, 1900. Includes statistics and some other details of Canadian troops in South Africa.
- 208 Cape of Good Hope. Parliament. House of Assembly. Select Committee on the Jameson Raid into the Territory of South African Republic. *Report of the Select Committee of the Cape of Good Hope House of Assembly on the Jameson Raid into the Territory of the South African Republic: Presented to Parliament by Command of Her Majesty, March 1897*. London: Printed for Her Majesty's Stationery Office by Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1897; rpt. 1971. This volume is the English language version of the Cape of Good Hope's government's investigation into the raid. As with all such official collections the standards of selection must be considered, but it does provide primary source material.
- 209 Capstickdale, Lyonel. "Spion Kop—Hill of Valour." *South African Panorama* 9 (Sept. 10, 1964): 3-9. Occasioned by the dedication of a battlefield memorial, this article includes a description of the battle and a number of contemporary pictures.
- 210 Carnegie, Margaret and Frank Shields. *In Search of Breaker Morant: Balladist and Bushveldt Carbineer*. Armadeale: Stephenson, 1979. This book is better researched than most studies of Morant, and the

authors show that the supposedly German missionary who was killed was actually a British subject. Their conclusion is that Morant was a scapegoat, but that he must also bear some of the blame for his fate due to personal flaws and failure to observe regulations.

- 211 Carrère, Jean. *La Guerre du Transvaal*. [The Transvaal War.] 2 Vols. Paris: Flammarion, 1901-02. Although extensive, this "instant history" survey of the war lacks perspective.
- 212 Carruthers, Jane. *Melton Prior: War Artist in Southern Africa, 1895 to 1900*. Houghton, South Africa: Brenthurst Press, 1987. Prior, a well-known artist and correspondent, visited troops on campaign during the first part of the Boer War.
- 213 Carter, A.C.R. *The Work of War Artists in South Africa*. London: The Art Journal Office, 1900. Includes black and white illustrations by various artists with text describing the situation and people portrayed. This volume is mostly valuable for visual images of the war.
- 214 Carter, Thomas Fortescue. *A Narrative of the Boer War*. Cape Town: Juta, 1883; rpt. 1899; 1985. Carter was a newspaper correspondent with the British forces during the first South African war (1880-81), which went far to create the situation that led to the 1899-1902 conflict. His account is detailed and critical of British leadership.
- 215 Cartwright, A. P. *The First South African: The Life and Times of Sir Percy Fitzpatrick*. Cape Town: Purnell, 1971. Readable biography of Fitzpatrick, who was a member of the Reform Committee during the Jameson Raid and who played a significant role in South African history before the Boer War.
- 216 Cartwright, A. P. and N. Cowan. *The Old Transvaal: 1834-1899*. Cape Town: Purnell, 1978. This heavily illustrated short history includes scenes of the siege of Pretoria and the Battle of Majuba Hill. The text is readable though brief.
- 217 Cary, A.D.L., Stoupe McCance, and C. H. Dudley Ward. *Regimental Records of the Royal Welch Fusiliers*. 4 Vols. London: Forster Groom for the Royal United Service Institution, 1921-29. Royal Fusiliers were in action from the early days of the war, and the authors provide details, but only rarely venture beyond factual accounts.
- 218 Cassar, George H. *The Tragedy of Sir John French*. Newark: University

- of Delaware Press, 1984. Cassar describes French's role at numerous battles including Elandslaagte, Ladysmith, Popular Grove (he asserts that the last year of the war makes too tedious reading to cover in detail), and concludes that the Boer War was the future Field Marshal's finest hour as a soldier.
- 219 Castle, H. G. *Spion Kop*. London: Almark, 1976. This volume is short and extensively illustrated but does provide a clear description of the battle.
- 220 Caunter, J. E. *The Campaigns in the Free State to 13 March 1900*. Aldershot: Gale and Polden, 1901. Provides a soldier's description and analysis.
- 221 Caunter, J. E. "From Enslin to Bloemfontein with the 6th Division." *Journal of the Royal United Service Institute* 44 (1900): 1139-59. Caunter describes personal experiences on campaign.
- 222 Cecil, Evelyn. *On the Eve of the War: A Narrative of Impressions During a Journey in Cape Colony, the Free State, the Transvaal, Natal and Rhodesia September 1899, to January 1900*. London: John Murray, 1900. Cecil's descriptions of South Africa help to set the stage for the war.
- 223 Celliers, J. H. "Die slag van Spion Kop (24 Januarie 1900)." [The Battle of Spion Kop (24 January 1900).] *Archives Yearbook for South African History*. Vol. 23, Part 2 (1960). Celliers gives a concise, clear account of Spion Kop.
- 224 Celliers, Jan François Elias. *Oorlogsdagboek van Jan F. E. Celliers 1899-1902*. [War Diary of Jan F. E. Celliers 1899-1902.] Edited by A. G. Oberholster. Pretoria: Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing, 1979. Celliers fought through the war as a lieutenant of De Wet and commando leader.
- 225 Changuion, L. ed. *Foto Biografie: Paul Kruger, 1852-1904*. [Pictorial Biography: Paul Kruger, 1852-1904.] Johannesburg: Perskor, 1973. Although the pictures included are extensive, there is little text in this volume.
- 226 Charteris, John. *Field Marshal Earl Haig*. London: Cassell, 1929. Although he briefly describes Haig's role as chief of staff to John French in the Boer War, Charteris makes no claim of distinction for

his subject in South Africa.

- 227 Charteris, John. *Haig*. New York: Macmillan, 1933. Short, descriptive, eulogistic biography of Douglas Haig, who served as a cavalry officer in South Africa.
- 228 Childers, E. Spencer. *The Life and Letters of the Right Honourable Hugh C. E. Childers, 1827-1896*. 2 Vols. London: John Murray, 1901. As Secretary for War, Childers corresponded with the military command in South Africa during the first Boer War. The details in the letters help set the first war into political context, show the strategic planning, and show the development of attitudes that helped produce the second war.
- 229 Childers, Erskine. *In the Ranks of the C.I.V. A Narrative and Diary of Personal Experiences with the C.I.V. Battery (Honourable Artillery Company) in South Africa*. London: Smith Elder, 1900; rpt. 1999. Provides a personal narrative of campaigning with City of London volunteers in South Africa.
- 230 Childers, Erskine. *War and the Arme Blanche*. London: Edward Arnold, 1910. Childers draws lessons about the use of cavalry from the Boer War and contends that the *arme blanche* was by 1899 already obsolete in it.
- 231 Childs, Wyndham. *Episodes and Reflections Being Some Records From the Life of Major-General Sir Wyndham Childs, K.C.M.G., K.B.E., C.B., One Time Second Lieut. 2nd Volunteer Battalion the Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry*. London: Cassell, 1930. Includes some personal observations and descriptions of service in the Boer War.
- 232 Chilvers, Hedley A. *Out of the Crucible Being the Romantic Story of the Witwatersrand Goldfields; and of the Great City Which Arose in Their Midst*. London: Cassell, 1929. Chilvers' account of the gold mines and Johannesburg covers the Jameson Raid and the Boer War, but at its best, it is superficial.
- 233 Chilvers, Hedley A. *The Yellow Man Looks On: Being the Story of the Anglo-Dutch Conflict in South Africa and Its Interest for the People of Asia*. London: Cassell, 1933. Although this work barely rises above the level of fiction, it does describe both of the wars and contains the first comment regarding the Breaker Morant incident from the South African point of view.

- 234 Chisholm, Cecil. *Sir John French: An Authentic Biography*. London: Jenkins, 1915. Chisholm's description of French's activities in South Africa is clear and detailed but ends with the departure of Lord Roberts. He is not at all critical.
- 235 Chisholm, Ruari. *Ladysmith*. London: Osprey, 1979. This heavily illustrated volume examines the events and people involved in the siege at Ladysmith. Despite the title, Chisholm takes a wide view including a full account of the relief campaign and other aspects of the war during the period of the siege.
- 236 Churchill, Winston S. *Ian Hamilton's March*. London: Longmans Green, 1900. Drawn from Churchill's reports for the *Morning Post*, this account of Hamilton's column on the flank of the army driving to Pretoria is colorful, detailed, and opinionated.
- 237 Churchill, Winston S. *London to Ladysmith via Pretoria*. London: Longmans Green, 1900. Churchill's account (drawn from his reports to the *Morning Post*) is exciting and articulate. This volume covers the first months of the war including his dramatic capture and escape and Buller's efforts to relieve Ladysmith.
- 238 Churchill, Winston S. *My Early Life: A Roving Commission*. London: Thornton Butterworth, 1930. Churchill tells in his typically colorful style the story of his adventures in the Boer War. He is more critical of Buller here than in earlier works.
- 239 Churchill, Winston S. "Some Impressions of the War in South Africa." *Journal of the Royal United Service Institute* 45 (July-Dec., 1901): 835-48. Churchill is always interesting to read but is sometimes prone to exaggerate. His comments in this article are a mix.
- 240 Clark, G. B. *British Policy Towards the Boers*. London: William Ridgway, 1881. This short work by a Transvaal leader is a statement of grievances that led up to the first Boer War.
- 241 Clark, G. B. *The Official Correspondence Between the Governments of Great Britain, the South African Republic, and the Orange Free State, Which preceded the War in South Africa*. London: William Reeves, 1900. Although the source of the material in this volume is the British government's Blue Books, it does provide convenient access to documents.

- 242 Clarke, Edward. *The Story of My Life*. London: John Murray, 1918; rpt. 1997. Provides an account of the background to the Jameson Raid and is critical of Chamberlain.
- 243 Clayton, Ann. *Martin-Leake Double VC*. London: Leo Cooper, 1994. Clayton tells the story of a member of the RAMC whose heroism led to two Victoria Crosses, one of which came in the Boer War.
- 244 Cleaver, Mrs. M. M. ed. *A Young South African: A Memoir of Ferrar Reginald Mostyn Cleaver, Advocate and Veldcoronet*. Johannesburg: W. E. Hortor, 1913; rpt. 1974. This personal narrative of war is by the Boer equivalent of a lower level commissioned officer.
- 245 Cloete, Stuart. *African Portraits*. London: Collins, 1946. Includes accounts of Kruger, Rhodes, and the Jameson Raid.
- 246 Cloete, Stuart. *Against These Three: A Biography of Paul Kruger, Cecil Rhodes, and Lobengula Last King of the Matabele*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1945. Cloete's biographical sketches are superficial and popular in style, though they do cover the background to the war.
- 247 Coates, Thomas F. G. *Hector Macdonald or the Private Who Became a General*. London: Partridge, 1900. Macdonald took command of the Highland Brigade after the death of its commander at Magersfontein and continued through the rest of the war. Unfortunately, Coates account is superficial and ends with the taking of Bloemfontein.
- 248 Coates, Thomas F. G. *Sir George White: The Hero of Ladysmith*. London: Grant Richards, 1900. Coates provides a fairly detailed description of the early battles in Natal and the siege of Ladysmith, but he offers little comment or criticism.
- 249 Cobban, James Maclaren. *The Life and Deeds of Earl Roberts*. 4 Vols. Edinburgh: T. C. and E. C. Jack, 1901. Cobban's biography is extensive but eulogistic.
- 250 Coetzer, Owen. *The Anglo-Boer War: The Road to Infamy, 1899-1900*. London: Arms and Armour, 1996. Coetzer's emphasis is the problems and errors that marked the early months of the British effort in South Africa. He defends Sir Charles Warren in connection with the Battle of Spion Kop. This book was also published as *The Road to Infamy*.
- 251 Coetzer, P. W. and J. H. Le Roux. eds. *Index to Periodical Articles on*

South African Political and Social History Since 1902. Boston: G. K. Hall, 1982. Although the focus of this work is not military history, it does provide a useful reference for the study of some aspects of the Boer War.

- 252 Cohen, Louis. *Reminiscences of Kimberley*. London: Bennett, 1911. Includes some information regarding the siege during the war.
- 253 Collen, Edwin H. *Diary and Sketches of the South African War*. Calcutta: Military Department Press, 1901. Collen's diary of the Boer War, in which he was a transport officer, covers the period of mid-January to mid-September, 1900.
- 254 Colonial Officer, A. *Twenty-Five Years' Soldiering in South Africa*. London: Melrose, 1901. The anonymous author provides details of experiences in South Africa including the war.
- 255 Colville, H. E. *The Work of the Ninth Division in South Africa in 1901*. London: Edward Arnold, 1901. Colville Includes details of campaigning and defends himself against criticisms for Sanna's Post and Lindley, after which he was relieved. Colville makes all his problems sound like the result of the fog of war, bad luck, and tired horses.
- 256 Colvin, F. F. and E. R. Gordon. *Diary of the 9th Lancers During the South African Campaign, 1899-1902*. London: Cecil Roy, 1904. Provides details of life and action during the war and makes clear the importance of cavalry in the effort to counter and control the very mobile Boer forces.
- 257 Colvin, Ian. *The Life of Jameson*. 2 Vols. London: Edward Arnold, 1922. Colvin's biography is detailed and he analyzes the raid, but he is very sympathetic to Jameson.
- 258 Combes, Paul. *Cent ans de lutte. Les héros Boers. Prétorius, Kruger, Steijn, Joubert, Cronjé, Botha, Olivier, Dewet, Villebois-Mareuil, etc.* [A Hundred Years of Struggle. The Boer Heroes: Pretorius, Kruger, Steijn, Joubert, Cronjé, Botha, Olivier, De Wet, Villebois-Mareuil.] Paris: Montgrédien et Cie., nd. Combes' biographical sketches are adequate though short.
- 259 Conradie, François D. *Met Cronjé aan die wesfront, 1899-1900 en Waarom het die Boere die oorlog verloor?* [With Cronjé on the

Western Front 1899-1900 and Why Did the Boers Lose the War?] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1943. Includes an excellent account of Mafeking.

- 260 Cook, Edward T. *Rights and Wrongs of the Transvaal War*. London: Edward Arnold, 1901. Cook's discussion of the war and the politics involved draws heavily from the Blue Books and other such official documents. He was admirer of Milner, and argues that there was a Boer plan to end British power in South Africa.
- 261 Cooke, John H. *5,000 Miles with the Cheshire Yeomanry in South Africa: A Series of Articles, Compiled from Letters and Diaries Written by Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of the 21st and 22nd (Cheshire) Companies of Imperial Yeomanry, Relating Their Experiences During the South African War in the Years 1900-1901*. Warrington: Mackie, 1913-14. Cooke has collected numerous letters and diary extracts and added a variety of newspaper articles to provide a description of the Cheshire Yeomanry in the Boer War.
- 262 Cooper, Alfred Duff. *Haig*. 2 Vols. London: Faber and Faber, 1935-36. Duff Cooper argues that Haig's performance in South Africa established his reputation as a soldier, and he describes the campaigns in which Haig fought. The value of his work, however, is mostly due to the fairly extended quotations from Haig's diary which are included.
- 263 Coren, Michael. *Conan Doyle*. N. P.: Stoddart, 1995. Coren has written a full and thorough biography including Conan Doyle's experiences in South Africa and his writing about the war.
- 264 Corner, W. *The Story of the 34th Company (Middlesex) Imperial Yeomanry From the Point of View of Private No. 6243*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1902. Corner's account of the war from the ranks provides many commonplace details that are often not included in descriptions
- 265 Corporal, The. *"I. Y." An Imperial Yeoman at War*. London: Elliot Stock, 1901. The Corporal's volume is a collection of diary extracts. Ronald Hackett reports the author to be P. Bodington.
- 266 Courtenay, A. H. *With the 4th Battalion the Cameronians (Scottish Rifles) in South Africa, 1900-01*. Edinburgh: William Brown, 1905. Although short, this privately printed account does provide some details of the life and battles of the Cameronians during the war.

- 267 Courtney, W. L. and J. E. *Pillars of Empire, Studies & Impressions*. London: Jarrold, 1919. Individuals profiled in this volume include Cecil Rhodes, Alfred Milner, Joseph Chamberlain, Lord Kitchener, and Louis Botha.
- 268 Cowper, W. *Amateur Atkins on Active Service with the Seaforths' First Volunteer Company in South Africa*. Wick: Reid, 1902. This account by a private soldier provides details of the lives and experiences of the British rank and file in the Boer War.
- 269 Crafford, F. S. *Jan Smuts: A Biography*. London: Jarrold, 1945; rpt. 1968. Crafford is readable and factually accurate but uncritical.
- 270 Crane, David M. "Colenso: The First Battle of the Early Tugela River Campaign (1899)." *Military Review* 56 (Feb., 1976): 77-91. This concise account of Colenso is marred by some unfortunate factual errors.
- 271 Crankshaw, Edward. *The Forsaken Idea: A Study of Viscount Milner*. London: Longmans Green, 1952. Crankshaw tends to support Milner's ideas of imperialism and portrays him as a patriot struggling to advance his nation.
- 272 Craw, Bella. *Diary of the Siege of Ladysmith*. Ladysmith: Ladysmith Historical Society, 1970. This diary, written by a youthful civilian, provides a detailed day-to-day account of life during the siege.
- 273 Creagh, O'Moore and E. M. Humphris. eds. *The V.C. and D.S.O. A Complete Record of All Those Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of His Majesty's Naval, Military and Air Forces Who Have Been Awarded These Decorations From the Time of Their Institution, Which won the Distinction and With Many Biographical and Other Details*. London: Standard Art Book Co., nd. This volume provides many details about the men and deeds judged heroic during the South African Campaign.
- 274 Creswicke, Louis. *South Africa and the Transvaal War*. 7 Vols. Edinburgh: T. C. & E. C. Jack, 1900-01. Creswick shows some tendency to stereotype the Boers. He includes very detailed descriptions of situations, but his tendency to portray the British in the best light reduces the value of his work.
- 275 Crisp, R. *The Outlanders: The Men Who Made Johannesburg*. London:

Davies, 1964. A sometimes fanciful telling of the story of the Uitlanders from the discovery gold to the fall of Pretoria in 1900.

- 276 Cromb, David L. and James Cromb. *The Highland Brigade and Its Heroes*. Edinburgh: Orrock, 1891. The authors provide details of the Highlanders during the First Boer War, but they are overly concerned with defending the Scotsmen against charges of panic at Majuba.
- 277 Cromb, James. *The Story of Majuba Hill: A Tale of Highland Heroism Told by Officers of the 92nd Regiment*. London: Simpkin, 1891. Although this short account is detailed and includes some firsthand descriptions, it was prepared as a response to suggestions that the regiment panicked and fled during the battle. It should be read with this bias in mind.
- 278 Crosby, Arthur Joseph. *Extracts From Notes Taken on the Boer Campaign*. Ladysmith: Ladysmith Historical Society, 1976. This pamphlet has information concerning the siege of Ladysmith in 1899.
- 279 Crowe, George. *Commission of H.M.S. Terrible, 1898-1902*. London: George Newnes, 1903. Sailors from the *Terrible* became part of the Naval Brigade which fought with distinction during the war. Crowe offers an account of their activities.
- 280 Crowe, George. *From Portsmouth to Peking Via Ladysmith with a Naval Brigade*. Hong Kong: Hong Kong Daily Press, 1901. Crowe provides a personal narrative of experience of a sailor detailed to fight on land in the South African War.
- 281 Croze, Firmin de. *La conquête des républiques sud-africaines, Transvaal et Orange*. [The Conquest of the South African Republics, the Transvaal and the Orange Free State.] Limoges: Librairie du XX^e siècle, nd. Provides description and comment on the Boer War.
- 282 Crozier, F. P. *Angels on Horseback*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1932. Includes a soldier's personal narrative of experiences during the South African War.
- 283 Crum, F. M. *With the Mounted Infantry in South Africa Being Side-Lights on the Boer Campaign, 1899-1902*. Cambridge: Macmillan & Bowes, 1903. Gives an account of the activity and usefulness of the mounted infantry during the Boer War based on experiences with the King's Royal Rifles.

- 284 Cubis, R. *A History of 'A' Battery New South Wales Artillery (1871-1899), Royal Australian Artillery (1899-1971)*. Sydney: Elizabethan Press, 1978. Provides a brief account of campaigning in South Africa.
- 285 Cunliffe, Foster Hugh Egerton. *The History of the Boer War to the Occupation of Bloemfontein*. 2 Vols. London : Methuen, 1901-1904. Cunliffe's survey of the war is detailed but sometimes superficial.
- 286 Currey, R. N. *Vinnicombe's Trek: Son of Natal, Stepson of Transvaal, 1854-1932*. London: James Currey, 1989. Currey's family saga provides a portrait of what being a burgher and supporting Britain in the war meant.
- 287 Curtis, Lionel. *With Milner in South Africa*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell, 1951. Curtis' diary covers the period of 1900-01 when he served first with the City Imperial Volunteers and then as town clerk of Johannesburg.
- 288 Cuthbert, J. H. ed. *The 1st Battalion Scots Guards in South Africa, 1899-1902*. London: Harrison & Sons, nd. This volume tends to be lists but does provide details of campaigning during the war.
- 289 Cutlack, F. M. *Breaker Morant: A Horseman Who Made History*. Sydney: Ure Smith, 1962. Cutlack tells Morant's story dramatically in terms of a conspiracy to suppress evidence (the official transcript cannot be found) and the fact that the men were executed as a sop to Germany.
- 290 Dalbiac, P. H. *History of the 45th Regiment*. London: Swan Sonnenschein, 1902. Includes details of campaigning during the South African conflict.
- 291 Daly, F.A.B. *Boer War Memories: Personal Experiences of the Early Stages of the War, 1899-1900*. Melbourne: Wilke, 1935. Offers a personal narrative concerning hospital work.
- 292 Danes, Richard. *Cassell's History of the Boer War, 1899-1901*. London, Cassell, 1901. This is a popular and detailed account but the analysis is superficial.
- 293 Daniel, W. H. *The Military Forces of the Crown*. Edited by T. Miller Maguire. London: Cassell, 1901. Sets out details of the military forces deployed in South Africa by the British.

- 294 Davenport, T.R.H. *The Afrikaner Bond*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1966. The Bond, led by Jan Hofmyer, was an important element in Afrikaner nationalism and played a part in the political struggle that preceded the war. Davenport's book is useful background to the conflict.
- 295 Davenport, T.R.H. *South Africa: A Modern History*. London: Macmillan, 1977. Davenport's book is an excellent general history for setting the war in context.
- 296 Davey, A. M. *The British Pro-Boers, 1877-1902*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 1978. This extensive study of the divisions in British society concerning the situation in South Africa helps make clear the difficulties of the government in making decisions about the war.
- 297 Davey, A. M. "The Siege of Pretoria, 1880-1881." In *Archives Yearbook for South African History*. Vol. 19, Part 1, (1956). In addition to describing the siege, Davey makes comparisons with the sieges of the second war.
- 298 Davey, Arthur. ed. *Breaker Morant and the Bushveldt Carbineers*. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 1987. Davey provides a collection of documents concerning Morant and his court-martial.
- 299 Davey, Arthur. ed. *Lawrence Richardson: Selected Correspondence 1902-1903*. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 1977. This collection of letters concerns the concentration camps in South Africa.
- 300 Davidson, H. ed. *The Seaforth Highlanders South Africa 1899-1902*. Edinburgh: W. & A. K. Johnston, 1904. This short account includes firsthand details of the unit's experiences in the war.
- 301 Davis, Charles Belmont. ed. *Adventures and Letters of Richard Harding Davis*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1913. Richard Harding Davis was a correspondent who was on campaign with the British forces in South Africa. He wrote extensively about the war, and his observations, if a bit pro-British, were detailed and thoughtful.
- 302 Davis, J., Woulds, J., and H. R. Harrison. *Some Notes on the Queen's Royal West Surrey Regiment Together With an Account of the 2nd and 3rd Battalions in the Late South African Campaign and Guildford's Aid to the Troops During Peace and War*. Guildford: Frank Lasham, 1904. This brief account has some details of two battalions

campaigning in South Africa.

- 303 Davis, John. *The History of the Second, Queen's Royal Regiment, Now the Queen's (Royal West Surrey Regiment)*. Vol. 5. London: Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1906. The entire history involves some seven volumes but publication is irregular. Volume five contains the account of the regiment's units in action in the Boer War.
- 304 Davis, Richard Harding. "The Relief of Ladysmith." *Scribner's Magazine* 28 (June, 1900): 39-56. Although Davis includes an overview of the whole siege, the real value of this article is in his observations of the conditions of the people at time of relief, when he was one of the first outsiders to enter the city.
- 305 Davis, Richard Harding. *With Both Armies in South Africa*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1900. Davis, a correspondent, provides first-hand observation of the two forces in the early part of the war.
- 306 Davis, Webster. *John Bull's Crime or Assaults on Republics*. London: Abbey Press, 1901. Davis gives the pro-Boer explanation of the war.
- 307 Davitt, Michael. *The Boer Fight for Freedom: From the Beginning of Hostilities to the Peace of Pretoria*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1901; rpt. 1972, 1988. Davitt, who resigned from the House of Commons in outrage over the outbreak of hostilities, makes no effort to conceal his bias in his account of the war.
- 308 Davson, H. M. *The Story of 'G' Troop Royal Horse Artillery*. Woolwich: Royal Artillery Institution, 1914. Davson focuses particularly on the Boer War in this book.
- 309 Defender. *Sir Charles Warren and Spion Kop: A Vindication*. London: Smith, Elder, 1902. This volume is too partisan to be convincing.
- 310 De Graaf, H. J. *De Boerenoorlog in oude ansichten*. [The Boer War in Old Pictures.] Zaltbommel: Europese Bibliotheek, 1972. Includes contemporary illustrations of the South African War.
- 311 De Kiewiet, C. W. *A History of South Africa, Social and Economic*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1941. Despite its age (it has been reprinted repeatedly), De Kiewiet's history is very useful for setting the circumstances and events of the war into context. De Kiewiet tends to emphasize the constructive elements in British policy which favored

an autonomous South Africa in the empire.

- 312 De Kiewiet, Cornelius. *The Imperial Factor in South Africa: A Study in Politics and Economics*. Translated by Lucy Hotz. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1937; rpt. 1965. De Kiewiet tries to analyze the significance of English involvement in South African affairs and provides context for the problems that caused the war.
- 313 De Lange, J. H. *The Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902, on Film*. Pretoria: State Archives Service, 1991. Offers information, including catalogs, of films concerning the war.
- 314 De la Rey, J. E. (Mrs.) *A Woman's Wanderings and Trials During the Anglo-Boer War*. Trans. by Lucy Holtz. London: Fisher Unwin, 1903. Memoirs of the wife of the important Boer general Koos De la Rey, this volume provides information about the problems of living in South Africa during the war. The original edition is *Mijne omzwevingen en beproevingen gedurende den oorlog, Herinneringen van J. E. De la Rey*. (Amsterdam, nd.)
- 315 De Lisle, Beauvoir. *Reminiscences of Sport and War*. London: Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1939. De Lisle was an officer in the mounted infantry and describes his experiences, particularly at the Battle of Diamond Hill, and as a column commander during the effort to control the guerrillas in the latter part of the war.
- 316 Dennison, C. G. *A Fight to the Finish*. London: Longmans, Green, 1904. Major Dennison includes reminiscences of both Boer Wars.
- 317 Denoon, Donald. *A Grand Illusion: The Failure of Imperial Policy in the Transvaal Colony During the Period of Reconstruction, 1900-1905*. London: Longman, 1973. Denoon analyzes the impact of the war on the development of Afrikaner nationalism and the various problems such as dealing with Uitlanders and blacks that confounded British policy. He does not consider the peace itself a major factor in the failure of imperial policy.
- 318 Denoon, Donald. "Participation in the Boer War: People's War, People's Non-War or Non-People's War?" In *War and Society in Africa*. Edited by B. A. Ogot. London: Frank Cass, 1972. Denoon is one of only a few scholars who have begun to explore the role of blacks in the war and debunk the idea of the White Man's War.

- 319 Denoon, Donald. *Southern Africa Since 1800*. London: Longman, 1972.
Denoon's general history is very helpful in setting the war into context.
- 320 Denton, Kit. *The Breaker: The Novel Behind Breaker Morant*. Toronto: Horizon Publishing, 1981 orig. 1973. This fictionalized account of the Breaker Morant incident is important because of its popularity. Denton chose the fictional format when his research was frustrated by missing or otherwise unavailable records, and his book did much to expand the myth of Morant and the Bushveldt Carbineers.
- 321 Denton, Kit. *Closed File*. Adelaide: Rigby, 1983. In this volume, Denton gives a factual account of Breaker Morant to counter some of the romantic elements that his fictional account had helped spread. He argues that the trial was as fair as officers without legal training could make it. He thinks Kitchener probably did influence the decision regarding capital punishment, and suggests without definite proof that the government has tried to cover up the incident.
- 322 De Souza, C.W.L. *No Charge for Delivery*. Cape Town: Books of Africa, 1969. This volume is a compilation of telegrams concerning the war originally made by Louis de Souza, Secretary for War in Pretoria. Although often short and in need of more context than is provided, these messages are a significant primary source for the study of the war.
- 323 De Villiers, Rocco. *"Dagboek" van Rocco de Villiers*. [Diary of Rocco de Villiers.] Bloemfontein: Suid-Afrikaanse Akademie vir Wetenskap en kuns in samewerking met die Oorlogsmuseum, 1975. Provides the diary of a member of the Free State government.
- 324 Devitt, Napier. *The Concentration Camps in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: Shuter & Shooter, 1941. This pamphlet is an extremely stated (probably exaggerated) account of the horrors of the concentration camps.
- 325 Dewar, T. F. *With the Scottish Yeomanry Being a Reprint Somewhat Altered and Extended of Letters Written From South Africa During the War of 1899-1901*. Arbreath: Buncle, 1901. Gives a doctor's firsthand account of campaigning during the Boer War.
- 326 De Wet, Christiaan. *Three Years' War*. London: Archibald Constable, 1902. Published in Dutch as *De Strijd tussen Boer en Brit. De heinnering van den Boeren-generaal, C. R. De Wet*. Amsterdam:

Boekhandel voorheen Hoveker & Wormser, 1902. De Wet's account, published in numerous editions and languages since appearing, is the best firsthand account of campaigning from the Boer side.

- 327 "Diary of a Boer Before Ladysmith." *Blackwood's Magazine* 167 (May, 1900): 700-708. Provides firsthand commentary regarding the siege from the attackers' perspective.
- 328 *Diary of the Siege of Kimberley, During the Transvaal War, October 1899, to February, 1900, By a Beaconsfield Resident.* Grahamstown: Grocott and Sherry, 1900. Although short and obscure, the firsthand nature of this account makes it worth pursuing.
- 329 Dickson, W. K.-L. *The Biograph in Battle: Its Story in the South African War, Related With Personal Experiences.* London: Fisher Unwin, 1901; rpt. 1995. Dickson describes making an early form of motion pictures of the war, and describes his experiences on campaign.
- 330 Dinwiddie, William. "Advance on Pretoria." *Harper's Weekly* 44 (Aug. 18-Sept 1, 1900): 770-71; 794-95; 817-19. A journalistic account of aspects of the campaign.
- 331 Dixon, Clive M. *The Leaguer of Ladysmith.* London, Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1900. Dixon matches caricatures and other illustrations with pages of text. His focus is humor.
- 332 Dixon, Norman. *On the Psychology of Military Incompetence.* London: Jonathan Cape, 1976. Dixon, a psychologist, attempts to explain failure, especially Redvers Buller's, in the Boer War by the application of a variety of principles from his discipline. He is not entirely convincing.
- 333 Dooner, Mildred G. *The "Last Post" : Being a Roll of All Officers (Naval, Military or Colonial) Who Gave Their Lives for Their Queen, King and Country in the South African War, 1899-1902.* London: Simpkin, Marshall, Hamilton, Kent, 1903; rpt. 1980. Provides a useful check-list.
- 334 Dorman, George L. *Letters From South Africa.* Saltburn-By-the-Sea: William Rapp & Sons Printers, nd. The volume is a collection of letters about experiences in the war by a junior officer killed at Kroonstad in 1901.

- 335 Dormer, F. J. *Vengeance as a Policy in Afrikanerland: A Plea for a New Departure*. London: Nisbit, 1901; rpt. 1970. Dormer's book, originally written as essays from 1895 to 1899, shows his dislike for Kruger and Rhodes. He favored a compromise settlement based on racial solidarity. Because he knew many of the key leaders during the pre-war era, his comments are in part drawn from personal experience.
- 336 Douglas, George. *The Life of Major General Wauchope*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1904. Douglas describes the background and development of Magersfontein to the point of Wauchope's death. He is generally uncritical and ignores issues about which unfavorable comments have been made concerning the general
- 337 Downey, Fairfax. *Richard Harding Davis*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1933. Davis was a newspaper man who spent time with the British forces and wrote several books about the war. His experiences provide a picture of life on campaign, though from the perspective of a noncombatant civilian.
- 338 Doyle, Arthur Conan. *The Great Boer War*. London: Smith Elder, 1900. Doyle's account ends with the taking of Pretoria, which he thought signaled the end of the war. He includes detailed descriptions of the military operations to that point, but has a distinctly pro-British attitude. He later extended his account.
- 339 Doyle, Arthur Conan. *The War in South Africa: Its Cause and Conduct*. London: Smith Elder, 1902. Doyle's analysis tends to favor the British, but he does include much detail.
- 340 Driver, Kate. *Experience of a Siege: A Nurse Looks Back on Ladysmith*. Ladysmith: Ladysmith Historical Society, 1978; rpt. 1994. Driver's pamphlet includes firsthand information regarding the siege.
- 341 Drus, Ethel. "The Question of Imperial Complicity in the Jameson Raid." *English Historical Review* 68 (Oct., 1953): 583-93. Drus supports the idea of official involvement in the raid.
- 342 Drus, Ethel. "A Report on the Papers of Joseph Chamberlain Relating to the Jameson Raid and the Inquiry." *Bulletin of the Institute for Historical Research*. 25 (1952): 33-62. Drus argues that Chamberlain was involved.
- 343 Drus, Ethel. "Select Documents From the Chamberlain Papers Concerning

Anglo-Transvaal Relations, 1896-1899." *Bulletin of the Institute for Historical Research* 27 (1954): 156-189. The documents presented support Drus' contention that Chamberlain, Milner, Salisbury, and Balfour were involved in the causes of the war.

- 344 Dudley, Charles. "The Boer View of Buller: New Evidence." *Army Quarterly* 114 (July, 1984): 320-27. Dudley argues, based on sworn testimony given after the war, that the Boers respected Buller as a soldier and believed that he did the best possible in a difficult situation and with a force not well adapted to the situation in South Africa.
- 345 Duminy, A. H. *Sir Alfred Milner and the Outbreak of the Anglo-Boer War*. Durban: University of Natal, 1976. Although of pamphlet length, Duminy's piece provides a scholarly account of Milner's involvement in the background of the war.
- 346 Duminy, A. H. and W. R. Guest. eds. *Fitzpatrick: South African Politician: Selected Papers 1896-1905*. Johannesburg: McGraw-Hill, 1976. Fitzpatrick was a Transvaal leader and involved in the Jameson Raid. His papers provide some information concerning the political problems that caused the war of 1899-1902.
- 347 Duminy, Andrew and Bill Guest. *Interfering in Politics: A Biography of Sir Percy Fitzpatrick*. Johannesburg: Lowry, 1987. Provides Transvaal political background to the causes of the Boer War.
- 348 Du Moulin, L. E. *Two Years on Trek: Being Some Account of the Royal Sussex Regiment in South Africa*. London: John Murray, 1907. Du Molin describes life on campaign and military operations during the war.
- 349 Dundonald, The Earl of. *My Army Life*. London: Edward Arnold, 1926. Dundonald commanded cavalry under Buller and often took the initiative, despite the lack of support from his commanders.
- 350 Dunlop, John K. *The Development of the British Army, 1899-1914, From the Eve of the Boer War to the Eve of the Great War, with Special Reference to the Territorial Force*. London: Methuen, 1938. Includes information useful for understanding the organization and problems of the Royal Army in South Africa.
- 351 Dunn, J. S. "Buller's March From Ladysmith to Newcastle." *Independent* 52 (July 19, 1900): 1722-1725. Dunn's observations of the campaign

after the relief of Ladysmith are eyewitness details.

- 352 Dunn-Pattison, R. P. *The History of the 91st Argyllshire Highlanders. Now the 1st Battalion Princess Louise's (Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders).* Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons, 1910. Includes account of the campaign in South Africa.
- 353 Du Plessis, C.N.J. *The Transvaal Boer Speaking for Himself.* London: Jarrold, 1899. Comments, such as this volume, from Boers help explain and set the conflict into context of their particular point of view.
- 354 Du Plessis, Gezina. *Laslap Herinneringe aan die Driejarige Oorlog.* [Patchwork Memoir of Three Years of War.] Pretoria: Afrikanervolkswag, 1989. The author was the daughter of Paul Kruger's grandson and secretary. The book is his reminiscences.
- 355 Du Plessis, Johannes. *The Life of Andrew Murray of South Africa.* London: Marshal Bros., 1919. Murray, a Scot and one of the organizers of the Dutch Reform Church in South Africa, includes a portrayal of the Boer side in the first Anglo-Boer conflict.
- 356 Du Plessis, Johannes. compiler. *President Kruger aan die Woord: Verkiesings Manifeste, Intreerede en Toespraake van President S.J.P. Kruger.* [President Kruger's Words: Election Platform, Inaugural Address, and Speeches of President S.J.P. Kruger.] Bloemfontein: Sacum, 1952. This volume is a collection of Kruger's speeches and other statements from 1881 to 1898.
- 357 Du Plessis, Pieter Johannes. *The Life and Work of Gustav Preller, 1875-1943.* D. Phil. Dissertation, University of Pretoria, 1989. Preller, later an influential journalist, served with the Boer artillery in Natal and was ultimately sent as a POW to India.
- 358 Durand, Mortimer. *Field-Marshal Sir George White.* 2 Vols. Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons, 1915. Durand's account of Sir George White, who chose to be invested in Ladysmith, is quite sympathetic to the subject.
- 359 Du Toit, Petrus Jacobus. *Diary of a National Scout, P. J. du Toit, 1900-1902.* Edited by J. P. Brits. Pretoria: Institute for Historical Research, Human Sciences Research Council, 1974. Du Toit's account is notable because he was an Afrikaner who served on the British side in the war.

His perspective is unusual.

- 360 DuVal, Charles. *With a Show Through Southern Africa*. 2 Vols. London: Tinsley, 1881; rpt. 1885. The author was a traveling entertainer who ended up in Pretoria during the first Boer War. His account of the siege of the that city and of the situation in 1881 is informative and good background to the study of the 1899-1902 conflict.
- 361 Duval, Roger R. *Au Transvaal et dans le Sud-Africain avec les attachés militaires*. [To the Transvaal and in the South African War with the Military Attachés.] Paris: C. Delagrave, 1902. Duval's comments and descriptions are drawn from professional military observations.
- 362 Duxbury, G. R. *David and Goliath: The First War of Independence, 1880-1881*. Johannesburg: South African National Museum of Military History, 1981. This short volume is mostly descriptive.
- 363 Duxbury, George R. *The Battle of Magersfontein, 11th December, 1899*. Johannesburg: South African National Museum of Military History, 1979. Although quite short, Duxbury's account is clear and well structured.
- 364 Edwards, Neville. *The Transvaal in War and Peace*. London: Virtue, 1900. Edwards offers extensive detail about South African society, economy, and government leading up to the war and some limited comment on the actual conflict. His book is heavily illustrated.
- 365 Edwards, R. F. ed. *Professional Papers of the Corps of Royal Engineers. Royal Engineers Institute Occasional Papers*. Vols. 24 and 27. Chatham: W. & J. Mackay, 1900 and 1901. These volumes contain technical information concerning equipment and engineering works during the war.
- 366 Emden, P. H. *Randlords*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1935. The role of the mine owners in the causes of the war has been debated. Emden provides background concerning these figures.
- 367 Engelbrecht, Joseph A., Jr. *War Termination: Why Does a State Decide to Stop Fighting?* Ph. D. Dissertation, Columbia University, 1992. The author contrasts the Boer (1902) and Japanese (1945) surrenders with that of the British to fight on (1940) in an effort to determine the factors that lead to yielding. He considers a variety of factors concerning such decisions.

- 368 Engelbrecht, S. P. *President Thomas François Burgers: A Biography*. Pretoria: J. H. de H. Bussy, 1946; orig. 1934. This biography, originally in Afrikaans, is sympathetic toward Burgers, the president of the South African Republic at the beginning of the first Boer War.
- 369 Engelenburg, F. V. *General Louis Botha*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 1928. The author lacked official records for research but was a friend of the subject. He describes Botha's role in the war in detail, but tends to be uncritical.
- 370 Engelenburg, F. V. and G. S. Preller. *Onze Krijgs-officiëren; Album van portretten met levens-schetsen der Transvaalse generaals en kommandanten*. [Our Military Officers; Album of Portraits With Sketches from Life of the Transvaal Generals and Commandants.] Pretoria: Volksstem kantore, 1904. This volume is mostly useful for illustrations.
- 371 Ensor, R.C.K. *England 1870-1914*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1936. A volume in the Oxford History of England, Ensor's book is an excellent survey of British politics and the war. He provides excellent context but tends to be pro-Boer in opinion.
- 372 Enzberg, Eugen von and A. C. Rembe. *Afrikanischer Totentanz*. [The African Dance of Death.] 4 Vols. Berlin: Fukinger, 1900-02. Provides an extensive account of the Boer War.
- 373 Estorff, Ludwig von and Ritter von Gerneth. *Der Burenkrieg in Südafrika*. [The Boer War in South Africa.] Berlin: Mittler, 1901. The authors of this survey of the war's beginnings show some bias in favor of the Boers.
- 374 Evans, W. Sanford. *The Canadian Contingent and Canadian Imperialism: A Study and a Story*. Toronto: The Publishers; Syndicate, 1901. Although in some way more Canadian history than South African, this volume does include accounts of the war, including Plumer's force in Rhodesia.
- 375 Everdingen, W. van. *De oorlog in Zuid-Afrika: een beschrijving*. [The War in South Africa: A Description.] 3 Vols. Delft: Waltman, 1902-15. Provides an extensive survey of the war.
- 376 Everett, Marshall. ed. *Thrilling Experiences in the War in South Africa*. Chicago: The Educational Co., 1900. The accounts in this volume

may be charitably described as histrionic.

- 377 Ex-Lieutenant. *Ten Months in the Field with the Boers by an Ex-Lieutenant of General de Villebois-Mareuil*. London: Heinemann, 1901. (Originally: *Un Ancien Lieutenant du Col. Villebois Mareuil Dix Mois de Campagne chez les Boers*. Paris: Calmann Levy, 1901.). Villebois-Mareuil was a French professional soldier who in search of adventure and from sympathy with the Boers wound up commanding a unit of foreign volunteers. This is a valuable eyewitness account of this foreign involvement. Ronald Hackett identifies the author as Olivier d'Etchegoyen.
- 378 Fairburn, John. *Report of the Cape of Good Hope Society for Aid to Sick and Wounded in War*. Cape Town: Richards, 1902. Provides data concerning casualties.
- 379 Farrelly, M. J. *The Settlement After the War in South Africa*. Cape Town: Macmillan, 1900. Farrelly lived in South Africa for several years before the war and was a Transvaal government legal advisor. He attempts to establish the causes of the war and suggest a basis for a peace settlement. His account is noticeably pro-British.
- 380 Farwell, Byron. *Eminent Victorian Soldiers: Seekers of Glory*. New York: Norton, 1985. Regarding soldiers prominent in the Boer War, Farwell includes Roberts, Wolseley, and Kitchener. He also discusses Evelyn Wood and Hector Macdonald.
- 381 Farwell, Byron. *The Great Boer War*. London: Penguin Books, 1976. Farwell's book is one of the best surveys of the war. The American edition is entitled *The Great Anglo-Boer War*.
- 382 Farwell, Byron. *Queen Victoria's Little Wars*. London: Allen Lane, 1973. Farwell includes brief but clear accounts of both the 1880-81 and 1899-1902 wars.
- 383 Fawcett, Millicent. *What I Remember*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1924; rpt. 1976, 1995. Fawcett headed the Women's Commission sent by the government to examine the concentration camps in response to the charges of Emily Hobhouse. Her memories include some account of her experiences in South Africa.
- 384 Félix, G. *Le Colonel de Villebois-Mareuil*. Tours: Alfred Cattier, 1901. Villebois-Mareuil, who volunteered to serve with the Boers, is a hero

in France as well as South Africa. Félix seems to think well of him.

- 385 Ferguson, John H. *American Diplomacy and the Boer War*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1939. Although critical of the American consular service, Ferguson maintains that American neutrality was properly handled and American rights protected. He also suggests that although Boer propaganda was effective in generating popular sentiment for the South African cause, the effect on the American government was minimal. The U.S. behaved consistently as a power friendly to Great Britain.
- 386 Fergusson, Thomas G. *British Military Intelligence: The Development of a Modern Intelligence Organization*. Frederick, MD: University Publications of America, 1984. British intelligence in the Boer War was terrible. The intelligence department of the Royal Army had been underfunded and understaffed for years before the war. Fergusson examines that situation and what was learned from it.
- 387 Ferrar, M. L. *With the Green Howards in South Africa, 1899-1902*. London: Eden Fisher, 1904. Provides details of campaigning during the war by the 1st Battalion Princess of Wales Own Yorkshire Regiment.
- 388 Fessey, William. *Blue Bonnets, Boers and Biscuits: The Diary of Private William Fessey D.C.M. Serving in the King's Own Scottish Borderers During the Boer War, 1900-1902*. Edited by Heather Wilson. London: H. Wilson, 1998. Although short, this work is a personal narrative of the war and includes eyewitness details.
- 389 Fessler, Julius. *Unter dem Roten Kreuz in Transvaal*. [Under the Red Cross in the Transvaal.] Munchen: Seitz & Schauer, 1902. Provides an account of civilian medical relief efforts during the South African War.
- 390 Field, Laurie. *The Forgotten War: Australia and the Boer War*. Carlton, Victoria: Melbourne University, 1979. Field describes the impact of the war in Australia, particularly on the nascent Australian national consciousness, as well as the activity of Australians in South Africa. He makes it clear, perhaps unintentionally, that the war was more important to Australians than they were to it. Australian soldiers did, however, perform valiantly and made a worthwhile contribution to the effort.

- 391 Firkins, Peter. *The Australians in Nine Wars: Waikato to Long Tan*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1972. Firkins includes a chapter about Australian forces in the Boer War, but is somewhat nationalistic in singing their praises, contrasting them quite favorably to English soldiers. He provides some details about the men involved but offers very little about the overall situation.
- 392 *1st Battalion Loyal North Lancashire Regiment. South African War 1899-1902*. Devonport: Swill, nd. Includes details of the unit campaigning in South Africa.
- 393 Fischer, Maria A. *Kampdagboek*. [Camp Diary.] Edited by M. A. Coetzee. Kaapstad: Tafelberg-Uitgewers., 1964. Provides a personal narrative of concentration camp life from May, 1900, to August, 1902.
- 394 Fisher, John. *The Afrikaners*. London: Cassell, 1969. Fisher outlines the war in two chapters. He is inclined to think that Milner wanted conflict but that the Boers played into his hands by issuing an ultimatum. He asserts that the Boers truly believed they were fighting for freedom and independence and notes the damage done to future relations by the policy of farm burning.
- 395 Fisher, John. *Paul Kruger: His Life and Times*. London: Secker & Warburg, 1974. Fisher's work is a scholarly and detailed biography. He suggests that Kruger exercised so much control that the government lacked initiative in crises. He also says that Leyds had warned Kruger a year before the war that foreign support was unlikely, but Kruger was not willing to compromise on the franchise issue. Fisher credits Kruger with significant influence in keeping the war going for the first year. He does not provide much of a case in terms of responsibility for the conflict, however.
- 396 Fisher, John. *That Miss Hobhouse*. London: Secker & Warburg, 1971. This biography is a popular account of the woman who led the criticism of the concentration camps used by the British to hold the dependants of Boers. It does include significant extracts from Hobhouse's correspondence.
- 397 Fisher, William E. G. *The Transvaal and the Boers: A Brief History*. London: Chapman and Hall, 1896; rpt. 1969. Provides a detailed account of the first Boer war and subsequent events to 1893. Although pro-Boer in point of view, it is useful background to the war of 1899-1902.

- 398 Fitzgibbon, Maurice. *Arts Under Arms: An University Man in Khaki*. London: Longmans, Green, 1901. Fitzgibbon describes becoming involved with the Imperial Yeomanry, the battle of Lindley, and his subsequent capture and release.
- 399 Fitzpatrick, J. P. *The Transvaal From Within: A Private Record of Public Affairs*. London: Heinemann, 1899. Fitzpatrick, Secretary of the Reform Committee before the Jameson Raid, makes the case of the Uitlanders and describes the failure of the raid.
- 400 Fitzpatrick, J. Percy. *South African Memories*. London: Cassell, 1932. Although episodic, this memoir by one of Jameson's raiders has firsthand details and comment about the raid and the war.
- 401 Fitz Roy, Olivia. *Men of Valour: History of the VIII King's Royal Irish Hussars*. 3 Vols. Liverpool: NP, 1927-58. This regimental history includes a description of campaigning in South Africa.
- 402 Flemming, Wymble. *Glimpses of South Africa in Peace and War: Illustrating and describing by Camera and Pen the Entire South African Continent and Transpiring Events of the British-Boer War From the Cape to the Front*. Chicago: Dominion, 1900. Flemming's volume is most valuable for the pictures included.
- 403 Fletcher, J. S. *Baden-Powell of Mafeking*. London: Methuen, 1900. Fletcher's obvious admiration for Baden-Powell significantly reduces the value of this volume, though it does include an account of the siege.
- 404 Fletcher, J. S. *Roberts of Pretoria: The Story of His Life*. London: Methuen, 1900. This early biography includes an account of the South African War, but it is pro-British and superficial in its coverage.
- 405 Fletcher-Vane, Francis P. *Pax Britannica in South Africa*. London: Constable, 1905. The author describes his experiences as a Royal Army soldier during the war and is quite critical of the British methods.
- 406 Flint, John. *Cecil Rhodes*. Boston: Little, Brown, 1974. Flint makes a reasonably successful effort to be evenhanded in his treatment of Rhodes. He does make clear the causal role that Rhodes played in the events that led to the war.

- 407 Fonville, E.F.R. *Étude tactique de la guerre Sudafricaine, 1899-1900*. [A Study of the Tactics of the South African War.] Paris: N.P., 1904. Fonville, a French army officer, analyzes the tactics of the war.
- 408 Forbes, A. A. *A History of the Army Ordnance Services*. 3 Vols. London: Medici Society, 1929. The ordnance department had to supply not only ammunition for a variety of guns in South Africa but also camping and other living equipment, and later barbed wire and building material for block houses. It was at times overwhelmed and lessons were learned for the future.
- 409 Former Officers of the Regiment. *The 23rd London Regiment, 1789-1919*. London: Times Publishing, 1936. This volume provides a very short account of volunteers from the regiment serving in South Africa.
- 410 Forrest, George. *The Life of Lord Roberts*. London: Cassell, 1914. Forrest's account of Roberts command in South Africa is extensive and detailed but mostly factual and uncritical.
- 411 Fort, G. Seymour. *Dr. Jameson*. London: Hurst and Blackett, 1908. Fort's account of the raid that initiated the slide into war is superficial.
- 412 Fortescue, John W. *Following the Drum*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons, 1931. Fortescue includes discussions of Wolseley, Kitchener, and Smith-Dorrien, all of whom played roles in the Boer War.
- 413 Fortescue, John and G. A. Michols. *A History of the 17th (Duke of Cambridge's Own)*. 2 Vols. London: Macmillan, 1895-1931. Provides details of the 17th Lancers in South Africa.
- 414 Fortescue, John and R. H. Beadon. *The Royal Army Service Corps: A History of Transport and supply in the British Army*. 2 Vols. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1930. Fortescue, the author of the first volume, is quite critical of British logistics during the entire war. He asserts that initial preparations were hindered by politics and the desire not to seem belligerent, and then the force sent was inadequate. Roberts and Kitchener did not understand the transport system and their efforts at reform initially produced little but confusion and increased loss of livestock. Although effective reforms were finally made, Kitchener's lack of staff slowed the process. Although not very readable, Fortescue argues his views effectively.
- 415 Fournier, August. *La Guerre Sud-Africaine*. [The South African War.] 3

Vols. Paris: Librairie militaire Chapelot, 1902. These volumes contain a very detailed description of the military operations, and were prepared at the direction of the French army.

- 416 Fraser, Peter. *Joseph Chamberlain, Radicalism and Empire, 1868-1914*. London: Cassell, 1966. Fraser does an excellent job of showing Chamberlain's involvement in imperial affairs including South Africa's. He gives Chamberlain the benefit of the doubt regarding complicity in the Jameson Raid.
- 417 Freeman, Benson. *The Yeomanry of Devon*. London: St. Catherine's Press, 1927. Includes details of campaigning in South Africa.
- 418 Fremantle, Francis E. *Impressions of a Doctor in Khaki*. London: John Murray, 1901. Fremantle, a military doctor, describes his experiences in South Africa.
- 419 French, Gerald. *The Life of Field-Marshal Sir John French, First Earl of Ypres*. London: Cassell, 1931. Although not critical, the author does describe the general's successful performance in the Boer War, which was central to his rise to prominence and subsequent command of the British Expeditionary Force in 1914.
- 420 Frocard, Lt.-colonel and Capitaine Poinvin. *La Guerre au Transvaal*. [The War in the Transvaal.] 2 Vols. Paris: Cerf, 1900-01. This account by French officers is detailed and provides observations about military lessons to be learned, but it was published too soon to take into account the guerrilla campaigns at the end of the war.
- 421 Frondaie, Pierre. *Deux possédés de l'héroïsme: L'escadron du Colonel-France. L'homme au méhari blanc*. [Two Heroes: The French Colonel. The Man on the White Camel.] Paris: Plon, 1939. One of the two heroes described is Colonel Villebois de Mareuil who served and died with Boer forces in South Africa.
- 422 Fry, A. Ruth. *Emily Hobhouse A Memoir*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1929. This biography of the woman who exposed the problems of British concentration camps in South Africa is based on Hobhouse's unpublished autobiographical writings.
- 423 Fuller, J.F.C. *The Army in My Time*. London: Rich and Cowan, 1935. Fuller, one of Britain's best known twentieth century military intellectuals, is very critical of tactical preparation for the Boer War.

Closing in tight formation for a bayonet charge represented, he believed, a failure to understand modern technology and the security offered by digging in. Fuller's descriptions of the Boers, while sometimes admiring, is unfortunately marked by stereotyping.

- 424 Fuller, J.F.C. *The Last of the Gentlemen's Wars: A Subaltern's Journal of the War in South Africa, 1899-1902*. London: Faber and Faber, 1937. Through a combination of assignment and illness, Fuller missed all of the major battles during the war, but he does provide detailed accounts of service on the block house lines and of commanding a unit of native scouts. In the latter particularly, he displays a regrettably racist attitude.
- 425 Furley, John. *In Peace and War. (The Red Cross in South Africa.)* London: Smith Elder, 1905. Furley describes efforts to provide medical and other help to soldiers.
- 426 Gage, M. F. ed. *Records of the Dorset Imperial Yeomanry, 1894-1905*. Sherborne: F. Bennett, 1906. Provides account of life and action during the entire war.
- 427 Galbraith, J. S. *Crown and Charter: The Early Years of the British South Africa Company*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1974. Includes detailed background concerning Rhodes and the economic issues that underlay the war.
- 428 Galbraith, J. S. "The Pamphlet Campaign on the Boer War." *Journal of Modern History* 24 (1952): 111-26. Galbraith's survey of the pamphlets used to sway opinion regarding the war is detailed and shows the impact of the war on Britain.
- 429 Galli, H. *Anglais et Boers; Histoire anecdotique de la Guerre au pays de l'or*. [Englishmen and Boers; Anecdotal History of the War in the Country of Gold.] Paris: H. Geffroy, 1900. The author, really Henri Gallichet, provides some human interest details but little of substance.
- 430 Galvayne, Sydney. *War Horses, Present and Future, or Remount Life in South Africa*. London: Everett, 1902. Galvayne offers information regarding supply of horses, which was a continuing problem for the British throughout the war.
- 431 Gardner, Brian. *Allenby*. London: Cassel, 1965. Allenby would be more prominent in later wars, but he was an officer learning his trade in

South Africa.

- 432 Gardner, Brian. *The Lion's Cage*. London: Arthur Barker, 1969. Gardner's account of the siege and relief of Kimberley is detailed and readable. His handling of the conflict between Cecil Rhodes, who was present and whose De Beers' Company controlled the town, and Lt. R. C. Kekewich, the military commander, is more evenhanded and judicious than most.
- 433 Gardner, Brian. *Mafeking: A Victorian Legend*. London: Cassel, 1966. Gardner's account of the siege is readable and detailed. He does a good job of sorting the realities from the myths about the situation and about Baden-Powell but is quite critical of the colonel.
- 434 Gardyne, C. G. *The Life of a Regiment: A History of the Gordon Highlanders*. 2 Vols. Edinburgh: D. Douglas, 1901-03. Provides an account of campaigning in South Africa.
- 435 Garnier, Jules. *England's Enemies: A Warning*. London: W. R. Russell, 1900. Garnier analyzes the causes of the war, but his ideas are marred by a clearly pro-British bias.
- 436 Garrett, Edmund, and E. J. Edwards. *The Story of an African Crisis; Being the Truth About the Jameson Raid and the Johannesburg Revolt of 1896, Told With the Assistance of the Leading Actors in the Drama*. Westminster: Constable, 1897. The background and details of the Jameson Raid are included in this volume, but it has been superseded by more recent accounts.
- 437 Garrish, A. G. *The Records of 'I' Company. A Brief History of the East Surrey Volunteers' Service in the South African War*. London: Walbrook, 1901. Although quite short, this volume does include descriptions of the unit's life and activities in the war.
- 438 Garson, Noel G. "The Swaziland Question and a Road to the Sea, 1887-1895" *Archives Yearbook For South African History* Vol. 20, Part 2 (1957). Garson's discussion of the issue of access to the sea as part of the causes of the Boer War is informative.
- 439 Garvin, J. L. and Julian Amery. *The Life of Joseph Chamberlain*. 6 Vols. London: Macmillan, 1932-69. This scholarly and well-written biography defends Chamberlain from illicit complicity in the Jameson raid and the causes of the war.

- 440 Gaskell, H. S. *With Lord Methuen in South Africa February 1900 to June 1901 Being Some Notes on the War With Extracts From Letters and Diaries*. London: Henry J. Drane, 1906. Gaskell, who served with the 10th Imperial Yeomanry, provides some detailed observations of the campaign and the condition of the country.
- 441 Gatacre, Beatrice. *General Gatacre: The Story of the Life and Services of Sir William Forbes Gatacre, K.C.B., D.S.O., 1843-1906*. London: John Murray, 1910. This book is a vigorous defense of Gatacre, who was relieved of command. The author presents evidence of communication failures and manpower shortages that make problems, particularly at Stormberg, seem less Gatacre's fault than is usually claimed.
- 442 Gibbs, Henry. *Background to Bitterness: The Story of South Africa, 1652-1954*. London: Muller, 1954. Gibbs provides a complete overview of the 1899-1902 war set into the overall context of South African history.
- 443 Gibbs, K. R. "Field Weapons of the Anglo-Boer War. Notes on Their Use and Mis-Use." *Journal of the Historical Firearms Society of South Africa* 5 (Dec., 1970): 6-17. Provides a variety of details about the weapons of the South African War.
- 444 Gibbs, Peter. *The Death of the Last Republic: The Story of the Anglo-Boer War*. London: Frederick Muller, 1957. Gibbs' account is clear and readable, but he provides much fuller detail concerning the background and early part of the war than for the last year.
- 445 Gibson, G. F. *The Story of the Imperial Light Horse in the South African War*. NP: GD & Co., 1937. The ILH was a unit formed in South Africa, mostly of Uitlanders, that served with distinction in the British forces. Gibson follows the ILH through the war.
- 446 Giddings, Robert. ed. *Imperial Echoes: Eye-Witness Accounts of Victoria's Little Wars*. London: Leo Cooper, 1996. Giddings includes excerpts from well-known accounts of both the First and Second Boer Wars. He provides a convenient summary, but those with serious interest should read the original accounts themselves.
- 447 Gilbert, Georges. *La Guerre Sud-Africaine*. [The South African War.] Paris: Berger-Levrault, 1902. Gilbert argues that incompetent generalship caused the British problems in South Africa and that there

is no reason to reconsider the doctrine of offensive warfare favored by the French.

- 448 Gilbert, Sharrad A. *Rhodesia—and After Being the Story of the 17th and 18th Battalions of Imperial Yeomanry in South Africa*. London: Simpkin Marshall, Hamilton, Kent, 1901. The campaign, led by Plumer, from Rhodesia played a role in the efforts to relieve Mafeking. It is a dramatic if minor aspect of the war.
- 449 Gildea, J. *For King and Country 1899-1902; Being a Record of Funds and Philanthropic Work in Connection With the South African War*. London: Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1902. Records of collection and use of charitable funds by many groups during the war.
- 450 Gildea, James. *For Remembrance and in Honour of Those Who Lost Their Lives in the South African War 1899-1902 Lest We Forget*. London: Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1902; rpt. 1911. Gildea includes information concerning hospitals, charities, and other efforts at helping the soldiers in South Africa.
- 451 Gill, W. H. *On the Transvaal Border (War Pictures)*. London: Marion & Co., 1900. Most valuable for illustrations.
- 452 Gilmour, John. *Clearly My Duty: The Letters of Sir John Gilmour From the Boer War, 1900-1901*. Edited by Patrick Mileham. East Linton: Tuckwell Press, 1996. Gilmour, a lieutenant with the Fife and Forfar Yeomanry, provides much detail regarding both daily life and action from March, 1900, through June, 1901.
- 453 Gilson, Charles J. L. *History of the 1st Batt. Sherwood Foresters (Nott. And Derby Regt.) In the Boer War, 1899-1902*. London: Swan Sonnenschein, 1908. Author has written an extensive and detailed history of the unit's experiences in South Africa.
- 454 Girouard, E.P.C. *History of Railways during the War in South Africa, 1899-1902*. London: HMSO, 1903. This volume provides a detailed but official, and so possibly biased, history of railroads as they influenced the war.
- 455 Gleichen, Lord Edward, *A Guardsman's Memories: A Book of Recollections*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons, 1932. Gleichen describes his experiences from November, 1899, to November, 1900, in some detail including being wounded, some

combat, and staff work. He defends Sir Henry Colville who, Gleichen believes, was unfairly relieved of command. Unfortunately, Gleichen's memories are often quite personal, and he does nothing to set them in context.

- 456 Glossop, Reginald. *Sunshine and Battle-Smoke: Reminiscences of a War Correspondent*. London: A. Brown & Sons, 1907. Glossop narrates personal experiences from the South African War.
- 457 Gluckstein, S. M. *Queen or President? An Indictment of Paul Kruger*. London: Grant Richards, 1900. As indicated by his title, Gluckstein makes a vigorous assertion of the English point of view.
- 458 Godley, Alexander. *Life of an Irish Soldier*. London: John Murray, 1939. Godley, at the time a major, was with Baden-Powell during the siege of Mafeking.
- 459 Godley, R. S. *Khaki and Blue: Twenty-five Years' Service in South Africa*. London: Lovat Dickson & Thompson, 1935. The author was with Plumer's forces in Rhodesia which were eventually part of the effort to relieve Mafeking. His description of this relatively limited part of the war is clear and detailed.
- 460 Goetzsche, Eric. *"Rough but Ready": An Official History of the Natal Mounted Rifles and Its Antecedent and Associated Units, 1854-1969*. Durban: Natal Mounted Rifles, 1972. Goetzsche does not give any topic an extensive examination, but he does cover the Natal Rifles in the South African War.
- 461 Goldmann, Charles Sydney. *With General French and the Cavalry in South Africa*. London: Macmillan, 1902. Goldmann, a reporter for *The Standard*, traveled with French, and describes especially the relief of Kimberley, the Battle of Paardeberg, and the drive to Pretoria. His descriptions are detailed, and he praises both French and Roberts for planning and conducting operations.
- 462 Goldmann, Richard. *A South African Remembers*. Cape Town: Cape Times, nd. Goldmann was a correspondent for several British newspapers, and describes being besieged in Ladysmith and the subsequent campaign to take Pretoria.
- 463 Gollin, A. M. *Proconsul in Politics: A Study of Lord Milner in Opposition and in Power*. London: Blond, 1964. Gollin's study is a scholarly,

well-researched examination of Milner's career. His account of Milner's tenure in South Africa before and during the war is regrettably brief, but does examine his role.

- 464 Gooch, John. *The War and Its Causes*. London: The Transvaal Committee, 1900; rpt. 1977. Gooch, an excellent scholar, shows his pro-Boer bias this short work. He criticizes Milner and Chamberlain and suggests that a rational settlement was possible had cooler heads prevailed. His account is, however, a good summary of the British-South African confrontation.
- 465 Goodfellow, C. F. *The Policy of South African Confederation, 1870-81*. Ph. D. Dissertation, University of Cambridge, 1961. Although only background to the first war the dispute over confederation and the potential loss of independence was an important part of the dispute, and so Goodfellow's research helps establish causes of the conflict.
- 466 Goodinge, Anthony. *The Scots Guards*. London: Leo Cooper, 1969. Goodinge provides a very brief outline of Guards units involved in the war, but his book is mostly useful to identify specific Scots Guards officers and men and their accomplishments.
- 467 Gordon, C. T. *The Growth of Boer Opposition to Kruger, 1890-5*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1970. Gordon argues that there was an emerging opposition to Kruger in the Transvaal some six years before the Jameson Raid. This was led by P. J. Joubert who almost beat Kruger at the polls in 1893. Compromise might have been possible.
- 468 Gordon-Duff, Lachlan. *With the Gordon Highlanders to the Boer War and Beyond: The Story of Captain Lachlan Gordon-Duff*. Edited by Lachlan Gordon-Duff. Macclesfield: Travis Books, 1998. Includes a personal narrative of experiences in the war.
- 469 Gore, St. John. ed. *The Green Horse in Ladysmith*. London: Sampson Low, Marston, 1901. Provides an account of the siege from the point of view of soldiers in the city.
- 470 Gough, Hubert. *Soldiering On Being the Memoirs of General Sir Hubert Gough*. London: Arthur Barker, 1954. Gough, a young cavalry officer, served mostly under Dundonald's command. Unlike most, he is critical of Dundonald asserting that he got a good press resulting in credit for other's achievements. Gough's description of his own experiences is colorful, but unfortunately he often chooses not to

discuss larger issues.

- 471 Graydon, William Murray. *With Boer and Britisher in the Transvaal*. New York: Street & Smith, 1900. Provides an account, popular in style, of war experiences.
- 472 *The Great Boer War 1899-1901*. Newcastle-upon-Tyne: Andrew Reid, 1901. Includes letters and a campaign diary.
- 473 Great Britain. Army. Brigade of Guards. *Official Records of the Guards' Brigade in South Africa*. London: Keliher, 1904. Incorporates details of the campaigns in South Africa.
- 474 Great Britain. Army. *The South African War Casualty Roll: The Natal Field Force, 20th Oct. 1899-26th Oct. 1900*. Polstead: Hayward, London Stamp Exchange, 1980. Gives statistics about British losses in South Africa.
- 475 Great Britain. Parliament. Army. *Proclamations Issued by Field-Marshal Lord Roberts in South Africa*. Cd. 426. London: HMSO, 1900. Consists of Roberts' orders and announcements.
- 476 Great Britain. Parliament. Army Remount Department—*Report of a Court of Enquiry on the Administration of the Army Remount Department Since Jan. 1899, By Order of the Commander-in-Chief Dated 20th Feb. 1902*. Cd. 993 and Cd. 994. London: HMSO, 1902. Furnishes details of British efforts and problems in supply their forces with mounts during the South African conflict. Cd. 994 is the Minutes of Evidence presented.
- 477 Great Britain. Parliament. *Cape Colony. Correspondence Relating to the Affairs of the Cape Colony*. Cd. 264. London: HMSO, 1900. Provides background concerning rebels and the Cape government
- 478 Great Britain. Parliament. *Concentration Camps Commission. Report on the Concentration Camps in South Africa by the Committee of Ladies Appointed by the Secretary of State for War; Containing Reports on the Camps in Natal, The Orange River Colony, and the Transvaal*. Cd. 893. London: HMSO, 1902. These reports contain a great deal of detailed information but they were issued, at least in part, as a defensive measure due to attacks on the government over the camps. Thus they were not intended to be a purely objective overview.

- 479 Great Britain. Parliament. *Imperial Yeomanry. Report of the Deputy Adjutant-General of the Force Regarding Its Home Organization, Inspection of the Constitution of Its Base and Advanced Depots, and Distribution of Stores in South Africa, and Proposals for Future Organization*. Cd. 803. London: HMSO, 1901. In connection with the war itself, this report is mostly valuable for its information about logistics.
- 480 Great Britain. Parliament. *Papers Relating to the Administration of Martial Law in South Africa*. Cd. 981 and Cd. 1423. London: HMSO, 1902-03. Provides details of British efforts to govern and maintain control during the conflict with South Africa.
- 481 Great Britain. Parliament. *Report of His Majesty's Commissioners Appointed to Inquire Into the Military Preparations and Other Matters Connected With the War in South Africa*. Cd. 1789. London: HMSO, 1903. Provides valuable background to the British effort in South Africa.
- 482 Great Britain. Parliament. *Reports on the Working of the Refugee Camps in the Transvaal, Orange River Colony, Cape Colony, and Natal*. Cd. 819. London: HMSO, 1901. Although government papers have valuable information, because London wished to look good regarding care for the populace, the selection of materials cannot be assumed to have been evenhanded. The report is extended in Cd. 853: *Further Papers Relating to the Working of the Refugee Camps in the Transvaal, Orange River Colony, Cape Colony, and Natal* published the same year.
- 483 Great Britain. Parliament. *Royal Commission on South African Hospitals. Report of the Royal Commission Appointed to Consider and Report Upon the Care and Treatment of the Sick and Wounded During the South African Campaign*. Cd. 453-55. London: HMSO, 1901. This investigation was wide ranging, detailed, and covered all military hospitals, including those in the field, and some civilian ones. Cd. 454 contains Minutes of Evidence taken by the Commission, and Cd. 455 is an Appendix to those evidence. In combination these volumes contain an enormous amount of factual information.
- 484 Great Britain. Parliament. *Royal Commission on the War in South Africa. Minutes of Evidence Taken Before the Royal Commission on the War in South Africa*. Cd. 1790, 1791, and 1792. London: HMSO, 1903. These large volumes are filled with details of the conduct of the war—at

least as those involved were inclined to relate them to the Commission.

- 485 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa. Correspondence Relating to the Despatch of Colonial Military Contingents to South Africa.* Cd. 18. London: HMSO, 1899. Supplies details of early British government efforts to involve other colonies in the Boer War.
- 486 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa Despatches.* Cd. 457. London: HMSO, 1901. Provides copies of Lord Robert's despatches.
- 487 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa Despatches. Natal Field Army.* London: HMSO, 1901. Consists of despatches to the Secretary for War.
- 488 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa. Further Correspondence Relating to Affairs in South Africa.* Cd. 43, Cd. 261, Cd. 420. London: HMSO, 1900. These volumes published separately, provides correspondence regarding the beginning of the war, efforts to control the South Africans, and the Cape Colony in 1900.
- 489 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa. Further Correspondence Relating to Affairs in South Africa.* Cd. 547. London: HMSO, 1901. Provides details concerning colonial forces and the government in South Africa.
- 490 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa. Further Correspondence Relating to Affairs in South Africa.* Cd. 1163. London: HMSO, 1902. The correspondence included in this volume relates mostly to charges of misconduct against British soldiers.
- 491 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa. Further Papers Relating to the Working of the Refugee Camps in South Africa.* Cd. 902, Cd. 903, and Cd. 934. London: HMSO, 1902. These volumes are an extension of the material in Cd. 893.
- 492 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa. Report of the Lands Settlement Commission. South Africa. Dated 28th November 1900. Part II. Documents, Evidence, &c.* Cd. 627. London: HMSO, 1901. This volume mostly concerns the settlement of soldiers.
- 493 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa. Report of the Transvaal Concessions Commission, Dated 19th April 1901.* Cd. 623-625. London: HMSO, 1901. Includes report (Cd. 623) and Minutes of

Evidence (Cd. 624) and documents (Cd. 625) concerning the efforts to make arrangements between the British and the Transvaal.

- 494 Great Britain. Parliament. *South Africa. The Spion Kop Despatches*. Cd. 968. London: HMSO, 1902. Although very short, this document provides official details of the fighting at Spion Kop.
- 495 Great Britain. Parliament. *South African Republic. Correspondence Relating to the Bloemfontein Conference, 1899*. London: HMSO, 1899. Provides background to the causes of the war and the negotiations between the British and the Boers.
- 496 Great Britain. Parliament. *South African Republic. Further Correspondence Relating to the Political Affairs of the South African Republic*. Cd. 9530. London: HMSO, 1899. Includes the text of the Boer ultimatum that precipitated the conflict.
- 497 Great Britain. Parliament. *South African Republic. Papers Relating to the Complaints of British Subjects in the South African Republic*. Cd. 9345. London: HMSO, 1899. Furnishes important background to the causes of the war and the conference at Bloemfontein.
- 498 Great Britain. Parliament. *The Royal Commission on War Stores in South Africa*. Cd. 3127, 3128, 3129, 3130, and 3131. London: HMSO, 1906. These volumes include details concerning logistics.
- 499 Great Britain. *Report by the Central British Red Cross Committee on Voluntary Organizations in Aid of the Sick and Wounded During the South African War*. London: HMSO, 1902. This report offers accounts of such groups as the St. John's Ambulance Association and Brigade, foreign Red Cross groups, and the Army Nursing Service Reserve. It has details of medical care and organization.
- 500 Great Britain. Royal Engineers Institute. *Detailed History of the Railways in the South African War, 1899-1902*. 2 Vols. Chatham: Royal Engineers Institute, 1904. Gives a thorough and very detailed account of the use and importance of railroads during the war and includes a significant number of illustrations.
- 501 Great Britain. War Office. *Confidential Telegrams 12 Oct. 1899 to 1 Oct. 1902*. London: War Office, nd. Provides details of the British forces in South Africa.

- 502 Great Britain. War Office. *Correspondence Etc. Between British and Boer Generals Concerning Matters Relating to the Usages of War Etc.* London: War Office, 1901. Although short, given the concerns about illegal ammunition and misuse of white flags, this volume offers valuable information.
- 503 Great Britain. War Office. *Detailed Reports on the Sanitary Conditions Relating to Proposed Cantonments and Encampments for the Troops in South Africa; by Lt. Col. W. G. Macpherson.* London: War Office, 1903. These reports are in fact detailed, and since the British forces faced serious problems with illness during the war, the information provided is of some importance.
- 504 Great Britain. War Office. *Extracts from Reports by Officers Commanding Units in South Africa During 1899-1901.* 10 Vols. London: War Office, 1901. These volumes, some quite short, are focused on technical details of equipment and its performance.
- 505 Great Britain. War Office. *General Report on the Sanitary Conditions Likely to Affect the Health of Troops in Cantonments and Encampments in South Africa; by Lt. Col. W. G. Macpherson.* London: War Office, 1903. Although short, given the problems of illness the Royal Army faced, this report is of significance.
- 506 Great Britain. War Office. Intelligence Division. *Military Notes on the Dutch Republics of South Africa.* Rev. Ed. York: Boer War Books, 1983; orig. 1899. Provides a picture of Royal Army preparations for the war.
- 507 Great Britain. War Office. *Journal of the Principal Events Connected with South Africa.* 2 Vols. London: War Office, 1901-02. Includes many details of the British involvement in the war.
- 508 Great Britain. War Office. *South Africa. Despatches.* 3 Vols. London: War Office, 1900-02. These voluminous books include an enormous amount of details about the British military effort in South Africa.
- 509 Great Britain. War Office. *South Africa: Supplementary Reconnaissance Reports, Sept./Nov. 1899.* London: War Office, 1899. Although British intelligence has been maligned, these reports are substantial and they provide details of both intentions and problems.
- 510 Great Britain. War Office. *South Africa. Telegrams.* 14 Vols. London:

War Office, 1900-02. These volumes provide an enormous amount of detail concerning the war, but are best consulted after gaining a through knowledge of events.

- 511 Great Britain. War Office. *South Africa. Telegrams and Letters Sent by F. M. Lord Roberts*. 6 Vols. London: War Office, 1903. Provides details of the British commander.
- 512 Great Britain. War Office. *South African War, 1899-1900: Home and Overseas Correspondence by F. M. Lord Roberts*. 3 Vols. London: War Office, 1904. Comprised of selected comments by Roberts who as British commander had much information and was able to influence virtually all aspects of the British effort.
- 513 Great Britain. War Office. *South African War, 1899-1902. Telegrams Relating to Censorship, Prisoners of War Etc.* London: War Office, 1902. Includes details that may be of value depending on the interests of the researcher.
- 514 Great Britain. War Relief Funds Committee. *Minutes of Evidence, Appendices and Index*. Cd. 248. London: HMSO, 1900. Provides some information concerning medical care during the war.
- 515 Green, Howard. "Boer, the British and the Bantu: The Causes and Results of the Boer War, 1899-1902." Part 1. *Army Quarterly*. 97 (Oct. 1968- Jan. 1969): 177-87; Part 2. 98 (April 1969): 64-74. In his two articles, Green outlines the causes of Anglo-Boer conflict from the earliest days of European settlement at the Cape. His information and interpretations are outdated.
- 516 Green, James. *The Story of the Australian Bushmen (Being Notes of a Chaplain)*. Sydney: William Brooks, 1903. Green includes not only descriptions of experiences but also details such as a roster of the Australian contingent.
- 517 Greenwall, Ryno. *Artists and Illustrators of the Anglo-Boer War*. Vlaeberg: Fernwood Press/Johannesburg: Thorold's Africana Books, 1992. A variety of images of the war, including cartoons and caricatures, is incorporated in this volume.
- 518 Greenwood, T. J. *Fighting the Boers*. Bloemfontein: Argus, 1900. Greenwood, a journalist, describes the war to the end of the siege of Ladysmith.

- 519 Grenville, J. A. R. *Lord Salisbury and Foreign Policy: The Close of the Nineteenth Century*. London: Athlone Press, 1964. In his scholarly study of British policy, Grenville tends to give Chamberlain the benefit of the doubt in considering the origins of the South African War.
- 520 Grierson, James Moncrieff. *Scarlet into Khaki: The British Army on the Eve of the Boer War*. London: Sampson, Low, 1899; rpt. 1988. Provides background on the nature and problems of the British army that had to fight in South Africa.
- 521 Griesbach, W. A. *I Remember*. Toronto: The Ryerson Press, 1946. The author, a member of the Second Canadian Mounted Rifles, describes his experiences in the Boer War, from February to December, 1900. He provides more details about living conditions than combat.
- 522 Griffith, K. *Thank God We Kept the Flag Flying: The Siege and Relief of Ladysmith, 1899-1900*. London: Hutchinson, 1974. Griffith's account of the siege and the campaign to lift it is readable and detailed, but tends to be pro-Boer in point of view..
- 523 Griffith, Susan. *A Chorus of Stones: The Private Life of War*. New York: Doubleday, 1992. Griffith's study of the psychological effects of war and violence includes an account of a British soldier in the Boer War and World War I.
- 524 Grinnell-Milne, D. W. *Baden-Powell at Mafeking*. London: Bodley Head, 1957. This very detailed account of the siege is marred by pro-British and Baden-Powell biases.
- 525 Grobler, John Edward Holloway. *The First Anglo Boer War 1880-1881*. D. Phil. Dissertation. University of Pretoria, 1981. Offers a clear outline of the war from causes to conclusion. Grobler blames British officials for misinforming their government about the depth of Boer support for independence and argues that victory came with the early Boer victories at Laing's Nek and Schuinshoogete. Majuba actually occurred after peace talks had begun.
- 526 Groenewald, Coen. *Bannelinge oor die oseaan: boerekrygsgevangenes 1899-1901*. [Exile Overseas: Boer Prisoners of War 1899-1901.] Pretoria: J. P. Van der Walt, 1992. Groenewald describes the situation of Boers at POW camps away from South Africa.
- 527 Groningem, Paul. *Der Heldenkampf der Buren und die Geschichte*

Südafrikas. [The Heroic Struggle of the Boers and the History of South Africa.] Wald-Solingen: Hartkopf & Torley, 1902. Includes a rather pro-Boer account of the war.

- 528 Gronum M. A. *Die Bittereinders, Junie 1901-Mei 1902*. [The Diehards, June 1901-May 1902.] Cape Town: Tafelberg, 1974. Provides a detailed account of the guerrilla campaigns during the last year of the war.
- 529 Gronum, M. A. *Die Engelse Oorlog, 1899-1902: Die gevegsmethodes waarmee die Boer-republieke verower is*. [The English War 1899-1902: The Tactics by Which the Boer Republic Was Conquered.] 3 Vols. Cape Town: Tafelberg-Uitgewers, 1971-78. Makes an analysis of British tactics during the war.
- 530 Gronum, M. A. *Die Ontplooiing van die Engelse Oorlog, 1899-1900*. [Troop Movements of the English War, 1899-1900.] Cape Town: Tafelberg, 1977. Analyzes the early military campaigns of the war.
- 531 Gross, Felix. *Rhodes of Africa*. London: Cassell, 1956. Gross' biography is superficial and some times seems unfounded, as when he bases arguments on the assertion that Rhodes was homosexual. Overall it is one of the most critical. The lack of references is unfortunate.
- 532 Grosser, Horace G. *Field-Marshal Lord Roberts: A Biographical Sketch*. London: Andrew Melrose, nd. Grosser's biography is quite brief and entirely uncritical.
- 533 Guyot, Yves. *La Politique Boer. Faits et documents en réponse au docteur Kuyper*. [Boer Politics. Deeds and Documents in Response to Doctor Kuyper.] Paris: Aux bureaux de "Siècle," 1900. Translated as *Boer Politics*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1900. Guyot examines the South African political scene.
- 534 H. K. ed. *Chaplains in Khaki: Methodist Soldiers in Camp, on the Field, and on the March*. London: Charles H. Kelly, 1900. Provides some details and a particular perspective on the war.
- 535 Hackett, Ronald G. *South African War Books: An Illustrated Bibliography of English Language Publications Relating to the Boer War of 1899-1902*. London: R. G. Hackett, 1994. This self-published volume is an amazing collection of rare and obscure publications. Its value is immense, but the compiler is, unfortunately, more antiquarian than

historian and does not include more recent—since the first decade of the century—books despite their scholarly value.

- 536 Haferkorn, Henry E. *The South African War, 1899-1902. A Bibliography of Books and Articles in Periodicals, with an Index*. Fort Humphreys, VA: Engineer School Library, 1924. Although obviously outdated, Haferkorn's work is useful for identifying sources from the early 20th century.
- 537 Haggard, H. Rider. *The Last Boer War*. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, and Trubner, 1899. Although not present for the actual events, Haggard was in South Africa to collect firsthand accounts for his description of the first (1880-81) Anglo-Boer War. He provides valuable details, and asserts that British broken promises after the first war were the cause for the second.
- 538 Haldane, Aylmer. *A Soldier's Saga*. London: William Blackwood & Sons, 1948. Haldane's experiences in South Africa include his dramatic escape from captivity in Pretoria, but he describes the more mundane aspects of his service as well.
- 539 Haldane, J.A.L. *How We Escaped from Pretoria*. London: Blackwood, 1900; rpt. 1977. Haldane's experiences make a dramatic war story. He was first wounded at Elandslaagte and while recovering was taken prisoner with Churchill. He later escaped. Unfortunately, tales of derring-do like this one are of relatively little use in learning about the war. See also *Blackwood's Magazine* 168 (Aug.-Sept., 1900): 155-88; 305-35.
- 540 Hale, Lonsdale. "The Staff in the War." *Nineteenth Century* 48 (Sept., 1900): 357-72. This article is an officer's critical analysis of the officer corps in the war.
- 541 Hales, A. G. *Campaign Pictures of the War in South Africa (1899-1902): Letters from the Front*. London: Cassell, 1900. Includes details of the campaigning by an Australian journalist who focuses particularly on his countrymen.
- 542 Hall, D. D. "The Naval Guns in Natal, 1899-1902." *Military History Journal* 4 (June, 1978): 76-81. Naval guns provided the British with long-range artillery, without which they could not match the Boers. Hall's short, illustrated article focuses on the nature and use of these weapons.

- 543 Hall, D.O.W. *The New Zealanders in South Africa, 1899-1902*. Wellington: Department of Internal Affairs, 1949. Affords a detailed official account of the New Zealand contingent in the South African War.
- 544 Hall, Darrell. *Halt! Action Front! With Colonel Long at Colenso*. Glenashley, South Africa: D. D. Hall, 1991. Hall describes the activities of the 4th Brigade of the Royal Field Artillery.
- 545 Hall, Darrell. *Long Tom: The Story of the Four Long Tom Guns in the 2nd Anglo-Boer War*. Glenashley, South Africa: Darrell Hall, 1994. Provides details and descriptions of Boer heavy Creusot guns during the war.
- 546 Hall, John Richard. *The Coldstream Guards, 1885-1914*. Oxford: The Clarendon Press, 1929. Drawing from both official and private sources, Hall has collected a surprising amount of information about the Coldstream Guard units in South Africa. His is a particularly good regimental history.
- 547 Hall, Robert. *The South African Campaign*. Aberdeen: John K. Milne, 1901. Provides a superficial account of the early part of the South African War.
- 548 Halpérin Vladimir. *Lord Milner et l'évolution de l'impérialisme britannique*. Paris: NP, 1950. Translation by L.C.M.S. Amery: *Lord Milner and the Empire: The Evolution of British Imperialism*. London: Odhams, 1952. Halpérin uses Milner as the example of British imperial ideas and development and provides background for the study of the Boer War.
- 549 Halstead, Murat. *Briton and Boer in South Africa; The Story of England's War With the Brave Boers and the Eventful History of South Africa*. Philadelphia: W. E. Skull, 1900. Halstead's account of the war, published in several versions, is detailed but somewhat pro-Boer.
- 550 Hamilton, Edward Walter. *The Diary of Sir Edward Walter Hamilton*. NP: University of Hull, 1993. For twenty years—including the era of the Boer War, Hamilton was responsible for writing the British budget. His diary provides commentary about the day-to-day politics that influenced spending, and considering the frequent criticisms of the British for not preparing for war, his comments should be considered in evaluating the situation.

- 551 Hamilton, H. B. *Historical Records of the 14th Hussars, 1715-1900*. London: Longmans, Green 1901. Offers details of campaigning during the first year of the war.
- 552 Hamilton, Ian B. M. *The Happy Warrior: A Life of General Sir Ian Hamilton*. London: Cassell, 1966. Although his interpretations sometimes show that the author is the subject's nephew, this volume includes detailed accounts of Majuba and Hamilton's service through much of the second war. Perhaps most important is the account of Hamilton as Kitchener's chief of staff in the last year of the conflict because this period is often covered quite briefly.
- 553 Hamilton, Ian. *The Commander*. London: Hollis and Carter, 1957. Hamilton's account of working with Kitchener toward the end of the war is detailed and covers an element of the conflict not often thoroughly related.
- 554 Hamilton, Ian. *Listening for the Drums*. London: Faber and Faber, nd. Hamilton details his experiences at the Battle of Majuba Hill in 1881, but offers only scattered memories of the second Boer War.
- 555 Hamilton, J. A. *The Siege of Mafeking*. London: Methuen, 1900. The author was an experienced war correspondent working for *The Times*. His firsthand account of the siege is detailed and more critical than most.
- 556 Hammond, John Hays. *The Autobiography of John Hays Hammond*. 2 Vols. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1935. This account of the Johannesburg rising at the time of the Jameson Raid is by one of the leaders. Hays was chief engineer for Rhodes' mining company. Not surprisingly he regards the grievances of the Uitlanders as a key to the causes of the conflict.
- 557 Hammond, John Hays. "The Jameson Raid and the World War, the True Story of the Raid." *Scribner's Magazine* 79 (March, 1926): 227-39; (April, 1926): 376-86. Hammond's comments about the raid are based on personal involvement, but his analysis of the World War seems speculative at best.
- 558 Hammond, John Hays. *The Truth About the Jameson Raid*. Boston: Marshall Jones, 1918. Hammond, a mining engineer, was a leader of the abortive revolt in Johannesburg, and his subsequent imprisonment did not leave him unbiased. He was inclined to blame the Uitlander

grievances, Kruger's stubbornness, and the threat of German dabbling as the causes for the problems.

- 559 Hammond, Mrs. John Hays. [Natalie.] *A Woman's Part in a Revolution*. New York: Longmans, Green, 1897. This book contains extracts from a diary covering December 30, 1895, to June 12, 1896, focused primarily on the Jameson Raid, due to which her husband was a prisoner as one of the Johannesburg conspirators at the time of publication.
- 560 Hancock, W. K. *Four Studies of War and Peace in This Century*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1961. These lectures include a consideration of the Peace of Vereeniging.
- 561 Hancock, W. K. *Smuts*. 2 Vols. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1962-68. Hancock work is the definitive biography. His research is thorough and his analysis detailed and judicious.
- 562 Hancock, W. K., and Jean van der Poel. eds. *Selections from the Smuts Papers*. 7 Vols. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1966-1973. Contains a wide variety of papers with useful annotations by the editors.
- 563 *Handbook of the Boer War, A*. Aldershot: Gale and Polden, 1910. This volume is a generally accurate and readable account of the war. It tends to be critical of the British, who, the author suggests, did not take the situation very seriously, and treated the war as if it were a sporting event.
- 564 Hannah, W. H. *Bobs-Kipling's General* ▶ *The Life of Field-Marshal Earl Roberts of Kandahar, VC*. London: Leo Cooper, 1972. Hannah praises the combination of Roberts and Horatio Kitchener. He asserts that despite the fact that the Boers were quicker to adapt to Roberts' tactics than previous colonial foes, Roberts' dogged pursuit tactics proved the key to victory. Hannah's work concerning Roberts is sound but his discussion of the origins of the war is marred by what seems to be prejudice toward black South Africans. He portrays them as primitive and violent, and implies that they were an active part of the cause of the war.
- 565 Harding, C. *Frontier Patrols, History of the B.S.A. Police*. London: George Bell & Sons, 1937. Provides a personal narrative of experiences, including Plumer's column coming down from Rhodesia

in an attempt to relieve Mafeking.

- 566 Harding, William. *War in South Africa and the Dark Continent from Savagery to Civilization*. Chicago: H. L. Harper, 1899. Harding's account, published in several versions, is somewhat pro-Boer and generally superficial.
- 567 Hardy, E. J. *Mr. Thomas Atkins*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1900. Written by a minister, this account of soldiers' lives and experiences tends to proselytism, but it does provide information about the Boer War.
- 568 Harington, Charles. *Plumer of Messines*. London: John Murray, 1935. Harington describes Plumer's service as a cavalry officer, most notably around Mafeking at the beginning of the war.
- 569 Harlow, Vincent. "Sir Frederick Hamilton's Narrative of Events Relative to the Jameson Raid." *English Historical Review* 72 (April, 1957): 279-305. Hamilton was a newspaper editor in Johannesburg and a member of the committee that was supposed to lead a revolt to initiate the Raid. His account, included in this article, includes an outline of his own activity and comments such as he belief that Chamberlain was involved and that Jameson was foolishly over optimistic.
- 570 Harrison, Frederic. *National and Social Problems*. New York, Macmillan, 1908; rpt. 1971. Harrison's chapter regarding the Boer War offers an overview of the situation from the point of view of a moderate pro-Boer looking at the problems of imperialism and international relations.
- 571 Hart-McHarg, William. *From Quebec to Pretoria With the Royal Canadian Regiment*. Toronto: William Biggs, 1902. The author describes his experiences and the role of Canadian forces, which were one of the significant imperial contingents in South Africa.
- 572 Hart-Synnot, B. M. ed. *Letters of Major-General Fitzroy Hart-Synnot*. London: Edward Arnold, 1912. Hart-Synnot commanded the 5th Brigade and gives an account of the failure at Colenso. He insists that problems were due to factors—such as poor planning, inadequate maps, and cowardly guides who fled—beyond the control of commanders. Hart-Synnot's account is detailed but at times self-serving.
- 573 Harvey, John R. *Records of the Norfolk Yeomanry Cavalry; To Which Is Added the Fencible and Provisional Cavalry of the Same County From 1780 to 1908; Together With the Account of the 43rd and 44th*

Squadrons of Imperial Yeomanry, Who Volunteered for the South African War, 1900. London: Jarrold, 1908. Furnishes details of campaigning in South Africa.

- 574 Harvey, Len. *Letters From the Veldt: An Account of the Involvement of Volunteers from Queensland at the War in South Africa, 1899-1902.* Coombabah, Qld: L. L. Harvey, 1994. Gives details of campaigning in South Africa and a sense of the imperial aspects of the conflict.
- 575 Hattingh, J. L. "Die Irenekonsentrasiekamp." [The Irene Concentration Camp.] *Archives Yearbook for South African History.* Vol. 30, Part I (1967). Provides a vivid account of conditions of what was, by many accounts, the worst of the British concentration camps in South Africa.
- 576 Hay, G. J. *An Epitomized History of the Militia (The 'Constitutional Force') Together with the Origin, Periods of Embodied Service, and Special Services (Including South Africa, 1899-1902) of Militia Units Existing October 31, 1905.* London: United Service Gazette, 1906. Includes a variety of details about militia units serving in South Africa.
- 577 Hay, R. Patterson. *Diary of an Edinburgh Trooper Being a Series of Letters Written During the South African Campaign.* Edinburgh: Bishop & Sons, 1903. Supplies day-by-day details of experiences of a trooper in the Imperial Yeomanry during 1901.
- 578 Hayes, Bertram. *Hull Down: Reminiscences of Windjammers, Troops and Travellers.* London: Cassell, 1925. Hayes, captain of a troopship during the war, describes the problems of moving men and supplies to South Africa and evacuating invalids, and gives a sense of the logistical difficulties the British faced.
- 579 Hayes, M. H. *Horses on Board Ship.* London: Hurst and Blackett, 1902. Hayes discusses the technical aspects of the remount problem the British faced in South Africa.
- 580 Haythornthwaite, P. J. *The Boer War.* London: Arms and Armour Press, 1987. This volume—one of a series about military uniforms—has no narrative. The collection of pictures and captions, however, provide valuable details and impressions of people, places, and equipment.
- 581 Headlam, Cecil. "The Jameson Raid." *Cambridge History of the British Empire.* Vol 8. London: Cambridge University Press, 1936. Headlam tends to blame Jameson for acting against orders but does not

deny that Chamberlain had some knowledge of the plan.

- 582 Headlam, Cecil. ed. *The Milner Papers: Vol. I & II: South Africa, 1897-1899 & 1899-1905*. London: Cassell, 1931-33. The editor has provided thorough annotations that are useful for setting the extracts from Milner's papers into context. This is a valuable collection.
- 583 Healy, Phyllis Foster. *Mary Eugenie Hibbard: Nurse, Gentlewoman and Patriot*. Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Texas at Austin, 1990. Includes description of Hebert's work on a hospital ship (the *Maine*) off the coast of South Africa during the war.
- 584 Heileman, Zoster. *Met het Roods Kris Kee in dem Boerenvrijheidsoorlog*. [With the Red Cross in the Boer War for Freedom.] Amsterdam: Koster, 1901. Provides an account of medical services during the war.
- 585 Henderson, G.F.R. *The Science of War: A Collection of Essays and Lectures, 1892-1903*. Edited by Neil Malcolm. London: Longmans, Green & Co., 1905. Henderson, one of Britain's premier students of tactics, considers lessons that can be drawn from the Boer War. His book includes personal observations of the war.
- 586 Hendry, Hamish. *Majuba, Bronkerspruit, Ingogo, Lang's Nek, and Krugerdorp*. London: Grant Richards, 1900. Hendry critiques of the battles of the first (1880-81) Boer War.
- 587 Hensman, H. *Cecil Rhodes: A Study of a Career*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood, 1901. This early biography takes a strongly anti-Boer stance in analyzing Rhodes' involvement in the maneuvering leading up to the Boer War.
- 588 Hewison, Hope Hay. *Hedge of Wild Almonds: South Africa, the Pro-Boers & the Quaker Conscience, 1890-1910*. Portsmouth, N.H.: Heinemann, 1989. Although her religious biases are clear, Hewison includes a fairly detailed account of the war.
- 589 Hickman, A. S. *Rhodesia Served the Queen: Rhodesian Forces in the Boer War, 1899-1902*. 2 Vols. Salisbury: Government Printer, 1970-75. Hickman provides very detailed accounts, including especially Plumer's column that sought to relieve Mafeking. He also has extensive quotations from accounts by participants.
- 590 Hiley, Alan R. I. and Hassell, John A. *The Mobile Boer Being the Record*

of the Observations of Two Burgher Boer Officers. New York: Grafton Press, 1902. Furnishes details of campaigning from the Boer perspective.

- 591 Hillcourt, William, with Olave, Lady Baden-Powell. *Baden-Powell: The Two Lives of a Hero.* London: Heinemann, 1964. The authors' description of the siege of Mafeking and Baden-Powell is clear and detailed but leaves no doubt of their appreciation of his heroism.
- 592 Hillegas, Howard C. *Oom Paul's People; A Narrative of the British-Boer Troubles in South Africa, With a History of the Boers, the Country and Its Institutions.* New York: Appleton, 1900. Hillegas, a veteran correspondent, provides a detailed background to the war, though his biases are pro-Boer.
- 593 Hillegas, Howard Clemens. *With the Boer Forces.* London: Methuen, 1900; rpt. 1987. Hillegas, a correspondent for the *New York World*, contributes clear descriptions of individuals.
- 594 Hinchliff, Peter. *The Anglican Church in South Africa.* London: Darton, Longman & Todd, 1963. Hinchliff discusses the problems of a church tied to Britain existing in a country in rebellion. His comments are more relevant to social than military issues, but he does comment about the conflict.
- 595 Hintrager, O. *Met Steijn en de Wet op Kommando: Een dagboek uit den Oorlog in Zuid Afrika.* [With Steyn and De Wet on Commando: A Diary of the War in South Africa.] Rotterdam: Nijgh & Van Ditmar, 1902. Presents a personal narrative of the war as experienced by a Boer.
- 596 Hintrager, Oscar. *Dagboek van Oskar Hintrager, mei-September 1900.* [Diary of Oskar Hintrager, May-September 1900.] Bloemfontein: Suid-Afrikaanse Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns in samwerking met die Oorlogsmuseum, 1972. Gives a personal account of the situation during the middle of 1900.
- 597 Hippisley, R. L. *History of the Telegraph Operations During the War in South Africa, 1899-1902.* London: Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1903. This official publication provides factual details of British communication efforts.
- 598 Hobhouse, C. E. *Report and Evidence of the War Commission Collated*

and Arranged by C. E. Hobhouse, M. P. Bristol: J. W. Arrowsmith, 1904. Consists of selections from the government investigation of the war, but the choice of the documents to include was biased.

- 599 Hobhouse, Emily. *Boer War Letters*. Edited by Rykie van Reenen. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 1984. This collection provides convenient access to Hobhouse's comments about the concentration camps.
- 600 Hobhouse, Emily. *The Brunt of the War and Where It Fell*. London: Methuen, 1902. Hobhouse, the most powerful critic of the concentration camp policy, emphasizes the problems and suffering of inmates. She includes extensive quotations from comments by inmates, and notes improvements in conditions after her visits and critical comments.
- 601 Hobhouse, Emily. *A Letter to the Committee of the South African Women and Children's Distress Fund*. London: Argus Printing, 1901. This brief pamphlet gives Hobhouse's account of her deportation from the Cape Colony due to her efforts to renew her visits to the concentration camps.
- 602 Hobhouse, Emily. *To the Committee of the Distress Fund for South African Women and Children. Report of a Visit to the Camps of Women and Children in the Cape and Orange River Colonies*. London: Friars Printing Association, 1901. Although only a pamphlet, Hobhouse's role as leading critic of the concentration camp policy, makes it an important statement of her point of view as well as a source of information about the camps.
- 603 Hobhouse, Emily. ed. *War Without Glamour: Women's Experiences Written by Themselves*. Bloemfontein: Nasionale Pers, 1924; rpt. 1927. Hobhouse's anthology is intended to illustrate the suffering of women during and because of the war.
- 604 Hobson, J. A. *The Psychology of Jingoism*. London: Grant Richards, 1901. In this work, Hobson extends his thesis initially stated in his better-known *The War in South Africa*.
- 605 Hobson, John Atkinson. *The War in South Africa: Its Causes and Effects*. London: Macmillan, 1900; rpt. 1969, 1972. In Hobson's view the war was driven by a cadre of capitalists represented by the South African League and was, in effect, a British effort to put these men in control of the wealth of South Africa. Recent scholarship has suggested that

this economic interpretation is far from definitive, but Hobson's arguments are too well-made to ignore entirely.

- 606 Hodges, Arthur. *Lord Kitchener*. London: Thornton Butterworth, 1936. Hodges takes a very supportive view of Kitchener. His account of the South African war is made up mostly of long quotation from other works, and so its value is limited.
- 607 Hofmeyr, Adrian. *The Story of My Captivity During the Transvaal War*. London: Edward Arnold, 1900. Although a Boer, Hofmeyr favored compromise with the British. He was arrested at the beginning of the war and held for some seven months. His memoir is a description of his imprisonment at the hands of his countrymen.
- 608 Hofmeyr, N. *Zes maanden bij die commando's*. [Six months with the Commandos.] The Hague: W. P. van Stockum & Zoon, 1903. Provides a detailed personal narrative of experiences on campaign with the Boer forces.
- 609 Hole, H. Marshall. *The Jameson Raid*. London: Philip Allen, 1930. Although more recent accounts are clearly superior and he has been accused of occasional factual errors, Hole does provide a comprehensive account. He puts some of the blame on Chamberlain, though only in the sense that he had some vague information about the plan.
- 610 Holli, Melvin G. "Joseph Chamberlain and the Jameson Raid; A Bibliographical Survey." *Journal of British Studies* 3 (May, 1964): 152-66. Holli does an excellent job of tracing changing views of Chamberlain's involvement in the raid.
- 611 Holmes, Prescott. *Paul Kruger; The Life Story of the President of the Transvaal*. Philadelphia: Altemas, 1900. Holmes provides some background for the study of the Boer Wars, but his work is superficial.
- 612 Holmes, Richard. *The Little Field Marshall: Sir John French*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1981. Holmes gives significant attention to the Boer war as the occasion for French to learn his trade and build his reputation. Although noticeably sympathetic to his subject, Holmes work is well researched and argued.
- 613 Holt, Edgar. *The Boer War*. London: Putnam, 1958. Holt's account is readable and thorough, though he does not cover the latter part of the

war in the detail that he does the first half.

- 614 Holt, H. P. *The Mounted Police of Natal*. London: John Murray, 1913. Holt follows various units of the police through much of the war. His focus is narrow, but he includes many details.
- 615 Home, William. *With the Border Volunteers to Pretoria*. Hawick: W. & J. Kennedy, 1901. Home narrates his experiences during the first half of the war.
- 616 Hoogeveen, Jan. *Brieue uit ou Transvaal*. [Letters From the Transvaal.] Kaapstad: Human & Rousseau, 1982. Hoogeveen gives a personal narrative of prisoners and prisons.
- 617 Hook, Major. *With Sword and Statute*. Cape Town: Juta, nd. Hook served as local administrator at Herschel near the borders of the Orange Free State and Basutoland, and describes dealing with natives and Boers along with some comments about the campaigns of the war.
- 618 Hooker, Leroy. *The Africanders: A Century of Dutch English Feud in South Africa*. Chicago: Rand, McNally, 1900. Hooker examines the first Boer War and suggests that the British handled the aftermath poorly by not keeping the promise of self-government. He then traces in detail the events and negotiations leading to the second war. He is particularly critical of Rhodes.
- 619 Hopkins, J. C. and Murat Halstead. *South Africa and the Boer-British War*. 2 Vols. Toronto: J. L. Nichols, nd. These volumes contain several sections concerning the South African War. The work was apparently reprinted in 1902 with a slightly different title.
- 620 Hoppford, Wim. *Twice Interned; Transvaal 1901-02, Germany 1914-18*. London: John Murray, 1919. Hoppford, a South African, unlucky enough to have been a POW in both the South African War and World War I narrates his experiences.
- 621 Howard, Philip. *The Black Watch*. London: Hamish Hamilton, 1968. Includes an account of campaigning in South Africa.
- 622 Howe, Countess. ed. *The Imperial Yeomanry Hospitals in South Africa, 1900-1902*. 3 Vols. London: Humphreys, 1902. Provides extensive details concerning medical care during the war.

- 623 Howell, Herbert Gwynne. *Anglo-Boer War Diary of Herbert Gwynne Howell*. Edited by Andre Wessels. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council, 1986. Howell served with the Cape Mounted Rifles and saw some action, including the first De Wet hunt. He spent much of the guerrilla war period on garrison duty, however. His diary has short but detailed entries covering the period October 9, 1899 to June 1, 1902.
- 624 Howland, Frederick Hoppin. *The Chase of De Wet and Later Phases of the Boer War as Seen by an American Correspondent*. Providence Preston and Rounds, 1901. Furnishes details of the latter part of the war, most importantly of the efforts to handle Christiaan De Wet's raids which were the high point of the guerrilla effort by the Boers.
- 625 Hubly, Russell. *"G" Company, or Everyday Life of the R.C.R.; Being a Descriptive Account of Typical Events in the Life of the First Canadian Contingent in South Africa*. Montreal: The Witness Printing House, 1901. Hubly includes firsthand accounts of Canadians as part of the imperial forces in the first year of the war.
- 626 Hudleston, W. *The War in South Africa, 1899-1900*. London: Harrison and Sons, 1900. Presents a collection of newspaper articles about the war.
- 627 Hunt, Meynell. *With the Warwickshire Yeomanry in South Africa*. Birmingham: Cornish Brothers, 1902. Presents the history of the unit's activities from early 1900 to mid 1901.
- 628 Hunter, Archie. *Kitchener's Sword-Arm: The Life and Campaigns of General Sir Archibald Hunter*. Staplehurst: Spellmount, 1996. Hunter was one of the few British generals whose reputation did not suffer as a result of service in South Africa. Unfortunately, the author, his great-nephew, did not research the war adequately enough to take full advantage of access to family records and thus reduced the value of what might of have been a very significant scholarly contribution.
- 629 Hurst, Godfrey Thomas. *History of the Natal Mounted Rifles*. Durban: Knox Printing, 1935. This account, though short, does describe the role of the Natal Rifles in the South African War.
- 630 Hutchinson, G. T. *Frank Rhodes*. London: Privately Published by William Clowes, 1908. Frank Rhodes, brother of Cecil, was involved in the Jameson Raid and then served as a British officer in the war. He

was one of those besieged in Ladysmith. His biography provides details of his experiences.

- 631 Hayshe, Wentworth. *The Graphic History of the South African War, 1899-1900*. London: Graphic Office, 1900. Although a journalistic account, this volume does supply some details of the war and a sense of how it was reported.
- 632 *Illustrated War Special*. 2 Vols. London: The Penny Illustrated Newspaper Co., 1899-1900. Very popular journalistic account but interesting as an example of how the war was presented to the typical Englishman.
- 633 Imperial South African Association. *Handy Notes on S. Africa. For the Use of Speakers and Others*. London: Imperial South African Association, 1901. Although this volume has information about the war, the pro-British views of Imperial South African Association are evident.
- 634 Inder, W. S. *On Active Service with St. John's Ambulance Brigade. South African War, 1899-1902. A Diary of Life and Events in the War Hospitals at Wynberg, Nourse Deep, Johannesburg, and Other Places*. Kendell: Atkinson and Pollitt, 1903. Inder gives a firsthand account of medical care over the course of the war.
- 635 Infantry Officer. "Army Shooting and Its Improvements." *Blackwood's Magazine* 169 (March, 1901): 320-29. The author critiques the preparation of the Royal Army's rank and file in the war.
- 636 Ingham, Kenneth. *Jan Christian Smuts: The Conscience of a South African*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1986. Ingham's research was extensive and his account of Smuts' role, as State's Attorney, in the negotiations that preceded the war, and in those leading to the peace settlement is clear and detailed. He gives significantly less attention to Smuts as commando leader during the guerrilla campaign.
- 637 Intelligence Officer, The. *On the Heels of De Wet*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood and Sons, 1902. Drawn from articles written for *Blackwood's Magazine*, this volume does provide some details concerning the last phase of the war. It is, however, anecdotal and so lacking in specifics—such as dates and names—that it is often difficult to determine exactly what the stories illustrate.

- 638 "Invasion of the Orange Free State." *Fortnightly Review* 73 (May, 1900): 872-83. This article furnishes a clear description of the British campaign from the invasion to the capture of Bloemfontein. It is quite uncritical, offering excuses for all British shortcomings.
- 639 Ireland, Alleyne. *The Anglo-Boer Conflict: Its History and Causes*. Boston: Small, Maynard, 1900. Ireland examines the events leading up to the war, but she tend to be pro-British in interpretation, for instance assuming that Milner was generally factual and Kruger seeking to mislead.
- 640 Iwan-Müller, E. B. *Lord Milner and South Africa*. London: Heinemann, 1902. Offers background regarding Milner's work before the war.
- 641 Izedinova, S. *A Few Months with the Boers: The War Reminiscences of a Russian Nursing Sister*. Translated and Edited by Henry John Moody. Johannesburg: Perskor Publications, 1977. This personal account is mostly valuable for its portrayal of the conditions endured by the Boers.
- 642 Jack the Sniper. [O'Mahony, Charles James.] *"A Peep Over the Barleycorn" In the Firing Line with the P.O.W., 2nd West Yorkshire Regiment, Through the Relief of Ladysmith*. Dublin: Printed by John T. Drought, 1911. Provides some details of the early campaigning up to the death of the author.
- 643 Jackson, Murray Cosby. *A Soldier's Diary: South Africa, 1899-1901*. London: Max Goschen, 1913. This diary by a sergeant in the 7th Mounted Infantry is rambling and lacks dependable chronological structure. Its value in the study of the war is for descriptions of the daily life and experiences of a soldier. The text suggests that the author wrote at least some accounts significantly after the events described.
- 644 Jacson, M. *The Record of a Regiment of the Line: Being a Regimental History of the 1st Battalion Devonshire Regiment During the Boer War, 1899-1902*. London: Hutchinson, 1908. Jacson, who was at the siege of Ladysmith, describes the everyday work of the soldiers. His account also includes the drive northward under Buller after Ladysmith was relieved and service in northeastern Transvaal.
- 645 Jaff, Fay. *They Came to South Africa*. Cape Town: Timmins, 1963. Jaff includes short but well-written biographical sketches of Emily

Hobhouse and Baden-Powell.

- 646 James, David. *Lord Roberts*. London: Hollis & Carter, 1954. James' long biography provides a detailed account of Roberts activity in South Africa, but his pro-Roberts bias is noticeable.
- 647 James, Lawrence. *Imperial Warrior: The Life and Times of Field-Marshal Viscount Allenby, 1861-1936*. London: Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1993. James describes cavalry action on the veld and includes a number of Allenby's comments about the war.
- 648 James, Lionel. *High Pressure; Being Some Record of Activities in the Service of the Times Newspaper*. London: John Murray, 1929. James includes a narrative of his experiences in South Africa, but really offers little unusual.
- 649 Jannasch, Hans. *Unter Buren, Briten, Bantus*. [Under Boers, Britons, Bantus.] Berlin: Volksverband der Bucherfreunde, Wegweiser-Verlag, 1931. This volume has an account of the war as well as descriptions of Southern Africa. It was published in Dutch in 1942.
- 650 Jarvis, C. S. *Half a Life*. London: John Murray, 1943. Jarvis was a young lieutenant in South Africa and had some contact with Breaker Morant, to whom he devotes a chapter in his memoirs. He is inclined to think that Morant got a better press than he deserved, perhaps because the story was quickly lost in the news of the peace.
- 651 Jay, Richard. *Joseph Chamberlain: A Political Study*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1981. Provides a scholarly account of Chamberlain and background for the study of the war in South Africa.
- 652 Jeal, Tim. *The Boy-Man—The Life of Lord Baden-Powell*. London: Hutchinson, 1989. Jeal's portrayal of Baden-Powell's service in South Africa is extensive and clear. He defends Baden-Powell against charges both of playing the siege of Mafeking for personal aggrandizement and of allowing blacks to die so that whites would not be deprived. On the whole, he makes a good case.
- 653 Jeans, T. T. ed. *Naval Brigades in the South African War*. London: Sampson Low, Marston, 1901. The small unit, mostly marines with a few sailors, known as the naval brigade, performed heroically with Methuen's column in the effort to relieve Kimberley and other places. The descriptions included in this volume are dramatic but accurate.

- 654 Jeeves, Alan. "The Rand Capitalists and the Coming of the South African War 1896-1899." *Canadian Historical Association, Historical Papers*. (1973): 61-83. Jeeves argues that Milner was largely responsible for the war, but insists that he achieved his ends only with the help of powerful capitalist allies in South Africa.
- 655 Jeppe, Carl. *The Kaleidoscopic Transvaal*. London: Chapman & Hall, 1906. Jeppe's discussion of the problems of the war tends to favor the South African Republic, but not unduly so. He defends the Progressives who wanted compromise with London, but is not unfair to Kruger.
- 656 Jerrold, Walter. *Lord Roberts of Kandahar, V.C.* London: Partridge, 1900; rpt. 1914. Jerrold's book is short and uncritical, but it does have a description of the campaign in South Africa.
- 657 Jerrold, Walter. *Sir Redvers Buller, V.C.* London: Partridge, 1900. Jerrold's book is intended for popular consumption and is not critical or analytical.
- 658 Jeyes, Samuel H. *Mr. Chamberlain: His Life and Public Career*. London: Sands, 1903. Jeyes provides much factual detail. He rejects all possibility of Chamberlain's illicit involvement in South African affairs.
- 659 Johnson, Daniel F. and Byron E. O'Leary. *The South African War, 1899-1902: New Brunswick Men at War: Brief Military Histories of New Brunswick Militia and Selected South African Units*. Saint John, N.B.: D. F. Johnson, 1989. Presents brief, superficial accounts.
- 660 Johnson, David. compiler. *Anglo-Boer War: A Collection of Contemporary Documents*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1969. A volume in the Jackdaw Series, this book is a handy introduction to the war.
- 661 Johnson, Henry. *With Our Soldiers at the Front or Conflict and Victory in South Africa*. London: Religious Tract Society, nd. Johnson describes the war through the capture of Pretoria, but his book is mostly anecdotal and superficial. He puts much emphasis on what he regards as Christian behavior such as heroic rescues of the wounded.
- 662 Johnson, L. H. *The Duke of Lancaster's Own Yeomanry Cavalry, 23rd Co., I.Y.; a Record of Incidents Connected with the Services of the First Contingent of the D.L.O.Y.C. in the South African Campaign of*

1899-1900-1901-1902; of Interest Also to the Westmorland and Cumberland Yeomanry, 24th Co., I.Y., Who Were Our Partners and Comrades-in-arms. Bolton: The Author, 1902. Provides some details of life and action in South Africa.

- 663 Jordaan, G. *Hoe zij stierven: Mededelingen aangaande het einde dergenen, aan wien gedurende de laatsten oorlog 1899-1902, in de Kaap-Kolonie het doodvonnis voltrokken is.* [How He Died: Information About Executions of Prisoners in the Cape Colony During the War of 1899-1902.] Burgersdorp: A. Coetsee, 1904, rpt. 1917. Jordaan has an account of Cape prisoners of war and their problems.
- 664 Jordan, Robert Alan. *The Transvaal War, 1880-81, A Bibliography.* Johannesburg: University of the Witwatersrand, Department of Bibliography, Librarianship, and Typography, 1969. Although not easily available, this is a valuable resource.
- 665 Jourdain, H.F.N. and Edward Fraser. *The Connaught Rangers.* 3 Vols. London: Royal United Service Institution, 1928. Provides brief account of campaigning in South Africa.
- 666 Jourdan, Philip. *Cecil Rhodes: His Private Life.* London: John Lane, 1910. Written by a one-time private secretary of Rhodes', this volume is mostly valuable for details of the subject's personal life.
- 667 Judd, Denis. *The Boer War.* London: Hart-Davis, MacGibbon, 1977. This is a short, readable, and well-illustrated account for the general reader, and it includes a significant number of extracts from the writing of important participants in the conflict.
- 668 Judd, Denis. *Radical Joe: A Life of Joseph Chamberlain.* London: Hamish Hamilton, 1977; rpt. 1993. Judd does an unusually good job of clearly laying out the issues and questions concerning Chamberlain's possible involvement in the Jameson Raid and his attitudes about the Boer War. Judd's conclusion is that although Chamberlain knew about plans for the raid, he was not directly involved and that for him the war was a matter of ensuring British economic interests in the empire.
- 669 Judd, Denis. *Someone Has Blundered; Calamities of the British Army in the Victorian Age.* London: Arthur Barker, 1973. Judd includes descriptions of both the Boer Wars. His focus is, of course, errors by soldiers, and although he reports many, he tends not to give credit where it is due.

- 670 Juta, Marjorie. *The Pace of the Ox: The Life of Paul Kruger*. London: Constable, 1937; rpt. 1975. Juta's work is anecdotal and tends to be sympathetic with Kruger, but it was the first full biography in English. Juta presents Kruger as honorable and counters the previous British contention that he was a failure.
- 671 Kaminski, Diane Clements. *The Radicalization of a Ministering Angel: A Biography of Emily Hobhouse*. Ph. D. Dissertation, University of Connecticut, 1977. This is a scholarly, detailed portrayal of Hobhouse and her efforts to improve conditions for Boer women and children in British concentration camps.
- 672 Kammer, J. *Gedenkblätter aus dem Burenkrieg*. [Memorial Volume of the Boer War.] Elberfeld: NP, 1903. This volume is a tribute to the Boers.
- 673 Kandyba-Foxcroft, Elisaveta. *Russia and the Anglo-Boer War*. Roodepoort: Cum Books, 1981. Although this volume does include an account of the war, its focus is attitudes in Russia where the Boer cause was popular. The bibliography, however, provides numerous entries in Russian concerning attitudes toward the war, and those interested in the international outcry concerning the war should consult it.
- 674 Keaney, Annette. *Le lion et le sanglier: deux heros de la guerre des Boers: Paul Kruger et Georges de Villebois-Mareuil*. [The Lion and the Wild Boar: Two Heroes of the Boer War: Paul Kruger and Georges de Villebois-Mareuil.] Paris: Éditions France-Empire, 1991. Gives a biographical examination of two of the leading figures on the Boer side in the South African conflict.
- 675 Kearsey, A.H.C. *War Record of the York and Lancaster Regiment*. London: George Bell & Sons, 1903. Provides details of campaigning in South Africa.
- 676 Keenan, C. B. "Notes of a Regimental Doctor in a Mounted Infantry Corps." *Montreal Medical Journal* 26 (1902): 389-400. Offers some details of military medicine.
- 677 Kemp, Jan. *Vir vryheid en vir reg*. [For Freedom and for Right.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1941; rpt. 1946. Kemp's account of the war tends to be pro-Boer but does set the situation in South African historical context.

- 678 Keppel-Jones, Arthur. *South Africa: A Short History*. 3rd Rev. Ed. London: Hutchinson, 1961. The author presents a comprehensive account of the war in the context of South African history. He seems particularly interested in the conflict between the Uitlanders and the Boer power structure.
- 679 Kersauson, Robert de. *Le dernier commando Boer: un volontaire français dans la guerre anglo-boer, 1900-1902*. [The Last Boer Commando: A French Volunteer in the Anglo-Boer War, 1900-1902.] Edited by Bernard Lugan. Monaco: Éditions du Rocher, 1989. This book is Kersauson's diary of experiences with a Boer commando. The original diary is held by the Huguenot Society of South Africa.
- 680 Kersauson de Pennedreff, Robert de. *Ek en die vierkleur*. [The Flag and I.] Johannesburg: Afrikaanse pers-boekhandel, nd. Provides a personal narrative of the South African War.
- 681 Kestell, J. D. *Met de Boeren-Commando's Mijne ervaringen als veldprediker*. Amsterdam: Hoveker & Wormser, nd. Translated as *Through Shot and Flame: The Adventures and Experiences of J. D. Kestell, Chaplain to President Steyn and General Christian De Wet*. London: Methuen & Co., 1903; rpt. 1976. Kestell went on commando, though reputedly unarmed, and served as a chaplain. He was also present at the final peace negotiations, which he describes in some detail.
- 682 Kestell, J. D. *Christiaan de Wet: 'n Lewensbeskrywing*. [Christiaan De Wet: A Biography.] Cape Town: Nasionale Pers, 1920; rpt. 1949, 1961. Although Kestell's work is quite nationalistic and overly sympathetic toward De Wet, he was with De Wet in the war and claims to have had personal information from the De Wet family so details in his biography have to be considered when examining De Wet's career.
- 683 Kestell, J. D. and D. E. Van Velden. *The Peace Negotiations Between the Governments of the South African Republic and the Orange Free State, and the Representatives of the British Government Which Terminated in the Peace Concluded at Vereeniging on the 31st May, 1902*. London: Richard Clay, 1912; Orig.: *De Vredesonderhandelingen tueschen Boer en Brit in Zuid Afrika* (1909). Contains correspondence and minutes of the peace conference that ended the Anglo-Boer War.
- 684 Kesteven, G. R. *The Boer War*. London: Chato and Windus, 1970. Kesteven provides a brief outline with the emphasis on the politics of

empire. He blames Joseph Chamberlain for the war and Redvers Buller for military failures. Unfortunately, his account is marred by factual errors, including an egregious over-estimate of Chamberlain's influence in British Government.

- 685 Kesting, J. G. *The Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902: Mounting Tension, and the Outbreak of Hostilities as Reflected in Overseas Magazine Contributions Published January-December 1899*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Libraries, 1956; rpt. 1972. The narrow focus limits the use of this short bibliography, but for the topic indicated in the title it is worth consulting.
- 686 *Khaki in South Africa. An Album of Pictures and Photographs Illustrating the Chief Events of the War Under Lord Roberts. With a Chronological History*. London: George Newnes, 1900. Mostly notable for contemporary pictures.
- 687 Kieran, Brian L. *O'okiep: The Defense and Relief of O'okiep, Cape Colony, 4 April to 4 May 1902*. Hong Kong: B. L. Kieran, 1995. Kieran examines the siege of the mining community of O'okiep by Jan Smuts' commando late in the war. Because O'okiep was on the far western side of Cape Colony, Smuts' ability to attack it made clear that the Boers were still able to conduct military operations.
- 688 Kiernan, R. H. *Baden-Powell*. London: Harrap, 1939; rpt. 1970. Kiernan's account of Baden-Powell at Mafeking and after is popular in style.
- 689 Kieser, Alen. *President Steyn in die Krisisjare, 1896-1899*. [President Steyn in the Crisis Years, 1896-1899.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Boekhandel, nd. This study of the president of the Free State is particularly good regarding the development of the alliance between the two Boer republics.
- 690 King, J. *Dr. Jameson's Raid: Its Causes and Consequences*. London: Routledge, 1896. King's account is popular and superficial.
- 691 Kinnear, Alfred. *To the Modder River with Methuen*. Bristol: Arrowsmith, 1900. Kinnear, a war correspondent, is quite good at describing the battle areas and setting the scene for action and well as providing observations of the military operations.
- 692 Kinsey, H. W. "The Capture of Lötter's Commando." *Military History*

Journal 1 (Dec., 1969): 4, 29. Lötter was a successful guerrilla leader whose force was captured September 5, 1901. Lötter was later executed on grounds that he was a Cape citizen, and therefore a British subject, and guilty of treason.

- 693 Kipling, Rudyard. *With Number Three; Surgical & Medical; and New Poems. Also Letters from Julian Ralph, Charles E. Hands and Douglas Story*. Santiago de Chile: Hume, 1900. Contains some comment on the war in addition to poetry.
- 694 Kisch, Henry and H. St. J. Tugman. *The Siege of Ladysmith in 120 Pictures*. London: George Newnes, 1900. This volume is valuable for its contemporary illustrations.
- 695 Knight, E. F. *South Africa After the War A Narrative of Recent Travel*. London: Longmans, Green, 1903. Knight records experiences shortly after the war and gives a sense of the conflict's impact on South Africa.
- 696 Knight, Ian. *Colenso 1899: The Boer War in Natal*. London: Osprey, 1995. Knight's book is a clear and extensively illustrated outline of the entire campaign in Natal through the relief of Ladysmith. It is an excellent introduction to the subject.
- 697 Knox, E. Blake. *Buller's Campaign*. London: R. Brimley Johnson, 1902. Knox, an RAMC doctor, provides details of medical services as well as of the campaign to relieve Ladysmith. He is not critical, either ignoring failures or dismissing them as bad luck.
- 698 Koss, Stephen. ed. *The Pro-Boers: The Anatomy of an Antiwar Movement*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1973. Koss includes a mix of public and private documents and does an excellent job of tying the events of the war to the evolution of anti-war sentiment in Britain.
- 699 Krause, Ludwig. *The War Memoirs of Commandant Ludwig Krause, 1899-1900*. Edited by Jerold Taitz. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 1996. Provides an Afrikaner's account of campaigning in the northern part of South Africa.
- 700 Kriel, C. *Rondom die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902*. [All Over the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902.] Johannesburg: Perskor, 1979. This collection of photographs and comments covers the entire war, but intentionally or not they tend to emphasize extremes by the British.

- 701 Krige, Jan. *American Sympathy in the Boer War*. Pinedene, Transvaal: N.P., 1938. The author fought in the war and then fled to Holland and the U.S. where he worked to generate sympathy for the Boer cause.
- 702 Krikler, Jeremy. "Agrarian Class Struggle and the South African War." *Social History* 14 (May, 1989): 151-76. In discussing the development of class struggles, Krikler makes very clear the significance and extent of blacks in the war, especially on the British side.
- 703 Krikler, Jeremy. *Revolution From Above, Rebellion From Below: The Agrarian Transvaal at the Turn of the Century*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1993. Krikler discusses the class elements in the war. His comments about peasants (blacks) helps make clear how significant they were both as soldiers and economically in the struggle.
- 704 Kritzinger, P. M. and R. D. McDonald. *In the Shadow of Death*. London: William Clowes, 1904. Reminiscences of a Boer officer, including trial by the British because he was from Cape Colony and regarded a traitor.
- 705 Kröll, Ulrich. *Die internationale Buren-Agitation 1899-1902; Haltung der Öffentlichkeit und Agitation zugunsten der Buren in Deutschland, Frankreich und den Niederlanden während des Burenkrieges*. [International Pro-Boer Agitation 1899-1902; Supporting Publicity and Agitation in Favor of the Boers in Germany, France, and the Netherlands During the Boer War.] Münster: Verlag Regensburg, 1973. Although there is only a limited account of the war *per se* in this volume, the bibliography provides a large number of references for those interested in public opinion about the Boer War.
- 706 Kruger, D. W. *Die Ander Oorlog: Die Stryd on die Openbare Mening in Engeland gedurende die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [The Other War: The Effort to Obtain Public Support in England During the Second War for Freedom.] Cape Town: Tafelberg, 1974. Analyzes British opinion during the Boer War based on newspaper articles.
- 707 Kruger, Daniel W. "Die Weg na die See." [The Way to the Sea.] *Archives Yearbook For South African History*. Vol. 1, Part 1 (1938). Kruger examines the issue of access to the sea for the Transvaal as a significant factor in the causes of the war.
- 708 Kruger, Rayne. *Good-bye Dolly Gray: The Story of the Boer War*.

London: Cassell, 1959; rpt. 1964, 1967, 1997. This survey gives most detailed military history of such general studies. It is an excellent work, though a bit sympathetic toward the Boers.

- 709 Kruger, S. J. P. *The Memoirs of Paul Kruger*. 2 Vols. London: Fisher Unwin, 1902. Kruger's determination to maintain the autonomy of his nation was central to the outbreak of war in 1899, and he had been involved in the first war as well. However biased his memoirs may be, they are an important source.
- 710 Kruse, Juanita Fern. *John Buchan and the Idea of Empire (British)*. Ph.D. Dissertation, Miami University, 1982. Buchan was Milner's secretary during and after the war, and although the author's focus is mostly his concept of empire (i.e. that primitive passions should be controlled by societies which had developed the discipline of civilization) his activities during the war and influence on Milner are of significance for the study of the conflict.
- 711 Kubicek, Robert V. *The Administration of Imperialism: Joseph Chamberlain at the Colonial Office*. Durham: Duke University Press, 1969. Kubicek examines the administrative structure and technology of the Colonial Office and concludes that Chamberlain could not have controlled Milner, and was led into supporting the High Commissioner's policy.
- 712 Kubicek, Robert V. *Economic Imperialism in Theory and Practice: The Case of South African Gold-Mining Finance*. Chapel Hill: North Carolina University Press, 1979. Kubicek's analysis of the mining industry makes a valuable contribution to the debate about its importance in the causes of the Boer War.
- 713 Kurschner, Joseph. ed. *Die Buren und der Südafrikanische Krieg; ein Darstellung Südafrikas, des Charakters und Lebens der Buren, der Geschichte ihrer Republiken und deren Kampfe mit England bis zum Friedensschluss*. [The Boers and the South African War: A South African Description of the Nature and Life of the Boers, the Fate of Their Republics, and Their Struggle With England to the Conclusion of Peace.] Berlin: A. B. Mundt, nd. There is a somewhat pro-Boer flavor in this book.
- 714 Kuttner, H. von. *Kriegschirurgische Erfahrungen aus dem Süd-afrikanischen Kriege 1899-1900*. [Memories of War Surgery in the South African War 1899-1902.] Tübingen: Laupp, 1900. Provides

comment and description of medical and sanitary affairs.

- 715 Kuttner, H. von. *Unter dem deutschen roten Kreuz im Südafrikanischen Kriege*. [Under the German Red Cross in the South African War.] Leipzig: Hirzel, 1900. Contains an account of medical service.
- 716 L. N. *Letters Home. 1900*. London: F. Calder Turner, 1900. Consists of personal comments by a member of the Imperial Yeomanry.
- 717 Labat, Gaston. ed. *Le Livre d'Or (The Golden Book) of the Canadian Contingents in South Africa; with an Appendix on Canadian Loyalty, Containing Letters, Documents, Photographs*. Montreal: NP, 1901. Provides a somewhat nationalistic account of Canadian troops in the Boer War.
- 718 Laffin, John. *Anzacs at War: The Story of Australian and New Zealand Battles*. London: Abelard-Schuman, 1965. Laffin's focus is the stand made by Anzac forces at the Elands River in July and August, 1900.
- 719 Laidler, Percy Ward and Michael Gelfand. *South Africa: Its Medical History*. Cape Town: C. Struik, 1971. The authors include a short but interesting section describing the creation of a Transvaal Red Cross organization to serve in case of war in response to the Jameson Raid.
- 720 Lancaster, Paul. *Gentleman of the Press: The Life and Times of an Early Reporter, Julian Ralph of the Sun*. Syracuse: Syracuse University Press, 1992. Ralph established himself as a newsman in the U.S. and concluded his career as a war correspondent. He wrote several books about his experiences in South Africa, which are also included here.
- 721 Landman, Christina. *The Piety of Afrikaans Women: Diaries of Guilt*. Pretoria: University of South Africa, 1994. Although the theme of this book is religion and feminism, the chapter concerning Alie Badenhorst includes a discussion of her wartime experiences.
- 722 Landon, Perceval. "Magersfontein." *Fortnightly Review* 79 (July, 1902): 76-85. Landon gives details from his own observations of the war.
- 723 Landon, Perceval. "To Paardeberg." *Fortnightly Review* 78 (Sept., 1902): 485-93. Although he includes some description of the campaign leading up to the Battle of Paardeberg, Landon seems mostly interested in the influence of religious ideas on Boer thinking.

- 724 Langer, William. *The Diplomacy of Imperialism, 1890-1902*. 2 Vols. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1935; rpt. 1950. Langer examines the theories of causation of the Boer War and the diplomatic negotiations between the two sides. He is inclined to blame Milner and Chamberlain for the war.
- 725 Langley, Michael. *The East Surrey Regiment (The 31st and 70th Regiments of Foot)*. London: Leo Cooper, 1972. This is a very short history and gives only passing attention to South Africa and most other topics for that matter.
- 726 Langlois, Hippolyte. *Enseignements de deux guerres récentes: Guerres Turco-Russe et Anglo-Boer*. Paris: Charles-Lavauzelle, 1904. Translation: *Lessons From Two Recent Wars. (The Russo-Turkish and South African Wars) Translated for the General Staff, War Office, From the French*. London: HMSO, 1909. The author is critical of British offensive performance, but concludes that if done correctly, British tactics could have worked despite the power of modern weapons.
- 727 "The Late Campaign in Natal." *Fortnightly Review* 73 (April, 1900): 680-91. This article is a summary of the campaign in Natal through the relief of Ladysmith and a critique of General Buller's handling of it.
- 728 Latimer, Jon. "Talana Hill: Opening Shots of the Boer War." *Military History* 16 (Oct., 1999): 54-60. In his detailed and clearly written description of the battle at Talana Hill, Latimer emphasizes the importance of the increased firepower available from magazine fed rifles.
- 729 Laurence, E. C. *A Nurse's Life in War and Peace*. London: Smith, Elder, 1912. Includes a description of medical care and nursing during the Boer War.
- 730 Laurie, G. B. *History of the Royal Irish Rifles*. London: Gale & Polden, 1914. Although narrowly focused, Laurie's book includes an examination of campaigning in South Africa.
- 731 Lawrence, James. "'The White Man's Burden'? Imperial Wars in the 1890's." *History Today* 42 (August, 1992): 45-51. Regarding the Boer War, the author suggests that the length of the continuing struggle against the guerrillas resulted in a decline in support for

imperialism by the British people.

- 732 Lecoy de La Marche, Henri Marie Albert. *Souvenirs de la guerre du Transvaal; journal d'un volontaire*. [Memories of the War in the Transvaal: Journal of a Volunteer.] Paris: A. Colin, 1901. Gives a personal narrative of service with the Boer commandos.
- 733 Lee, Emanoel C. G. *To the Bitter End: A Photographic History of the Boer War, 1899-1902*. London: Guild Publishing, 1985. The photographs in this volume are rarely posed, and it provides powerful visual images. The pictures are accompanied with significant narrative explanations.
- 734 Lehmann, Joseph H. *All Sir Garnet: A Life of Field-Marshal Lord Wolseley*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1964. As commander in chief of the British army, Wolseley was involved in the preparation for and strategic decision making about the Boer War. Lehmann's account is readable and detailed.
- 735 Lehmann, Joseph H. *The First Boer War*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1972. Lehmann's book is an excellent survey of the first Anglo-Boer military confrontation. It helps make clear that the earlier conflict was significant in the background leading to the war of 1899-1902.
- 736 Leigh, Ramon Lewis. *Vereeniging*. Johannesburg: Courier-Gazette Publishers, 1968. Leigh's study of the town of Vereeniging and site of the peace talks, not far from Johannesburg, includes comment about the impact of the war on that part of the country.
- 737 Le May, G.H.L. *British Supremacy in South Africa, 1899-1907*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1965. Le May examines the war's consequences for Afrikaner nation identity and the efforts of the British to find a formula for governing after the peace. What reconciliation there was, he believes, came at the expense of blacks, whose rights were ignored.
- 738 Leonard, Charles. *Papers on the Political Situation in South Africa, 1885-1895 With Papers by Advocate Wessels and Advocate Auret*. London: Humphreys, 1903. Leonard includes a great many items (pamphlets, news articles, speeches, etc.) relating to the Uitlanders and their grievances and concludes with Select Committee's report on the Jameson Raid.
- 739 Le Riche, P. J. *Memoirs of General Ben Bouwer: As Written by P. J. Le*

Riche. Edited by O.J.O. Ferrira. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council, 1980. Le Riche rewrote Bouwer's notes from Afrikaans into English. They include accounts of experiences in the Anglo-Boer War.

- 740 LeSueur, Gordon. *Cecil Rhodes: The Man and His Work*. London: 1913. The author, one of Rhodes' private secretaries, offers little of value other than personal details about Rhodes.
- 741 *Letters From an Uitlander 1899-1902*. London: John Murray, 1903. Provides comments and observations regarding the South African situation by an unknown writer who purports to be an immigrant of the sort whose complaints helped precipitate the war.
- 742 Levi, N. *Jan Smuts, Being a Character Sketch of Gen. the Hon. J. C. Smuts, K.C., M.L.A., Minister of Defense, Union of South Africa*. London: Longmans Green, 1917. Levi describes Smuts' remarkable career was as Transvaal States Attorney and then commando commander during the guerrilla phase of the Boer War.
- 743 Lewinsohn, Richard. *Barney Barnato: From Whitechapel Clown to Diamond King*. Trans. by Geoffrey Sainsbury. New York: E. P. Dutton, 1938. Lewishon includes an account of the Jameson Raid and of Barnato's intervention to get the Johannesburg conspirators released because they were needed in the gold fields.
- 744 Lewis, R. C. *On the Veldt: A Plain Narrative of Service Afield in South Africa*. Hobart: Walch, 1902. Lewis gives an eyewitness account of the experiences of the 1st Tasmanian Imperial Bushmen in the South African campaign.
- 745 Lewsen, Phyllis. *John X. Merriman: Paradoxical South African Statesman*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1982. Merriman was a prominent Cape politician with ties to English liberals. Lewsen's biography provides information about colonial political problems before, during, and after the war, but little about the conflict *per se*.
- 746 Leyds, W. J. *The First Annexation of the Transvaal*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1906; Originally *Der Eerste Annexatie van de Transvaal*. Amsterdam: N.P., 1906. Leyds account of the early relations between the British and the Boers strongly favors the latter. He is strongly convinced that the British were unjust and intended to take the Transvaal from the beginning. He is also critical of the British for helping blacks to defend themselves.

- 747 Leyds, W. J. *The Transvaal Surrounded: A Continuation of The First Annexation of the Transvaal*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1919; Originally *Het Insluiten van de Boeren Republieken* (1914). Leyds extends his condemnation of the British suggesting that after the London Convention of 1884, they sought to surround the Transvaal with colonies in hopes of controlling it.
- 748 Liman, Paul, and Haller von Zeigesar. *Der Burenkrieg: seine Ursachen und seine Entstehung, nach amtlichen Quellen der Burenregierung*. [The Boer War: Its Causes and Origin, From Official Boer Sources.] Liepzig: Historisch-Politischer Verlag, 1902. These authors' analysis of the origins of the war has something of a pro-Boer bias.
- 749 Lindley, Francis. *Lord Lovat: A Biography*. London: Hutchinson, nd. Lindley includes an episodic account of the raising and campaigning of the Lovat Scouts.
- 750 Linesman. [Grant, Maurice Harold.] *The Mechanism of War*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons, 1902. Includes accounts of the war largely drawn from the *Spectator*.
- 751 Linesman. [Grant, Maurice Harold.] *Words by an Eyewitness: The Struggle in Natal*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood, 1902; orig. 1901. "Linesman" was a correspondent for *Blackwood's Magazine* in which the originals of the essays printed in this volume appeared. As the accounts are really by an eyewitness, they have value, but this is tempered by "Linesman's" tendency to put the best face on events from a spirit of English nationalism and to be superficial.
- 752 Linklater, Joseph. *On Active Service in South Africa With 'The Silent Sixth.' Being a Record of Events, Compiled by the Writer, From the Time of the Formation of the Regiment in New Zealand Until Its Return from South Africa*. Wellington: McKee, nd. This book provides an opportunity to follow an imperial unit from its beginnings all the way through the campaign and home.
- 753 Lloyd, F. and A. Russell. *First or Grenadier Guards in South Africa, 1899-1902*. London: Keliher, 1907. The authors give very detailed, day by day, accounts of the second and third battalions' campaigns in South Africa. They also have lists of casualties and other such statistical and biographical details.
- 754 Lloyd, J. Barkley. *One Thousand Miles With the C.I.V.* London:

- Methuen, 1901. Provides a personal narrative of experiences with the City of London Imperial Volunteers in South Africa.
- 755 Lloyd, T. H. Eyre. *Boer War: Diary of Captain Eyre Lloyd, 2nd Coldstream Guards, Assistant Staff Officer, Colonel Benson's Column, Killed at Brakenlaagte, 30th October, 1901*. London: Army and Navy Co-operative Society, 1905. Furnishes an officer's personal observations and descriptions of the most active part of the conflict.
- 756 Lockhart, J. G. and C. M. Woodhouse. *Rhodes*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1963. This biography is long, detailed, and accurate, and the authors drew heavily from the Rhodes papers. Their interpretation tends to be pro-Rhodes.
- 757 Lombaard, S. G. "Op Amajuba." [Up Majuba.] *Historia* 8 (March, 1963): 54-59. Lombaard gives a brief discussion of the Battle of Majuba Hill in 1881.
- 758 Lombard, J. P. la Grange. *Paul Kruger die Volksman*. [Paul Kruger: The People's Man.] Pretoria: Schaik, 1925. Lombard's biography of the Transvaal leader includes his role in the politics of both the Boer Wars.
- 759 Lombard, P. S. *Uit die Dagboek van 'n wildeboer*. [Out of the Diary of a Savage Boer.] Edited by A. M. Jackson. NP: Die Afrikaanse persboekhandel, nd. Provides a personal narrative of wartime experiences.
- 760 Long, B. K. *In Smuts' Camp*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1945. The author, an English immigrant to South Africa, is largely concerned with the politics of his adopted country after the Boer War, but he does provide a concise summary of attitudes about the concentration camps and their effect on politics.
- 761 Long, Mrs. Walter H. C. *Peace and War in the Transvaal: An Account of the Defense of Fort Mary*. London: 1882. This account of the siege of Lydenburg by the wife of the commanding officer provides interesting comparisons to sieges in the 1899-1902 conflict.
- 762 Lorch, A. E. *A Story of the Cape Mounted Riflemen 1st August, 1878-31st March, 1913 and 1st Regiment South African Mounted Riflemen 1st April 1913-1st April 1926*. Pretoria: N.P., 1958. Includes an account of a South African unit in the campaigns of the Boer War.
- 763 Lossberg, Otto von. *Mit Santa Barbara in Südafrika*. [With Santa Barbara

in South Africa.] Leipzig: Historisch-Politischer Verlag, 1903. Lossberg was a German military observer with the Boers.

- 764 Louis, Prince of Orleans and Braganca. *Tour d'Afrique, de Paris à Lourenço-Marques, au camp des Boers, chasse et retour*. [A Tour of Africa: From Paris to Lourenço-Marques, in the Camp of the Boers, Chasing and Returning.] Paris: Plon-Nourrit, 1902. Presents observations and comment concerning the war from a French aristocrat.
- 765 Louw, James Murray. *'n Kommandoprediker. Een en ander uit die lewe van die Weleerwaarde Heer James Murray*. [Commando Chaplain: Incidents in the Life of the Reverend James Murray.] Pretoria: J. H. B. de Bussy, 1948. This volume is mostly Louw's diary which includes a personal narrative of wartime experiences and gives a sense of Boer religious sentiments.
- 766 Lovegrove, Peter. *Not Least in the Crusade: A Short History of the Royal Army Medical Corps*. Aldershot: Gale and Polden, 1951. Although not much more than an outline history, this volume does have a chapter about the problems of casualties—from combat and illness—in the South African War.
- 767 Lovell, Kenneth C. and John C. Prior. *British Casualties of the First Boer War 1880-1881*. London: Lovell, 1983. Provides a statistical reference for the first Boer War.
- 768 Lovell, R. I. *The Struggle for South Africa 1875-1899*. New York: Macmillan, 1934. Lovell has done a thorough study of the diplomatic problems that led to the Boer War. He overemphasizes the significance of diplomacy among the causes of the war.
- 769 Lowry, Edward P. *With the Guards' Brigade From Bloemfontein to Koomati Poort and Back*. London: Horace Marshall & Son, 1902. Provides personal narrative of the Reverend Lowry of his experiences in the South African War.
- 770 Lucas, Charles. *The History of South Africa to the Jameson Raid*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1899. This volume has a heavy focus on geography and includes many maps. The perspective is unusual and insightful.
- 771 Lucas, Charles. ed. *The Empire at War*. 5 Vols. London: Humphrey Milford Oxford University Press, 1921-26. Lucas' focus is the

contribution of the empire to British war efforts, and although his focus is predominantly World War I, he does give some details of Canadian, Australian, and New Zealander participation in South Africa.

- 772 Lugan, Bernard. *La Guerre des Boers: 1899-1902*. [The Boer War.] Paris: Perrin, 1998. Lugan mixes military matters, foreign policy, and politics into his study.
- 773 Lupini, Mario. *Camillo Ricchiardi: Italian Boer War Hero*. Melville: Scripta Africana, 1988. Lupini tells the story of an Italian volunteer who gave his all for the Boer cause.
- 774 Luttman-Johnson, F. *Record of Services of the 3rd Battn. The Prince of Wales's Leinster Regiment (Royal Canadians) in the South African War, 1900, 1901, 1902*. London: Army and Navy Co-operative Society, 1913. Luttman-Johnson's regimental history provides details of his battalion on campaign, but its focus is narrow.
- 775 Lynch, Arthur. *My Life Story*. London: John Long, 1924. Lynch commanded the Second Irish Brigade with the Boer forces from shortly after Colenso through the fall of Pretoria, after which he left for America seeking support for the Boer cause. His account gives more descriptions of Boer leaders than details about the campaign.
- 776 Lynch, G. *Impressions of a War Correspondent*. London: Georges Newnes, 1903. Lynch's accounts of combat are vivid, and he also gives a powerful description of the impact of typhoid on the troops.
- 777 Lyttelton, Neville. *Eighty Years: Soldiering, Politics, Games*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, nd. Lyttelton describes his roles first at the War Office during preparations for the South African campaign and then as a brigade commander during the war. One of the few British commanders whose reputation improved due to the Boer War, his growing mistrust of Buller's ability is notable in his account. He does not seem to have objected to Buller's ideas at the time, and so this may be a case of hindsight improving vision.
- 778 MacCarthy, Desmond. *Portraits*. London: MacGibbon & Kee, 1931; rpt. 1949, 1955. MacCarthy includes biographical sketches of Rhodes and Kruger.
- 779 M'Caw, R. *Outposts and Convoys With the Ayrshire Volunteers in South*

Africa. Kilmarnock: Dunlop & Drennan, 1901. Provides personal descriptions of service as part of the Royal Scots Fusiliers.

- 780 M'Clelland, R. *Heroes and Gentlemen. An Army Chaplain's Experiences in South Africa*. Paisley: J. & R. Parlane, 1902. M'Clelland's narrative has many details about soldiers and life in South Africa.
- 781 McCormick, Alexander S. *The Royal Canadians in South Africa*. Akron: NP, 1955; rpt. 1962. McCormick describes the role and importance of the Royal Canadian unit in the Boer War.
- 782 McCourt, Edward. *Remember Butler: The Story of Sir William Butler*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1967. McCourt defends Butler from charges that, as British military commander in Cape Colony before the war, he deliberately undermined the policies of Milner out of pro-Boer sentiments. Although he did think Milner was wrong, Butler was, McCourt thinks, a scapegoat for poor planning and incompetence in the British military.
- 783 McCracken, Donald P. *The Irish Pro-Boers, 1877-1902*. Johannesburg: Perskor, 1989. Although his focus is broad, McCracken does have a description of Irish participation in the Anglo-Boer War.
- 784 Macdonald, Donald. *How We Kept the Flag Flying: The Siege of Ladysmith Through Australian Eyes*. London: Ward, Lock, 1900. Offers a variety of details about the people and circumstances of Ladysmith during the siege.
- 785 McDonald, J. G. *Rhodes: A Life*. London: Philip Allan, 1927; rpt. 1971. Although this biography is popular in style and researched in secondary sources, it has primary source value because the author makes personal observations based on his acquaintance with Rhodes.
- 786 Macdonald, J. Ramsay. *What I Saw in South Africa, September and October 1902*. London: The Echo Office, 1902. Macdonald, a Labour Party leader, describes the situation from a pro-Boer point of view.
- 787 McDonald, R. D. *'n Terugblik op my oorlogsjare*. [A Backward Glance at My Year of War.] Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepublieke, 1995. Provides a short personal narrative of the Boer War.
- 788 McHugh, R. J. *The Siege of Ladysmith*. London: Chapman & Hall, 1900.

McHugh gives a personal account of the siege with details of the situation in the city.

- 789 MacKail, J. W. and Guy Wyndham. *Life and Letters of George Wyndham*. 2 Vols. London: Hutchinson, nd. Wyndham was under-secretary at the War Office 1898-1900 and his letters show what was known about and reactions to events in South Africa.
- 790 Mackenzie, Fred A. *Paul Kruger: His Life Story*. London: James Bowden, 1899. Although published before the war, this short popular biography does provide background concerning the first war and Kruger's involvement in the origins of the second.
- 791 MacKenzie, W. Douglas. *South Africa: Its History, Heroes and Wars*. Chicago: Monarch Book Co., 1899. Issued by several publishers, this work is a superficial account with a somewhat pious attitude.
- 792 Mackern, H. F. *Sidelights on the March; the Experiences of an American Journalist in South Africa*. London: John Murray, 1901. The personal observations of this journalist are better for details of life than for the bigger strategic picture of the war.
- 793 Mackinnon, W. H. *The Journal of the C.I.V. in South Africa*. London: John Murray, 1901. The general of the City Imperial Volunteers provides facts and descriptions of the unit which played a significant role in the war.
- 794 Mclean, A.H.H. *Public Schools and the War in South Africa, 1899-1902. Some Facts, Figures, and Comparisons, With a List of Specially Distinguished Officers*. London: Edward Stanford, 1903. Useful for some details and statistics.
- 795 MacMunn, George. *Behind the Scenes in Many Wars*. London: John Murray, 1930. MacMunn provides some details of preparation, life on campaign, and combat in South Africa, but his account is superficial.
- 796 Macnab, Roy. *The French Colonel: Villebois-Mareuil and the Boers, 1899-1900*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 1975. Villebois-Mareuil was a French professional soldier who volunteered to serve with the Boers out of sympathy for their cause and a desire for glory. Macnab describes his career as adviser, commander of foreign volunteers, and finally death in action April 5, 1900, at Boshof.

- 797 Macnab, Roy. "Villebois-Mareuil and the Boers." *History Today* 23 (Nov., 1973): 792-800. This article is a biographical sketch of the distinguished French soldier who tried to organize all foreign volunteers in the Boer forces into a single unit.
- 798 Macready, Nevil. *Annals of an Active Life*. 2 Vols. New York: George H. Doran, 1925. Macready describes the battle of Elandslaagte, siege of Ladysmith, and drive to Pretoria. He was later bored by outpost duty. Anti-Boer prejudices color many of his comments.
- 799 Mader, Friedrich Wilhelm. *Im Kampf um Recht und Freiheit, Erlebnisse des schwäbischen Dichters Michael Mausle und der Familie Rijn im Burenkrieg 1899-1902*. [In the Struggle for Justice and Freedom, the Adventures of Swabian Poet Michael Mausle and the Rijn Family in the Boer War, 1899-1902.] Stuttgart: Union Deutsche Verlagsgesellschaft, 1925. Provides a personal narrative of the war.
- 800 *Mafeking Mail Special Siege Slip, The*. Mafeking: Townshend & Son, 1900. This volume contains a reprinting of the newspapers issued during the siege.
- 801 Magnus, Philip. *Kitchener: Portrait of an Imperialist*. London: John Murray, 1958. Magnus' biography is scholarly and readable. His account of Kitchener's strategies, including the use of concentration camps, while sympathetic, is judicious.
- 802 Mahan, A. T. *The War in South Africa: A Narrative of the Anglo-Boer War From the Beginning of Hostilities to the Conclusion of Peace*. New York: Peter Fenelon Collier & Son, 1900. Mahan, a well-known American military historian, is wordy and prone to asides of little relevance. His account of the war is, however, detailed and thoughtful.
- 803 Makins, E. ed. *The Royals in South Africa (1899-1902)*. Potchefstroom: Editor of *The Eagle*, 1914. Provides an account of the 1st (Royal) Dragoons in the Boer War, and like most regimental histories includes details but is narrow in focus.
- 804 Makins, George H. *Surgical Experience in South Africa, 1899-1900*. London: Smith Elder, 1901. Makins includes clinical details of wounds inflicted by the rifles used in the war and other technical medical information.
- 805 Malan, Jacques. *Die Boere-offisiere van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [The

Boer Officers in the Second War for Freedom.] Pretoria: J. P. Van der Walt, 1990. Provides biographical information about Boer leaders.

- 806 Malmesbury, Susan, Countess of. *Life of Major-General Sir John Ardagh*. London: John Murray, 1909. Ardagh headed the British army's intelligence branch before and early in the Boer War. The author, his wife, defends him and his department against charges that it supplied inaccurate information or maps to the forces in South Africa. She asserts that more was done than has been recognized and that no more could have been done with the resources the government provided.
- 807 Mangold, W.F.C. *Vir vaderland, vryheid en eer: oorlogsherinneringe van Wilhelm Mangold, 1899-1902*. [For Fatherland, Freedom, and Hope: War Memories of William Mangold.] Pretoria: Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing, 1988. Supplies a personal narrative of wartime experiences.
- 808 Marais, J. S. *The Fall of Kruger's Republic*. London: Oxford University Press, 1961. Marais believes that the discovery of gold in the Rand was the precipitating factor in causing the war, and that Kruger made a good faith effort to resolve at least some of the grievances of the Uitlanders. The villain in his eyes was Milner, who believed that Afrikaner nationalist sentiment could harm the empire, and convinced Chamberlain that British supremacy in Southern Africa was at risk. His work is scholarly and well researched.
- 809 Marais, Jaap. *The War Against the Boers: When Is a War Not a War?, When It Is Carried on by Methods of Barbarism, as in South Africa*. Hatfield, Pretoria: Aktuele Publikasies, 1996. Although short, Marais's work does deal with British war methods which the Boers regarded as atrocities.
- 810 Markham, Alfred. *Ladysmith and Lydenburg: Anglo-Boer War Letters of Alfred Markham*. Edited by Grant Christison. Pietermaritzburg: Christison, 1993. Provides personal comment and narrative of wartime experiences.
- 811 Marks, Shula and Stanley Trapido. "Lord Milner and the South African State." *History Workshop* 7 (Autumn, 1979): 50-80. Writing from an apparently socialistic point of view, the authors assert the significance of capitalistic elements in the causes of the war.
- 812 Marling, Percival. *Rifleman and Hussar*. London: John Murray, 1931;

rpt. 1935. In the first Boer War, Marling was a junior officer at Bronkhorst Spruit and observer at Majuba and describes both experiences. In the second war, he was an officer with the 18th Hussars, suffered through the siege of Ladysmith, was invalided home, and returned to fight in the guerrilla campaigns. His book, essentially the diary he kept at the time, provides details and observations but only rarely analytical or critical comments.

- 813 Marlowe, J. *Milner: Apostle of Empire*. London: Hamish Hamilton, 1976. Marlowe's book is a popular but well-researched biography with extensive attention paid to Milner's work in South Africa.
- 814 Marquard, Margaret. *Letters From a Boer Parsonage: Letters of Margaret Marquard During the Boer War*. Edited by Leo Marquard. Cape Town: Purnell, 1967. These letters by a Dutch Reformed Church minister's wife cover the first eight months of the war but contain more information about the family than about the war.
- 815 Marquis, T. G. *Canada's Sons on Kopje and Veldt: An Historical Account of the Canadian Contingents Based on Official Dispatches*. Toronto: The Canadian Sons Publishing Co., 1900. Marquis' use of official records allows detailed accounts, and he includes lists of men in the first and second Canadian contingents and Strathcona's Horse.
- 816 Marris, N. Murrell. *Joseph Chamberlain, The Man and the Statesman*. London: Hutchinson, 1900. Marris gives a description of Chamberlain's role in the origins of the South African War. She argues that he did nothing illicit because he had too much to lose to do so.
- 817 Marsh, Peter T. *Joseph Chamberlain*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1994. Marsh's scholarly biography of Chamberlain emphasizes his time as Colonial Secretary (1895-1903) and his support of the imperial policy that led to the Boer War.
- 818 Marshall-Cornwall, James. *Haig as Military Commander*. New York: Crane, Russak, 1973. Marshall-Cornwall's description of the campaigns in South Africa is concise and he sets Haig into it effectively. He argues that Haig was more a student of his profession than most soldiers, and credits him for some of the success usually attributed to French.
- 819 Marson, T. B. *Scarlet and Khaki*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1930.

Marson's account of service with the Leicestershire Yeomanry (7th Imperial Yeomanry) in South Africa is rambling. It provides a few details of life on campaign but little else.

- 820 Martin, A. C. *The Concentration Camps, 1900-1902: Facts, Figures and Fables*. Cape Town: Timmins, 1957. Although he acknowledges the excessive mortality, Martin argues that the British did the best they could with available resources in the camps, and suggests that the ignorance of the inmates about basic sanitation, wartime conditions, and an unfortunate prevalence of epidemics in South Africa generally were the real causes of the problems. He rejects all suggestions that the British deliberately made conditions bad or did not care.
- 821 Martin, A. C. *The Durban Light Infantry: The History of the Durban Light Infantry, Incorporating That of the Sixth African Infantry, 1915-1917*. 2 Vols. Durban: Headquarter Board of the Durban Light Infantry in Co-Operation with the Regimental Association, 1969. Provides a regimental history covering the South African War.
- 822 Martin, B. *Old Soldiers Never Die*. Ladysmith: Ladysmith Historical Society, nd. Includes some letters and part of a memoir by Bruno Martin concerning the siege of Ladysmith in 1899.
- 823 Martin, Christopher. *The Boer War*. London: Abelard-Schuman, 1969. This book is a superficial account of the war.
- 824 Martin, David. *Dueling with Long Toms: An Account of the 16th Battery, Southern Division, R.G.A. During the Anglo-Boer War 1899-1902*. Ilford : D. Martin, 1988. Martin's account of the 16th Battery of the Royal Garrison Artillery is short, but it does have details of guns in action.
- 825 Martin, Gilbert. *A History of the Twentieth Century*. New York: Morrow, 1997. Martin's encyclopedic work effectively sets its facts into a framework of imperial history and gives significant attention to colonial wars including the Boer War.
- 826 Martineau, John. "The Transvaal Trouble; How It Arose." *Quarterly Review* 184 (1896): 532-63; 186 (1897): 241-67. Martineau describes the problems concerning the Jameson Raid. He sympathizes with the Boers but advises patience to allow redress.
- 827 Matthews, J. W. *Incwadi Yami, or Twenty Years' Personal Experience in*

South Africa. London: 1887. Provides descriptions of the people and action in the First Boer War.

- 828 Matthiolius. *Tagebuchblätter aus dem Boerenkriege, 1899-1900*. [Diary Pages from the Boer War, 1899-1900.] Leipzig: Vogel, 1900. Furnishes a personal narrative of experiences in the war.
- 829 Maurice, F. B., and G. Arthur. *The Life of Lord Wolseley*. London: Heinemann, 1924. The authors provide an account of Wolseley's involvement as commander in chief of the British army in the preparations for and operations of the Boer War
- 830 Maurice, F. M. and M. H. Grant, eds. *History of the War in South Africa, 1899-1902*. 4 Vols. plus maps. London: Hurst and Blackett, 1906-1910. These volumes are the official British history of the war. They include very detailed accounts of military operations, but tend to shy away from controversial topics.
- 831 Maurice, Frederick. *Soldier, Artist, Sportsman: The Life of General Lord Rawlinson of Trent*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1928. Rawlinson, later one of the key World War I commanders, was a lieutenant-colonel during the Boer War and served mostly in staff positions in South Africa seeing only a little combat. Maurice's descriptions of Rawlinson's role in the war are quite good, and he notes the lessons the general learned—for good and ill—about the future of warfare.
- 832 Maxse, F. I. *Seymour Vandeleur*. London: National Review, 1905. Ivor Maxse's biography of his colleague and friend provides an account of campaigning in South Africa. It is often, however, as much Maxse's story as Vandeleur's.
- 833 May, E. S. *A Retrospect on the South African War (from the Artillery Standpoint)*. London: Sampson Low, Marston, 1901. Offers a personal narrative of experiences during the Boer War.
- 834 May, Edward. *Changes & Chances of a Soldier's Life*. London: Philip Allan, 1925. May, an artilleryman, was in Ladysmith during the siege. He is quite critical of Buller, especially over the loss of guns at Colenso.
- 835 May, H. J. *Music of the Guns: Based on Two Journals of the Boer War*. London: Jarrold, 1970. The memoirs are those of Freda Schlosberg, a fourteen-year-old Boer, and Dr. James Kay, who was at Ladysmith

and with Roberts for the occupation of Pretoria.

- 836 Maydon, J. G. *French's Cavalry Campaign*. London: Pearson, 1901. Provides a personal narrative of John French's command by a subordinate who is sometimes critical.
- 837 Meijer, Jan Willem. *Generaal Ben Viljoen, 1868-1917*. D. Phil. Dissertation, University of Pretoria, 1994. Meijer describes Viljoen's career as a military leader through most of the South African War and ultimately as a POW on St. Helena.
- 838 Meintjes, Johannes. *The Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902: A Pictorial History*. Cape Town: Struik, 1976, rpt. 1978. Includes a large collection of contemporary photographs and a few sketches illustrating the war.
- 839 Meintjes, Johannes. *The Commandant-General: The Life and Times of Petrus Jacobus Joubert of the South African Republic, 1831-1900*. Cape Town: Tafelberg-Uitgewers, 1971. Meintjes' biography of the man who commanded at Majuba and again at the beginning of the second war is well written and informative.
- 840 Meintjes, Johannes. *De La Rey—Lion of the West*. Johannesburg: Hugh Keartland, 1966. Meintjes' description of tactics is detailed and makes clear the important role that De la Rey played in innovations that confounded the British. He also includes details of De la Rey's personal life.
- 841 Meintjes, Johannes. *General Louis Botha: A Biography*. London: Cassell, 1970. The prolific Meintjes provides a sympathetic but well written account of Botha, one of tactical and strategic guiding lights of the Boer military.
- 842 Meintjes, Johannes. *President Paul Kruger*. London: Cassell, 1974. Meintjes makes a fairly successful effort to give a balanced portrayal of Kruger, defending him against unreasonable attacks but not falling into nationalistic exaggeration of his virtues.
- 843 Meintjes, Johannes. *President Steyn*. Cape Town: Nasionale Boekhandel, 1969. Meintjes' biography is a well-written account of the president of the Orange Free State who, after initially being hesitant about the war, became a major force in ensuring that it was carried on to the bitter end.

- 844 Meintjes, Johannes. *Sword in the Sand The Life and Death of Gideon Scheepers*. Cape Town: Tafelberg-Uitgewers, 1969. Although less prominent and well-known than De Wet and De la Rey, Scheepers was a significant commando leader and Boer officer in the war. Mientjes' biography is a thorough account.
- 845 Meiring, P. *Smuts: The Patriot*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 1975. Meiring provides a popular account of Smuts' life.
- 846 Mellish, Annie. *Our Boys under Fire or Maritime Volunteers in South Africa*. Charlottetown: Examiner Office, 1900. Provides a description of Canadian forces in South Africa.
- 847 Melville, C. H. *Life of General The Right Hon. Sir Redvers Buller*. 2 Vols. London: Edward Arnold, 1923. Melville, although he admits that Buller had faults, is kinder than most commentators, praising him particularly for his popularity with the troops. Melville also openly admits that he has no intention of criticizing tactics or strategies, thus limiting the overall value of his work.
- 848 Member of the H.A.C. *Twelve Months With General Buller in South Africa*. London: Robinson, Pickering & Hunt, nd. Provides the diary of a member of the South African Light Horse for the first year of the war.
- 849 Men at the Front. *Pen Pictures of the War by Men at the Front*. London: Horace Marshall & Son, 1900. Includes personal accounts of the campaign in Natal to the Battle of Colenso. Although this book is often shown as volume one, there is no evidence of further publication.
- 850 Mendelsohn, Michael. "Blainey and the Jameson Raid: The Debate Renewed." *Journal of Southern African Studies* 6 (1980):157–170. Mendelsohn adds to the debate about the importance of economic issues in the causes of the war.
- 851 Mendelssohn, Sidney. *Mendelssohn's South African Bibliography; Being the Catalogue Raisonne of the Mendelssohn Library of Works Relating to South Africa*. 2 Vols. Boston: J. S. Canner, 1957; orig. 1910. Although outdated, this work does have many relevant references.
- 852 Mends, H. R., Campbell, Guy, and R. M. Stuart Wortley. *The King's Royal Rifle Corps Chronicle 1901*. Winchester: Warren & Son, 1901. The account of the Corps in South Africa in this volume is extensive.

- 853 Mends, H. R., Campbell, Guy, and R. M. Stuart Wortley. *The King's Royal Rifle Corps Chronicle 1902*. Winchester: Warren & Son, 1902. Although more limited than in the 1901 volume, a description of the Rifle Corps in South Africa is included.
- 854 Merensky, Alexander. *Erinnerungen aus dem Missionsleben in Transvaal, 1859-1882*. [Memories of Mission Life in the Transvaal.] Berlin: Buchhandlung der Berliner Evangel. Missionsgesellschaft, 1899; rpt. 1996.. Merensky, a German missionary in South Africa, helped with medical care for the Boer forces during the 1881 war. His account provides a variety of details and observations.
- 855 Mermeix. *Le Transvaal et la Chartered*. [The Transvaal and the Chartered.] Paris: Paul Ollendorff, 1897. This study of the British South Africa Company includes an account of the Jameson Raid.
- 856 Merriman, J. X. *Selections from the Correspondence of J. X. Merriman, 1870-1924*. Edited by Phyllis Lewsen. 4 Vols. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 1960-69. Merriman was a prominent Cape politician before, during, and after the war. His correspondence has information regarding political aspects of the situation, dealing with the British government and its representatives.
- 857 Methuen, A.M.S. *Peace or War in South Africa*. London: Methuen, 1901; rpt. 1905 as *The Tragedy of South Africa*. Methuen, not to be confused with general of the same name, suggests that there were misapprehensions on both sides leading up to the war, and suggests possible compromise solutions.
- 858 Meyer, Jan H. with E. P. Du Plessis. *Kommando-jare; 'n oud-stryder se persoonlike relaas van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*. [Commando Years: An Old Soldier's Story of the Second War for Freedom.] Kaapstad: Human & Rousseau, 1971. Provides a personal narrative of the war.
- 859 Meyer, Lysle E. *The Farther Frontier: Six Case Studies of Americans and Africa, 1848-1936*. Selinsgrove: Susquehanna University Press, 1992. One of the cases examined in this volume is that of John Hay Hammond, who was involved in the Jameson Raid.
- 860 Midleton, Earl of. *Records and Reactions, 1856-1939*. London: John Murray, 1939. Midleton, then still St. John Brodrick, served as Secretary for War during the latter part of the Boer War. He describes

the problems of maintaining the army during the guerrilla phase of the war, and gives the official versions of the Colville and Buller cases.

- 861 *A Militia Unit in the Field; Being a Brief Account of the Doings of the Sixth Battalion Lancashire Fusiliers in the South African War During the Years 1900 and 1901.* London: Printed by Woodfall and Kinder, 1902. This account is quite brief and provides only some details of the unit and its personnel.
- 862 Miller, Carman. *Painting the Map Red: Canada and the South African War, 1899-1902.* Montreal: Canadian War Museum and McGill-Queen's University Press, 1993. Miller's account of the Canadian involvement in the war covers recruitment and the impact of the war at home as well as the experience of troops in South Africa. It is very detailed.
- 863 Miller, David S. *A Captain of the Gordons: Service Experiences, 1900-1909.* Edited by Margaret and Helen Russell Miller. London: Sampson Low, Marston, 1914. Provides a personal narrative of experiences during the South African War.
- 864 Miller, Stephen M. *Lord Methuen and the British Army: Failure and Redemption in South Africa.* London: Frank Cass, 1999. Miller argues that although neither the Royal Army nor Methuen were ready for modern warfare in 1899, they adapted to win the South African War and make the army ready for the 20th century.
- 865 Millin, Sarah. G. *General Smuts.* 2 Vols. London: Faber & Faber, 1936. This popular biography was written with the help of the subject. Millin is somewhat sympathetic to Smuts but does have worthwhile details, including a full account of Smuts in the war and as part of the peace negotiations..
- 866 Millin, Sarah. G. *Rhodes.* London: Chatto & Windus, 1933. Millin's prose is readable, but she focuses more on the personal rather than political elements in Rhodes' life.
- 867 Milne, James. *The Epistles of Atkins. Being Some of the Lights, on Human Nature In the Ordeal of War, Which Illumine the Letters of the Common Soldier, Written From South Africa to His People at Home; And so an Answer to the Question, 'How Does It Feel to be in Battle?'* London: Fisher Unwin, 1902. This volume is a personal commentary regarding the war and the experience of it.

- 868 Milner, Alfred. *The Nation and the Empire Being a Collection of Speeches and Addresses*. London: Constable, 1913. Quite a significant part of this collection of Lord Milner's speeches concerns South Africa and the Boer War.
- 869 Milner, Viscountess. *My Picture Gallery, 1886-1901*. London: John Murray, 1951. Milner, the wife of Lord Edward Cecil, who was besieged in Mafeking, spent the first year of the war in South Africa, mostly living at the home of Cecil Rhodes. She had excellent connections; her father-in-law was Prime Minister and she was a very close friend of Alfred Milner and later married him. She provides accounts of people and events as well as extracts from letters from both political friends and soldiers at the front.
- 870 Mitchell, Elyne. *Light Horse: The Story of Australia's Mounted Troops*. Melbourne: Macmillan, 1978. Mitchell traces the activities of Australian cavalry in the Boer and First World Wars, providing an episodic and incomplete description.
- 871 Mitchell, L. M. *The Life of the Rt. Hon. Cecil John Rhodes, 1853-1902*. 2 Vols. London: Edward Arnold, 1910. The author, a colleague of Rhodes', is openly admiring of Rhodes, however, his volumes are very useful for factual information. He is better on the early years than on the more controversial issues in South Africa.
- 872 Mockler-Ferryman, A. F. ed. *The Oxfordshire Light Infantry Chronicle*. 4 Vols. London: Erye & Spottiswoode, 1900-1903. These volumes each cover a year from 1899 to 1903 and the experiences of the OLI are traced through the entire war.
- 873 Mockler-Ferryman, A. F. ed. . *The Oxfordshire Light Infantry in South Africa: a Narrative of the Boer War from the Letters and Journals of Officers of the Regiment and from Other Sources*. London: Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1901. Includes personal comments and descriptions from members of the OLI .
- 874 Moeller, B. *Two Years at the Front With the Mounted Infantry: Being the Diary of Lieutenant B. Moeller*. London: Grant Richards, 1903. Moeller details several aspects of military life during the Boer War.
- 875 Moffett, E. C. *With the Eighth Division: A Souvenir of the South African Campaign*. Westminster: Knapp, Drewett & Sons, 1903. Provides a private soldier's account of the war.

- 876 Moggridge, Ann. *The Jameson Raid: An Annotated Bibliography*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town School of Librarianship, 1960; rpt. 1970. Although useful, Moggridge's bibliographical pamphlet is difficult to obtain.
- 877 Mohlamme, Jacob Saul. *Black People in the Boer Republics During and in the Aftermath of the South African War of 1899-1902*. Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1985. Mohlamme offers information regarding the role of blacks in the war, which was extensive and significant.
- 878 Molteno, James T. *The Dominion of Afrikanerdom: Recollections Pleasant and Otherwise*. London: Methuen, 1923. Molteno includes firsthand observations of events from 1885 to 1902, including the Jameson Raid and the Boer War.
- 879 Molteno, P. A. *The Life and Times of Sir John Charles Molteno, K.C.M.G., First Premier of Cape Colony, Comprising a History of Representative Institutions and Responsible Government at the Cape and of Lord Carnarvon's Confederation Policy and of Sir Bartle Frere's High Commissionership of South Africa*. 2 Vols. London: Smith, Elder, 1900. Provides useful political background to the war.
- 880 Monck-Mason, Edith M. *South African Album*. 2 Vols. NP: E. Monck-Mason, nd. The author served as a nurse during the war, and these volumes are mostly made up from photographs she took.
- 881 Monik, S. *Shamrock and Springbok: The Irish Impact on South African Military History, 1689-1914*. Johannesburg: South African Irish Regimental Association, 1989. Monik includes coverage of Irish participation in the Boer War.
- 882 Montague, W. E. *Besieged in the Transvaal: The Defense of Standerton*. London: Blackwood, 1881. Montague's account concerns the war of 1880-81.
- 883 Montgomery, John. *Toll for the Brave: The Tragedy of General Hector Macdonald*. London: Max Parris, 1963. Macdonald was one of the few soldiers whose reputation was enhanced by his performance at Majuba and again gave good account of himself at Paardeberg in the second war, when he was commander of the Highland Brigade. Montgomery's descriptions are clear, but his work is popular in style.

- 884 Montgomery-Cunninghame, Thomas. *Dusty Measure: A Record of Troubled Times*. London: John Murray, 1939. Although he often seems more interested in amusing anecdotes than serious observation, the author does describe in detail his work in intelligence and scouting in the last year of the war. He was also in combat with the Rifle Brigade during the first part of the war, but says very little about that.
- 885 Moore, D. M. *General Louis Botha's Second Expedition to Natal During the Anglo-Boer War, September-October, 1901*. Cape Town: Historical Publication Society, 1979. This study provides an understanding of Boer operations late in the war.
- 886 Moore, Geoffrey. ed. *Burgin's War: From the Diary of an Old Infantry Soldier*. Huntington: G. Moore, 1986. Furnishes a personal account of experiences in the war.
- 887 Moore, H. "Ladysmith During the Siege, 1899-1900." *Africana News and Notes* 19 (March, 1970): 18-25. Provides some descriptions of the city during the siege.
- 888 Moore, James G. Harle. *With the Fourth New Zealand Rough Riders*. Dunedin: Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, 1906. Includes a soldier's account of the experiences of New Zealand troops in the war.
- 889 Moores, S. *Summary of Tactics for Examination With Lessons of the South African War*. 4th Edition. Revised by J. Markham Rose. Portsmouth: Barrell, 1903. This volume, really for the edification of soldiers, contains a variety of comment on tactics used in the Boer War.
- 890 Morley, Viscount. *Recollections*. 2 Vols. London: Macmillan, 1917. Morley includes an excellent account of Joseph Chamberlain as Colonial Secretary.
- 891 Morrison, E.W.B. *With the Guns in South Africa*. Hamilton, Ont.: Spectator Printing Co., 1901; rpt. 1995. Supplies details of a Canadian's experience serving with the artillery during the Boer War.
- 892 Morton, Desmond. *The Canadian General Sir William Otter*. Toronto: Hakkert, 1974. Otter commanded Canadian forces in South Africa, and fought at Paardeberg and through the capture of Pretoria. His biographer describes his role and that of the Canadians.

- 893 Morton, J. W. *8th (King's Royal Irish) Hussars. Diary of South African War, 1900-02*. Aldershot: Gale & Polden, 1905. Written by a non-commissioned officer, this volume provides details of the campaign as viewed from the ranks.
- 894 Morton, R. F. "Linchwe I and the Kgatla Campaign in the South African War, 1899-1902." *Journal of African History* 26 (1985): 169-91. The Kgatla's territory was bisected by the border of the Bechuanaland Protectorate and the western Transvaal. Their chief, Linchewe I, led them in open, successful military opposition to the Boers, and improved their position for a generation.
- 895 Mostert, D. *Slegtkamp van Spionkop*. [The Desperate Struggle at Spion Kop.] Cape Town: Nasionale Pers, 1935. Traces events at the Battle of Spion Kop.
- 896 Müller, Alfred von. *Der Krieg in Süd-Afrika, 1899-1900 und seine Vorgeschichte*. [The War in South Africa, 1899-1900 and Its Antecedents.] Berlin: Liebel, 1900. Provides an account of the background and early part of the war in South Africa.
- 897 Muller, C.F.J., Van Jaarsveld, F. A. and Theo Van Wijk. eds. *A Select Bibliography of South African History: A Guide for Historical Research*. Pretoria: University of South Africa Press, 1966; rpt. 1979. The section on the Boer War in this volume is, of necessity, limited. It is, however, an excellent reference for general research, and the 1979 edition is significantly expanded.
- 898 Muller, C. H. *Oorlogsherinneringe*. [War Memories.] Cape Town: Nasionale Pers, 1936. These memoirs consist of a personal narrative of the war.
- 899 Munnik, George Glaeser. *Memoirs of Senator the Hon. G. G. Munnik; Covering Eighty Years of Thrilling South African History, Politics and War*. Cape Town: Miller, 1934. This account is somewhat exaggerated.
- 900 Murray, Alasdair. *Alasdair Murray, 1900: A Few Words and Letters Privately Offered to Those Who, at Lochcarron and Elsewhere, Knew Him Well*. London: NP, 1901. Offers letters from South Africa written by an officer of the Grenadier Guards killed at Biddulphsberg, May 29, 1900.

- 901 Murray, Mary. *The Salvation Army at Work in the Boer War*. London : International Headquarters, 1901. Murray, a Salvation Army officer, includes details of her work and personal experiences in these memoirs.
- 902 Murray, P. L. ed. *Official Records of the Australian Military Contingents to the War in South Africa*. Melbourne: Albert J. Mullett, Government Printer, 1911; rpt. 1982. In the tradition of official histories, this large volume is crammed with details and a tendency to national pride.
- 903 Murray, Robert H. *The History of the VIII King's Royal Irish Hussars*. 3 Vols. Cambridge: Heffer & Sons, 1928-60. Provides an account of the Royal Irish Hussars in South Africa.
- 904 Murray, S. M. *Uit die dagboek van 'n predikantsvrou, 16 Mei 1900 to 12 Januarie 1906*. [From the Diary of a Minister's Wife, 16 May to 12 January 1906.] Elsie'srivier: Nasionale Boekdrukkery, nd. Provides a personal narrative of a noncombatant during the war.
- 905 Musgrave, George Clarke. *In South Africa with Buller*. Boston: Little, Brown, 1900. Musgrave gives eyewitness descriptions of the campaign through the capture of Pretoria. He acknowledges initial sympathy with the Boers but says that his experiences convinced him that federation within the British empire was best for South Africa. He is also critical of Boer behavior.
- 906 Musiker, Naomi, with the Assistance of Reuben Musiker. *South African History: A Bibliographical Guide with Special Reference to Territorial Expansion and Colonization*. New York: Garland, 1984. This bibliography is annotated and includes a short section on the war and a number of other relevant items. It is an excellent reference work.
- 907 Musiker, Reuben. *South Africa*. Oxford: Clio Press, 1979. A volume in the World Bibliographical Series, Musiker's book provides useful references for background study, but offers little directly about the war.
- 908 Nasson, Bill. *Abraham Esau's War: A Black South African War in the Cape, 1899-1902*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1991. Nasson does an excellent job of portraying the involvement of black Africans in the Cape Colony in the war. He makes clear their importance to both sides and the high price they paid usually for little

or no gain. The racism of both Briton and Boer is also made clear. Abraham Esau was a pro-British black African who worked for British intelligence and who was tortured and executed by guerrillas in 1901. The book sometimes lacks context.

- 909 Nasson, Bill. "Moving Lord Kitchener: Black Military Transport and Supply Work in the South African War, 1899-1902." *Journal of South African Studies*. 11 (1984): 25-51. Nasson makes clear how important blacks were in the British war effort. He is one of the few scholars to have focused on this issue.
- 909a Nasson, Bill. *The South African War*. Oxford: Arnold, 1999. Nasson, an established scholar of the war, has done an excellent job of not only the military campaigns, but also the political and social ramifications of the conflict. This volume will take its place as one of the most valuable surveys of the topic.
- 910 Nasson, Bill. "The War of Abraham Esau 1899-1901: Martyrdom, Myth and Folk Memory in Calvinia, South Africa." *African Affairs* 87 (April, 1988): 239-65. Nasson tells the story of Esau who was executed by the Boers for pro-British activities and discusses the incident's social impact over time.
- 911 Nasson, W. R. "'Doing Down Their Masters': Africans, Boers, and Treason in the Cape Colony During the South African War, 1899-1902." *Journal of Imperial and Commonwealth History* 12 (1983): 29-53. Nasson makes clear the involvement of blacks in the war and their attitudes about the dominant minority.
- 912 Nathan, M. *Paul Kruger: His Life and Times*. Durban: Knox, 1941. Nathan's book is very popular and has gone through several editions. It is, however, far from the best biography of Kruger.
- 913 Neame, L. E. *General Hertzog: Prime Minister of the Union of South Africa Since 1924*. London: Hurst and Blackett, nd. Neame describes the development of Hertzog from minor legal advisor in the Orange Free State to successful general, guerrilla, and die-hard. He believes that Hertzog's endeavors were significant in prolonging the war.
- 914 Neck, Louis van. *Une Guerre néfaste au pays des Boers; recueil d'impressions & de notes sur cette guerre sanglante*. [A Disastrous War in the Land of the Boers: A Collection of Impressions of That Bloody War.] Anvers: Vos van der Groen, 1901. Includes a variety

of descriptions of the war.

- 915 Nederlandsche Roods Kruis. *De Vereeniging het Nederlandsche Roods Kruis in den Transvaalsch-Englschen oorlog, 1899-1901*. [The Dutch Red Cross in the Transvaal War, 1899-1901.] 's Gravenhage: Van Langenhuysen, 1901. Provides information of medical care and services during the war.
- 916 Neethling, E. *Should We Forget?* Cape Town: Dusseau, 1902. Provides an account of conditions in the concentration camps with personal narratives of women who were incarcerated. Neethling includes all of the most serious charges against the camps.
- 917 Neil, C. L. ed. *South Africa in Peace and War*. London: Miles & Miles, 1900. This general history has a section concerning the origins of war of 1899-1902.
- 918 Neilly, J. E. *Besieged with B-P. A Full and Complete Record of the Siege of Mafeking*. London: Pearson, 1900. Gives extensive descriptions of the siege and the situation in the city during it.
- 919 Neville, John Ormond. *Boer and Britisher in South Africa: A History of the Boer-British War and the Wars for United South Africa Together with Biographies of the Great Men Who made the History of South Africa*. Chicago: Thompson & Thomas, nd. Neville's book, published in several versions, is a popular, superficial account of the background and early part of the war.
- 920 Nevinston, H. W. *Ladysmith: Diary of a Siege*. London: Methuen, 1900. Nevinston was one of the better correspondents who reported on the war. His account of the siege is detailed and reflects some sense of what was important.
- 921 New Zealander, A. *New Zealanders and the Boer War or Soldiers from the Land of the Moa*. Christchurch: Gordon and Gotch, nd. Provides details about the experiences of New Zealand troops during the South African War.
- 922 Newbury, George. compiler. *The Australian Commonwealth Horse*. Seaford, Australia: G. Newbury, 1900. Supplies details about the Australian contingent, especially heroes, during the South African conflict.

- 923 Newton, Scott and Dilwin Porter. *Joseph Chamberlain, 1836-1914: A Bibliography*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1994. This volume is an excellent source for bibliographic data. It does not, of course, focus on Chamberlain's involvement in the South African conflict.
- 924 Nienaber, P. J. *et al. Gedenkboek Generaal J.B.M. Hertzog*. [Memorial Volume for General J.B.M. Hertzog.] Johannesburg: Afrikaanse persboekhandel vir Suid-Afrikaanse Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns, 1965. This volume, a memorial to Hertzog, includes a discussion of his career as a soldier. It tends, however, to be sympathetic.
- 925 Nixon, John. *The Complete Story of the Transvaal from the Great Trek to the Convention of London*. London: Sampson Low, Marston, Searle, and Rivington, 1885; rpt. 1972. Nixon's account of the first Boer War and the years before and after it is firsthand and quite detailed. His outrage at the behavior of the British, however, is apparent and forces readers to question his judgements.
- 926 Norris, S. L. *The South African War, 1899-1900: A Military Retrospect Up to the Relief of Ladysmith*. London: John Murray, 1900. Norris, a major in the Royal Engineers, takes a noticeably pro-British stance. He names suffrage for the Uitlanders and protection of blacks as the causes for British intervention and suggests that the appointment of Roberts was really a reasonable effort to make Buller's command manageable rather than the result of incompetence.
- 927 Norris-Newman, Charles L. *With the Boers in the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1880-1*. London: Allen, 1882; rpt. 1976. The author, a newspaper correspondent, provides a detailed, firsthand account of the war from the Boers' perspective. He provides some insight into how the experience of the first war with Britain influenced South African attitudes leading to the second.
- 928 Nutting, Anthony. *Scramble for Africa : The Great Trek to the Boer War*. London : Constable, 1970. Nutting's work is an excellent source for setting the 1900-02 war into the context of imperialism.
- 929 O'Brien, T. H. *Milner: Viscount Milner of St. James's and Cape Town, 1854-1925*. London: Constable, 1979. Unfortunately this very well documented and detailed biography gives very little attention to Milner's time in South Africa and is focused on his career after 1905.
- 930 O'Connell, J. *Transvaal War: Campaigning with the Durban Light*

- Infantry*. Durban: NP, 1900. Provides details of the unit's involvement in South Africa.
- 931 Ogden, H. J. *The War Against the Dutch Republics in South Africa: Its Origin, Progress and Results, Annotated with Extracts From Books, Newspapers, Pamphlets, and Speeches by Members of Parliament and Other Leaders of Public Opinion.* Manchester: National Reform Union, 1901. Although Ogden provides a history of the war, his book is more valuable for the extracts of popular sources it includes.
- 932 Ogston, Alexander. *Reminiscences of Three Campaigns*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, nd. Ogston's memories include accounts of medical and sanitary work in South Africa.
- 933 Oliver, Ben. *Krygsman Christiaan de Wet*. [Soldier Christiaan De Wet.] Cape Town: Tafelberg-Uitgewers, 1971. Oliver examines De Wet's military career.
- 934 O'Meara, W.A.J. *Kekewich in Kimberley*. London: Medici Society, 1926. O'Meara was chief of staff in Kimberley and his account includes many details of the siege and of the conflict between Kekewich, the commander, and Cecil Rhodes who was in the town. He tends to take his commander's side in the dispute but does not seem extreme in his views.
- 935 Omond, G.W.I. *The Boers in Europe: A Sidelight on History*. London: A. & C. Black, 1903. Omond describes the efforts of Boers and their supporters to stir up support in Europe through press propaganda during and after the war. Hoped for help against Britain failed to produce practical assistance.
- 936 O'Moore, MacCarthy. *The Romance of the Boer War, Humour and Chivalry of the Campaign*. London: Elliot Stock, 1901. O'Moore offers anecdotes about the war but nothing very substantive.
- 937 One Who Knows. *The Army Medical System: What It Is, Is Not, and Ought to Be*. London: Sands, 1903. The author is critical of the medical services provided in the Boer War.
- 938 One Who Was In It. *Kruger's Secret Service*. London: John Macqueen, 1900. Provides an account of intelligence work by the Boers.
- 939 O'Neil, Patrick Michael. Winston S. Churchill's Philosophy of Empire:

The Mind of the Imperialist. Ph. D. Dissertation, State University of New York at Binghamton, 1993. The author discusses the actual events of Churchill's involvement in imperial history, looking particularly for influences on Churchill's thought. This includes his experiences in the Boer War.

- 940 Oosterhagen, H. S. *Oorlogsdagboekie van H. S. Oosterhagen, Januarie-Junie 1902*. [War Diary of H. S. Oosterhagen, January-June, 1902.] Edited by C. C. Eloff. Pretoria: Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing, 1976. Consists of a personal narrative of wartime experiences.
- 941 Oosthuizen, A. V. *Rebelle van die Stormberge: Tweede Vryheidsoorlog 1899-1902: 'n streekgeskiedenis van die Tweede vryheidsoorlog in Noordoos-Kaapland*. [Rebels of Stormberg: Second War for Freedom 1899-1902: District events of the Second War for Freedom in Noordoos-Kaapland. Pretoria: J. P. Van der Walt, 1994. Includes an account of the Battle of Stormberg.
- 942 Oosthuizen J. Jacobus Hercules De la Rey en die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog. [Jacobus Hercules De la Rey in the Second War for Freedom.] D. Phil. Dissertation. University of South Africa, Pretoria. 1950. Oosthuizen provides a biographical focus on one of the most effective of the Boer commando leaders.
- 943 Oosthuizen, S.P.R. Die beheer, behandeling en lewe van die krygsgevangenes gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902. [The Control, Treatment and Life of Prisoners of War in the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902.] D. Phil. Dissertation, University of the Orange Free State, 1975. Gives a very detailed description.
- 944 Oppenheim, L. "Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry on Spion Kop." *Nineteenth Century* 49 (Jan., 1901): 39-56. This account has valuable details from a correspondent who was on the scene.
- 945 Orpen, Neil. *Gunners of the Cape. The Story of the Cape Field Artillery*. Cape Town: C.F.A. Regimental History Committee, 1965. Traces the unit's history including the Boer War.
- 946 Orr, A. S. *Scottish Yeomanry in South Africa, 1900-1901. A Record of the Work and Experiences of the Glasgow and Ayrshire Companies*. Glasgow: James Hedderwick & Sons, 1901. Provides a private soldier's account of life and action during the war.

- 947 Otis, James. [Kaler, James O.] *Fight for the Empire the Story of the War in South Africa*. Boston: Dana Estes, nd. Presents a detailed account of the background and very early part of the war.
- 948 Otto, J. C. *Die konsentrasiekampe*. [The Concentration Camps.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Boekhandel, 1954. Otto condemns the policy of camps both for the suffering of the inmates and for the long-term bitterness created between the British and South Africans. He makes the extreme anti-British case, to the extent of asserting that the suffering was deliberately caused by the authorities.
- 949 Ovendale, Richie. "Profit or Patriotism, Natal, The Transvaal and the Coming of the Second Anglo-Boer War." *Journal of Imperial and Commonwealth History* (May 1980): 209-34. Ovendale analyzes the factors that ultimately led the government of Natal to side with the British in the Boer War.
- 950 Pagaard, Stephen A. "Disease and the British Army in South Africa, 1899-1900." *Military Affairs* 50 (April, 1986): 71-76. Pagaard describes the serious problems the British faced due to epidemics and criticizes the military and government for failing to prepare despite knowledge of the likelihood of crises.
- 951 Page, A. H. *The Supply Services of the British Army in the South African War, 1899-1902*. Ph.D. Dissertation, Oxford University, 1977. Logistical problems dogged the entire British war effort in South Africa, and so Page has isolated one of the key elements to understanding the situation.
- 952 Page, Jesse. *Christians in Khaki. Cameos of Christian Work Among the Soldiers, Fresh From the Front*. London: Marshall Brothers, 1900. Page's sketch of personal church work with soldiers provides details concerning the men who made up the forces.
- 953 Pakenham, Elizabeth. *Jameson's Raid: The Prelude to the Boer War*. London: Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1960; rpt. 1984 as Elizabeth Longford. This is, perhaps, the best work on the raid. The author provides a very well-written and researched account, and makes a case for Chamberlain's complicity.
- 954 Pakenham, Thomas. *The Boer War*. New York: Random House, 1979. Pakenham's account is detailed, thoroughly researched, and quite readable. He discusses the political, military, and social aspects of the

war in what is one of, if not the best, general surveys of the conflict.

- 955 Pakenham, Thomas. *The Scramble for Africa: The White Man's Conquest of the Dark Continent From 1876 to 1912*. London: Weidenfeld & Nicolson, 1991. In his large survey of imperialism in Africa, Pakenham devotes a chapter to the Boer War, which he regards as the work of Alfred Milner.
- 956 Park, C. W. *Letters from Ladysmith*. Ladysmith: Ladysmith Historical Society, 1972; rpt. 1979. Park commanded the troops from the Devonshire Regiment in South Africa. His letters include details of life and combat.
- 957 Parkyn, H. G. *A Short History of the 16th/5th Lancers*. Aldershot: Gale & Polden, nd. In a very short account, Parkyn provides a few details of the relief of Kimberley and the battles of Paardeberg and Diamond Hill.
- 958 Parry, D. H. *The Death of Glory Boys: The Story of the 17th Lancers*. London: Cassell, 1903. The 17th Lancers were involved in the struggle with Smuts' commando at the end of the war when Smuts' men captured and wore Lancer uniforms.
- 959 Peach, Victor. *By Jingo: Letters from the Veldt*. Totnes: Totnes Community Archive, 1987. Provides personal comments and observations of the war.
- 960 Pearse, Henry H. S. *Four Months Besieged, the Story of Ladysmith*. London: Macmillan, 1900. Pearse gives observations and details of the siege from the letters of a newspaper correspondent.
- 961 Pearse, Henry H. S. ed. *The History of Lumsden's Horse: A Complete Record of the Corps From Its Formation to Its Disbandment*. London: Longmans, Green, 1903. Provides an extensive and detailed history of the unit.
- 962 Pearse, H. W. *The East Surrey Regiment*. London: Spottiswoode, Ballantyne, 1916. Regimental histories such as this one are very useful for details but rarely contain any analysis. Pearse's is no exception.
- 963 Pease, A. E. *A Private Memoir of Sir Thomas Fowler, Bart. Born August 12, 1868, Killed in Action, April 20, 1902*. London: William Clowes, nd. Fowler served with the 1st Wiltshire Imperial Yeomanry. This

volume is more tribute than history.

- 964 Peel, Sidney. *Trooper 8008 I.Y.* London: Edward Arnold, 1901. This book is a description of the experiences of a volunteer with the Oxfordshire company of the Imperial Yeomanry.
- 965 Pemberton, William B. *Battles of the Boer War.* London: Batsford, 1964. Pemberton outlines the battles of Belmont, Modder River, Magersfontein, Colenso, and Spion Kop. Although there is a bibliography, the lack of specific references in the text is a frustration made infuriating by the author's penchant for quoting people, who are often not even listed in the bibliography, extensively and frequently.
- 966 Penner, Cornelius. D. *England, Germany, and the Transvaal, 1895-1902.* Chicago: University of Chicago Libraries, 1937. This pamphlet is focused on Anglo-German relations. The author argues that German-Boer cooperation was a significant factor in embittering the relations of London and Berlin. It also was a factor in causing the Boer War, and ensured that efforts at Anglo-German accommodation were not renewed after 1902.
- 967 Penning, L. *Verdedigers en verdrukkers der afrikaansche vrijheid. Karakterschetsen van mannen van beteekenis uit den Engelsch-Zuid-Afrikaanschen oorlog, 1899-1902.* [Defenders and Oppressors of African Freedom. The Character of Important Men in the English-South African War, 1899-1902.] Gravenhage: J. N. Voorhoeve, 1902. Penning sketches the biographies of major figures in the Boer War.
- 968 Pennington, R.L.A. "Army Reform From a Battalion Point of View." *Fortnightly Review* 69 (Feb. 1, 1901): 312-19. This article is an officer's critique of small unit problems in the war.
- 969 Perham, Frank. *The Kimberley Flying Column: Being the Reminiscences of Service in the South African War of 1899-1903.* Timaru, N. Z.: NP, 1957. Although short, Perham's account is particularly effective in describing the British sweep in April, 1900, in an effort to control the Boer commandos. His description of the life of soldiers is also good.
- 970 Perry, James M. *Arrogant Armies: Great Military Disasters and the Generals Behind Them.* London: Basil Wiley, 1996. Perry studied twelve small wars, mostly in Africa and including the Boer War, from the 18th through the 20th century, and attempted to determine the problems in generalship that caused armies to lose.

- 971 "Personal Reminiscences of a Free State Burgher During the Investment of Ladysmith." *Journal of the Royal United Service Institute* 46 (1902): 1170-93. Provides a personal narrative of the besiegers.
- 972 Petre, F. Lorraine. *The History of the Norfolk Regiment, 1685-1919*. 2 Vols. Norwich: Jarrold/The Empire Press, nd. The Norfolks were in South Africa for the spring campaign of 1900, but Petre's description is limited. He does better with the unit's subsequent work as a security force during the latter stages of the war.
- 973 Petrie, Charles. *The Chamberlain Tradition*. London: Dickson, 1938. Petrie absolves Chamberlain from guilt regarding the war.
- 974 Phelan, T. *The Siege of Kimberley Its Humorous and Social Side Anglo-Boer War (1899-1902) Eighteen Weeks in Eighteen Chapters*. Dublin: Gill, 1913. Although he seeks the humorous note, Phelan's book is a personal narrative of the siege.
- 975 Phillipps, L. M. *With Rimington*. London: Arnold, 1901. The author served with Rimington's Scouts from late 1899 to the end of 1900. His letters include details of his activities and the problems of reconnaissance in South Africa.
- 976 Phillips, Lionel. *Some Reminiscences*. London: Hutchinson, 1924. Provides an account of the abortive Johannesburg rising at the time of the Jameson Raid by one of the organizers.
- 977 Phillips, Mrs. Lionel. *South African Recollections*. London: Longmans, Green, 1899. Provides an account of the Jameson Raid and the background to the war by the wife of prominent Johannesburg citizen.
- 978 Pickman, Fred James. *Pickman's Progress in the City Imperial Volunteers in South Africa, 1900 / Based on the Diary of Cyclist Fred James Pickman*. Edited by Geoffrey Moore. Buckden, Huntingdon: G. Moore, nd. In addition to personal experiences with the volunteers, this volume includes information about the use of bicycles in the war.
- 979 Pienar, P. "With De Wet." *Contemporary Review* 79 (March, 1901): 326-34. Although lacking in context, this article is a detailed description of De Wet's eluding British columns and taking President Steyn out of the Brandwater Basin.
- 980 Pienar, Philip. *With Steyn and De Wet*. London: Methuen, 1902. Pienar

was a Boer soldier who describes his service, including tapping British telegraphic communications. His account ends shortly after the fall of Pretoria. Published in Afrikaans as *Met Steyn en De Wet* (1902).

- 981 Pieterse, D. J. "Transvaal en Britse Susereinteit, 1881-1884." [The Transvaal and British Suzerainty, 1881-1884.] *Archives Yearbook for South African History* Vol. 3, Part 1 (1940). Pieterse analyzes the vexing issue of "suzerainty" and what it meant as a factor in the Anglo-Boer conflict.
- 982 Pieterse, H. J. C. *Oorlogsavonture van Generaal Wynand Malan*. [The Wartime Adventures of General Wynand Malan.] Cape Town: Nasionale Pers, 1946. Provides a South African's reminiscences of the war.
- 983 Pimblett, W. M. *In Africa with the Union Jack*. London: Hutchinson, 1893. Pimblett gives a firsthand account of his experiences in the war of 1880-81.
- 984 Pirow, Oswald. *James Barry Munnik Hertzog*. Cape Town: Timmins, nd. Although his account of the war is brief, Pirow does a good job of outlining events and describing Hertzog's transition from legal advisor to commando leader during the guerrilla phase.
- 985 Plaatje, Sol T. *The Boer War Diary of Sol T. Plaatje: An African at Mafeking*. Edited by J. L. Comaroff. Johannesburg: Macmillan, 1973; rpt. 1989. Plaatje, a black African, provides an account of the siege from the point of view of blacks, making clear what an important role they played. His telling does not make the conflict sound like—as the British and Boers often said—a white man's war.
- 986 Plaatje, Sol T. *Native Life in South Africa*. London: King, 1916. Plaatje's account includes descriptions of situations during the Boer War.
- 987 Ploeger, J. *Die lotgevalle van die burgerlike bevolking gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902*. [The Fate of Civilians During the Anglo-Boer War.] 5 Vols. Pretoria: Staatsargiefdiens, 1990. Examines social conditions during the war.
- 988 Plokhooy, C. *Met den Mauser: Persoonlijke ervaringen in den Zuid-Afrikaanschen Oorlog*. [With a Mauser: Personal Experiences in the South African War.] Gorinchem: Duym, 1902. Provides a personal narrative of the war.

- 989 Plomer, William. *Cecil Rhodes*. London: Davies, 1933. Plomer's work is journalistic and at least at times superficial. He pictures Rhodes as materialistic, insensitive, and racist.
- 990 Poel, Jean van der. *The Jameson Raid*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 1951. This book is a well researched investigation. The author argues vigorously that Chamberlain was not only informed about but involved in the planning for the raid.
- 991 Pohl, Victor. *Adventures of a Boer Family*. London: Faber and Faber, 1944; rpt. 1956. This rather short memoir puts a human face on the Boers. It follows the adventures of older sons on commando and of the parents, daughters, and younger sons coping with life on a farm during the war.
- 992 Pollak, Oliver B. and Karen Pollak. *Theses and Dissertations on Southern Africa*. Boston: Hall, 1976. This volume includes a short section of items concerning the Boer War, though few concern military issues.
- 993 Pollock, A.W.A. *Simple Lectures for Company Field Training: With an Epitome of Tactics and Lessons from the Boer War*. London: William Clowes, 1900. These comments on tactics have details and observations of military operations in South Africa.
- 994 Pollock, A.W.A. *With Seven Generals in the Boer War: A Personal Narrative*. London: Skeffington & Son, 1900. Pollock was a correspondent who found opportunities to spend time with several units through the year of the war. His description of Stormberg is most detailed.
- 995 Porter, A. N. *The Origins of the South African War: Joseph Chamberlain and the Diplomacy of Imperialism*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1980. Porter examines the Chamberlain-Milner relationship in connection with the outbreak of hostilities, and argues that Chamberlain made a conscious effort to draw public support for his policy regarding South Africa.
- 996 Porter, Andrew. "Lord Salisbury, Mr. Chamberlain and South Africa, 1895-9." *The Journal of Imperial and Commonwealth History* 1 (1972): 3-26. Porter argues that Salisbury and the British Cabinet were in agreement with Chamberlain's policies and that minor disagreements, often taken as the tips of icebergs, were actually minor.

- 997 Porter, Andrew. "The South African War (1899-1902): Context and Motive Reconsidered." *Journal of African History* 31 (1990): 43-57. Porter suggests that the interpretation of the Boer War as part of the typical pattern of British imperial growth must be reexamined.
- 998 Pottinger, Brian. *The Foreign Volunteers: They Fought for the Boers, 1899-1902*. Melville: Scripta Africana, 1986. Outlines the role of volunteers who, inspired by the Boer's cause, went to South Africa to join the fight.
- 999 Powell, F. H. *Soldier and Padre, the Experiences of a Chaplain at the Front*. Manchester: H. H. Ashworth, 1902. Includes some personal experiences and anecdotes.
- 1000 Powell, Geoffrey. *Buller: A Scapegoat? A Life of General Sir Redvers Buller, 1839-1908*. London: Leo Cooper, 1994. By setting Buller's actions in South Africa into the context of the British military institution and politics of the day and noting a variety of people who disliked him personally and gave him no benefit of the doubt, Powell gives reason to think better of the general. He fails to convince, however, that Buller was not at fault for some of the problems in the South African campaign.
- 1001 Powell, Geoffrey. *The History of the Green Howards: Three Hundred Years of Service*. London: Arms and Armour, 1992. Briefly traces the involvement of the Green Howards in the South African War.
- 1002 Powell, Geoffrey. *Plumer: The Soldiers' General*. London: Leo Cooper, 1990. Powell's description of Plumer provides more details concerning his work early in the war in the region around Mafeking than later when he was a column commander during the guerrilla period. He does a thorough job of discussing Plumer, but does not consistently set him thoroughly into the context of the war.
- 1003 Pratt, Edwin. *Leading Points in South African History*. London: John Murray, 1900. Pratt provides a chronological listing of events with brief descriptions. His book is an easy reference for background and events during the first year of the South African War.
- 1004 Preller, Gustav S. *Kaptein Hindon, oorlogsaventure van 'n baas verkenner*. [Captain Hindon: War Adventures of a Master Scout.] Pretoria: Van Schaik, 1916. Consists of a personal narrative of reconnaissance and campaigning on the Boer side.

- 1005 Preller, Gustav S. *Ons parool, dae uit die dagboek van 'n krygsgevangene*. [On Parole, Days Out of The Diary of a Prisoner of War.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1938. Preller's personal narrative offers information and insight into the situation of Boer POWs.
- 1006 Preller, Gustav S. *Talana, die drie generaals-slag by Dundee, met lewensskets van genl. Daniel Erasmus*. [Talana: The Battle of the Three Generals at Dundee with a Biographical Sketch of General Daniel Erasmus.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1942. Preller combines an account of one of the first battles with biographical information about Erasmus and his family.
- 1007 Preller, Gustav S. ed. *Scheepers se dagboek en die stryd in Kaapland, 1 Okt. 1901-1818 Jan. 1902*. [The Diary of Scheepers and the Struggle in the Cape (1 October 1901-18 January 1902).] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1938. Scheepers was a commando leader and Boer officer, and his diary provides an account from the Boer perspective.
- 1008 Pretoria Prisoner. (Hillier, Alfred P.) *Raid and Reform*. London: Macmillan, 1898. Hillier, a prisoner after the Jameson Raid, states the Uitlander case, and although he calls it a blunder in execution, justifies the policy behind the raid.
- 1009 Pretorius, Fransjohan. *1899-1902 Die Anglo-boere-Oorlog*. [1899-1902 The Anglo-Boer War.] Cape Town: Don Nelson, 1985. Outline of the war.
- 1010 Pretorius, Fransjohan. *Kommandolewe tydens die Anglo-Boereoorlog 1899-1902*. [Commando Life During the Anglo-Boer War 1899-1902.] Kaapstad: Human & Rousseau, 1991. Describes service in the Boer forces. An abridged version was published as *Op Kommando* [On Commando] (1992).
- 1011 Pretorius, Franzjohan and Iain R. Smith. eds. "The Diary of Charlie Moses." *History Today* 48 (May, 1998): 21-28. Moses was a British subject who worked in a bank in Lindley in the Orange Free State. This article is extracts from a diary-letter he wrote, and while providing some details of campaigns through mid-May 1900, is most important as a description of attitudes about the war. It also shows the speed with which news traveled.
- 1012 Price, John E. *They Proved to All the Earth: A Source Book of Victoria's Dead in the South African War, 1899-1902*. Cheltenham: J. E. Price,

1981. This volume is mostly useful for statistical details.

- 1013 Price, John E. *Southern Cross Scots: The Australian and New Zealand Participation in the Marquis of Tullibardine's Scottish Horse During the South African War of 1899-1902*. Cheltenham: J. Price, 1992. Price describes the circumstances and experience of a relatively small unit of imperial troops during the war.
- 1014 Price, Richard. *An Imperial War and the British Working Class: Working Class Attitudes and Reactions to the Boer War*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1972. Although he has relatively little to offer military historians, Price's analysis suggesting that the workers cared little about the issues of the war and that aggressive sentiments were strongest in the upper half of society helps to explain political decisions about the conduct of the conflict.
- 1015 Priem, G. H. *De oorlog in Zuid-Afrika*. [The War in South Africa.] Amsterdam: Boon, 1899-1900. Provides an overview of the war.
- 1016 Prime, Peter. *The History of the Medical and Hospital Services of the Anglo-Boer War 1899 to 1902*. Chester: The Anglo-Boer War Philatelic Society, 1998. Prime includes substantial details of medical services.
- 1017 Prior, Melton. *Campaigns of a War Correspondent*. London: Edward Arnold, 1912. Prior, a correspondent for the *Illustrated London News*, covered the first Anglo-Boer conflict in 1881, the Jameson Raid in 1895, and the second conflict in 1899-1902. He includes observations from the camps of both sides, a variety of significant people, and combat. His book is useful, but does not often deal with the larger military picture.
- 1018 Prussia. Armee. Grosser Generalstab. Kriegsgeschichtliche Abteilung. *The War in South Africa*. 2 Vols. Prepared in the Historical Section of the Great General Staff. Translation by W.H.H. Waters and Hubert Du Cane. London: John Murray, 1904-06; rpt. 1969, 1986. German staff work was the best in the world in the late 19th and early 20th centuries. This study of the Boer War provides much analysis of tactics, especially battlefield formations and fire doctrine. It contains many comparisons of the Boers and their opponents, usually favorable to the former. It is also critical of British leadership. It concludes that German doctrines as of the beginning of the 20th century were sound. This is a book that should interest not only students of the Boer War

but also those interested in German military thinking leading to World War I.

- 1019 Pyrah, G. B. *Imperial Policy and South Africa, 1902-10*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1955. Pyrah is not particularly interested in the military aspects of the war, but he does provide a solid chapter concerning attitudes about it in both Great Britain and South Africa.
- 1020 Raal, Sarah. *Met die Boere in die veld; die ervarings van die skryfster*. [With the Boers in the Field; The Experiences of Sharpshooter.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1938. This personal narrative provides an account of experiences with the Boer forces.
- 1021 Raath, A.W.G. *Die Konsentrasiekamp te Springfontein gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902*. [The Concentration Camp at Springfontein During the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902.] Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepublieke, 1991. Raath takes a very close look at the Springfontein concentration camp.
- 1022 Raath, A.W.G. *Die Konsentrasiekamp te Vredefortweg gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902*. [The Concentration Camp at Vredefortweg During the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902.] Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepublieke, 1992. Raath's long volume provides details of the Vredefortweg concentration camp during the South African War.
- 1023 Raath, A.W.G. and R. M. Louw. *Die konsentrasiekamp te Bethulie gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902*. [The Concentration Camp at Bethulie During the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902.] Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepublieke, 1991. Provides a detailed examination of the Bethulie concentration camp.
- 1024 Raath, A.W.G. and R. M. Louw. *Vroueleed: die lotge valle die vroue en kinders buite die konsentrasiekamp, 1899-1902*. [Women's Sorrow: The Fate of Women and Children in the Concentration Camp, 1899-1902.] Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepublieke, 1993. Raath, who has done a series of volumes regarding the concentration camps, focuses here on the overall impact on inmates.
- 1025 Raath, A.W. G, Louw, R. M. and Danie Oliver. *Die Konsentrasiekamp te Bloemfontein gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902*. [The Concentration Camp at Bloemfontein During the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902.] Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepublieke,

1993. Examines the concentration camp at Bloemfontein in detail.
- 1026 Raath, A.W.G. and Nellie Van Zyl. *Siener van Rensburg en die Rebelle*. [Van Rensburg and the Rebellion.] Pretoria: Promedia, 1994. Analyzes the role of N.P.J. van Rensburg in the Boer War.
- 1027 Radziwill, Princess. *Cecil Rhodes: Man and Empire Maker*. London: Cassell, 1918. The personal hostilities between author and subject are not particularly noticeable in this volume, but it is not very dependable for factual information.
- 1028 Ralph, Julian. *An American with Lord Roberts*. New York: Frederick Stokes, 1901. Ralph, an American newspaper man, describes and comments about his experiences with the British forces during Roberts invasion of the Boer states.
- 1029 Ralph, Julian. *At Pretoria: The Capture of the Boer Capitals and the Hoisting of the Flag at Pretoria. A Companion Volume to Towards Pretoria*. London: Pearson, 1901. Ralph, an American correspondent, continues his account begun in an earlier book of the British capture of the Boer capitals.
- 1030 Ralph, Julian. *Towards Pretoria: A Record of the War Between Briton and Boer, to the Hoisting of the British Flag at Bloemfontein*. London: Pearson, 1900. Ralph, an American correspondent for the *Daily Mail*, describes his experiences with British forces in the Orange Free State. He's critical of Buller, but his account is superficial.
- 1031 Ralph, Julian. *War's Brighter Side: The Story of 'The Friend' Newspaper Edited by the Correspondents with Lord Roberts's Forces, March-April, 1900*. London: Pearson, 1901. *The Friend* was a newspaper created at Lord Roberts' suggestion by the correspondents in Bloemfontein. Ralph, one of the creators, includes comments and observation by some astute though pro-British contributors including Rudyard Kipling and Arthur Conan Doyle.
- 1032 Randell, Jack. As Told to Meigs O. Frost *I'm Alone*. Indianapolis: Bobbs-Merrill, 1930. Randell's account of being a member of Howard's Canadian Mounted Scouts is histrionic and superficial.
- 1033 Randolph, Spencer. [O'Connor, Thomas Patrick.] *Who Ought to Win, Oom Paul or Queen Victoria?* Chicago: Laird & Lee, 1900. The history in this volume is superficial, but it does include some letters

describing the war.

- 1034 Ranger, Terence. "The Last Word on Rhodes?" *Past and Present* 28 (July, 1964): 116-27. Reacting to Lockhart and Woodhouse's biography of Rhodes, Ranger suggests that his policy in Southern Africa was reckless from the 1890s on and not as the biographers suggest only in 1895 when he was sick and impatient.
- 1035 Ransford, Oliver. *The Battle of Majuba Hill: The First Boer War*. London: John Murray, 1967. Ransford does an effective job of tracing the entire first war between the British and the Boers (1880-81) and showing it as background to the much more extensive conflict of 1899-1902. He is particularly critical of General George Pomeroy Colley, whose poor leadership at Majuba, Ransford believes, made the quick decisive Boer victory of 1881 easy.
- 1036 Ransford, Oliver. *The Battle of Spion Kop*. London: John Murray, 1969. Ransford's account of the battle is detailed and thorough. He is extremely critical of Generals Buller and Warren.
- 1037 Raoul-Duval, Roger. *Au Transvaal et dans le Sud-Africain avec les Attachés Militaires*. [In the Transvaal and South Africa With the Military Attaches.] Paris: Delgrave, 1902. This volume contains the comments about the war of a French military observer.
- 1038 Ray, Cyril. *The Lancashire Fusiliers*. London: Leo Cooper, 1971. Ray includes a brief account of the unit in the bloody fighting at Spion Kop during the campaign to relieve Ladysmith early in 1900.
- 1039 Reade, R. E. *In Memoriam, R. Ernest Reade, D.S.O., Lieutenant, King's Royal Rifle Corps*. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner, 1902. This volume includes some of Reade's letters and diary entries.
- 1040 Reay, W. T. *Australians in War: With the Australian Regiment from Melbourne to Bloemfontein*. Melbourne: Massina, 1900. Provides descriptions of the Australian forces in the war and makes clear their importance to the British effort.
- 1041 Reckitt, B. N. *The Lindley Affair; A Diary of the Boer War*. Hull: A. Brown & Sons, 1972. This diary has a vivid account of life as a trooper in South Africa. It also describes the problems at Lindley, apparently caused by an order faked by a Boer telegraphist, where the 13th Battalion of the Imperial Yeomanry were isolated and forced to

surrender. The situation was part of the cause for General Colville being relieved.

- 1042 Reid, Brian A. *Our Little Army in the Field: The Canadians in South Africa, 1899-1902*. St. Catherine's: Vanwell Publishing, 1996. Reid traces the story of the Canadian contingent from its organization through action against the Boers.
- 1043 Reitz, Deneys. *Commando; a Boer Journal of the Boer War*. London: Faber & Faber, 1929; rpt. 1939, 1967, 1970, 1983, 1992. Although only seventeen when the war began, Reitz's diary is a detailed and thoughtful recounting of his experiences on commando. It is one of, if not, the best firsthand accounts from a Boer soldier.
- 1044 Reitz, Deneys. *No Outspan*. London: Faber & Faber, 1943. Reitz's autobiographical writing in this volume covers the 1899-1902 war.
- 1045 Reitz, Deneys. "With Smuts on Commando." In *Irregulars, Partisans, Guerrillas*. Edited by Irwin Blacker. New York: Simon & Schuster, 1954. Provides comments from Reitz.
- 1046 Reitz, F. W. *A Century of Wrong*. London: *Review of Reviews*, 1899. Originally published by the Transvaal government and almost certainly written in large part by Jan Smuts, this is a passionate statement of the Boers' case. The original anonymous publication was in Dutch.
- 1047 Renar, Frank. [Frank Fox.] *Bushman and Buccaneer: His Ventures and Verses*. Sydney: 1902. This short work concerning Breaker Morant was published in the year of the controversial executions. The author's conclusions are that not all of the crimes involved were brought to light, Kitchener's strictness about discipline contributed to the capital sentence but the trial was essentially fair, and the executions were in part to help satisfy German outrage regarding the incident.
- 1048 Repington, Charles à Court. *Vestigia*. London: Constable, 1919. Repington was on Buller's headquarter's staff through the relief of Ladysmith. His account makes clear that communication problems worsened the situation at Spion Kop, but on the whole he is quite critical of Buller for lacking vision in making plans of campaign and boldness for not committing his whole force at Spion Kop and Vaal Krantz. The use of frontal assaults would have made the price high, but Repington believes victory was possible.

- 1049 "Returns Showing Casualties and Expenditure of Horses and Ammunition in the Royal Artillery During the Campaign in South Africa, 1899-1902." *Proceedings of the Royal Artillery Institute* 29 (1902-03): 399-406, 552. Useful for statistical details.
- 1050 Rew, H. G. McKenzie. *Records of the Rough Riders (XXth Battalion Imperial Yeomanry) Boer War, 1899-1902*. Bedford: Brown & Wilson, 1907. Outlines the unit's activity during the war.
- 1051 Reynolds, E. E. *Baden-Powell*. London: Oxford, 1942. Reynolds describes Baden-Powell's role at Mafeking and in the subsequent campaigning.
- 1052 Rhoodie, Denys. *Conspirators in Conflict: A Study of the Johannesburg Reform Committee and Its Role in the Conspiracy Against the South African Republic*. Cape Town: Talfelberg-Uitgewers, 1967. Rhoodie is particularly valuable for his focus on Rhodes' involvement in the Jameson conspiracy.
- 1053 Richardson, Wodehouse. *With the Army Service Corps in South Africa*. London: Richardson, 1903. The author was Deputy Adjutant-General for Supply and Transport during the war and his comments on logistics, despite the potential for bias, are significant.
- 1054 Ridpath, John Clark and Edward S. Ellis. *The Story of South Africa. An Account of the Historical Transformation of the Dark Continent by the European Powers and the Culminating Contest Between Great Britain and the South African Republic in the Transvaal War*. New York: New England Co., nd. Ridpath and Ellis' book, published in several versions, provides a popular and some what biased account of the origins of the war.
- 1055 Riley, P. ed. "The Ladysmith Siege Diary of Dr. James Alexander Kay." *Africana News and Notes* 19 (Dec., 1971): 311-37. Kay, who was practicing medicine in the city, makes comments about the condition of the people as well as generally about the situation.
- 1056 Roberts, Brian. *Cecil Rhodes: Flawed Colossus*. New York: Norton, 1987. Roberts' account of Rhodes' involvement in the origins of the war is clear and detailed. He does not hide Rhodes' flaws but nonetheless conveys a sense of admiration. His section concerning Rhodes at Kimberley during the siege is quite short.

- 1057 Roberts, Brian. *Churchills in Africa*. London: Hamilton, 1970. Roberts' description of the adventures of Winston Churchill and his aunt Lady Sarah Wilson is readable and well done.
- 1058 Roberts, Brian. *Those Bloody Women: Three Heroines of the Boer War*. London: John Murray, 1991. Roberts' portrayal focuses on Lady Sarah Wilson, a correspondent and some times British secret agent; Hansie Van Warmelo, a Boer secret agent; and Emily Hobhouse, the English woman who focused attention on the suffering of women and children in concentration camps. He also gives attention to other women, including Millicent Fawcett and the "Ladies Commission" sent to investigate the camps.
- 1059 Roberts, Cecil. *Alfred Fripp*. London: Hutchinson, 1932. Roberts describes Fripp's involvement with the organization and operation of the Imperial Yeomanry Hospital at Delfontein. His account is not very detailed, however.
- 1060 Roberts, Frederick Sleigh, 1st Earl. *The True History of the War: Being the Official Despatches and Enclosures from the General Commanding-in-Chief of the Forces In South Africa*. London: Harrison & Sons, nd. Roberts' despatches, reprinted here from *The London Gazette*, are filled with information about the high command, though not necessarily complete details.
- 1061 Robertson, John M. *The Boer War: Open Letter to Dr. Conan Doyle, By John M. Robertson; With Official Despatches from Generals De La Rey, Smuts and Others*. Philadelphia: George H. Buchanan, 1900. Provides a pro-Boer response to nationalistic accounts such as Conan Doyle's.
- 1062 Robertson, John M. *Wrecking the Empire*. London: Grant Richards, 1901. Includes a detailed and thorough account of charges against the British for actions during the war drawn mostly from letters written in South Africa in the summer and fall of 1900 and published in the *Morning Leader*.
- 1063 Robertson, William. *From Private to Field Marshal*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1921. Robertson was a member of the headquarters staff for about nine months and was assigned to intelligence duties. He is somewhat critical of Lord Roberts for his use of Kitchener more as alter ego than as chief of staff and for giving him authority over senior officers. Robertson also provides some insight into command problems

in the Royal Army.

- 1064 Robinson, Ronald, and John Gallagher with Alice Denny. *Africa and the Victorians*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1961; rpt. 1968. The authors' surveyed the entire framework of imperialism and emphasize administrative issues.
- 1065 Rodwell, E. H. *Tactical Lectures*. Lahore: Printed at the Civil and Military Gazette Press, 1903. Rodwell examines both offensive and defensive tactics using the Boer War.
- 1066 Rolleston, Lancelot, *Yeomanry Cavalry or Mounted Infantry*. London: Smith, Elder, 1901. Rolleston discusses the differences and virtues of traditional cavalry and mounted infantry.
- 1067 Rolleston, Maud. *Yeoman Service Being the Diary of the Wife of an Imperial Yeomanry Officer During the Boer War*. London: Smith Elder, 1901. Offers a variety of details of the war from an unusual perspective.
- 1068 Romer, C. F. and A. E. Mainwaring. *The Second Battalion Royal Dublin Fusiliers in the South African War With a Description of the Operations in the Aden Hinterland*. London: Humphreys., 1908. Like most regimental histories, this volume provides some details of the campaign but has little analysis. It does, however, have a good description of Colonel Hart, who was part of the problem at Colenso.
- 1069 Rompel, Frederick. *Heroes of the Boer War*. London: Review of Reviews, 1903. Rompel provides some biographical details but as a correspondent for a Pretoria newspaper, he shows some pro-Boer sentiment. Rompel's book is also available in German and Dutch.
- 1070 Rompel, Frederick. *Marthinus Theunis Steijn*. [Marthinus Theunis Steyn.] Amsterdam: Veen, nd.. Biographies, such as this one, written during the subject's life, are often lacking in perspective. Rompel's effort is no exception.
- 1071 Rompel, Frederick. *Uit den tweeden vrijheidsoorlog: schetsen en portretten*. [Out of the Second War for Freedom: Sketches and Portraits.] Amsterdam: Van Holkema & Warendorf, 1900. Contains biographical details of people involved in the war.
- 1072 Roncetti, Gary A. and Edward E. Denby. *"The Canadians" Those Who*

Served in South Africa, 1899-1902. Toronto: E. E. Denby, 1979.
Includes detailed registers of Canadians involved in the Boer War.

- 1073 Rooke, Robert Percy. *Boer War Reminiscences of Trooper Robert Percy Rooke.* Edited by Walter G. Rooke and Kathleen Rooke Stokes. Winnipeg: W. G. Rooke and K. R. Stokes, 1994. Provides details of the author's two trips to South Africa, including service with Strathcona's Horse, part of the Canadian contingent.
- 1074 Roos, J. C. *Johannesburg en die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, Okt. 1899-Mei 1900.* [Johannesburg in the Second War for Freedom, October 1899-May 1900.] D. Litt. Dissertation, University of South Africa, Pretoria, 1949. Roos' study of this important city up to the point of British occupation provides useful background for understanding the war.
- 1075 Rorke, Melina de Fonseca. *The Story of Melina Rorke, R.R.C.* New York: Greystone Press, 1938. Rorke, a Red Cross nurse, who was part of the advance from Rhodesia to attempt the relief of Mafeking, supplies details of nursing during the war.
- 1076 Rose, E. B. *The Truth About the Transvaal: A Record of Facts Based Upon Twelve Years' Residence in the Country.* London: *Morning Leader*, 1902. Although the firsthand elements in Rose's account make it worth considering, he is quite strongly biased in favor of the Boer view.
- 1077 Rose-Innes, Cosmo. *With Paget's Horse to the Front.* London: Macqueen, 1901. Provides an account by a trooper of experiences with the Queen's Own Hussars in South Africa.
- 1078 Rose-Innes, James. *Autobiography.* Edited by B. A. Tindall. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 1949. Furnishes the observations of a liberal Cape Colony politician who regarded the war as unavoidable.
- 1079 Rose-Innes, James. *Sir James Rose-Innes: Selected Correspondence (1884-1902).* Edited by H. M. Wright. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 1972. James Rose-Innes was a political figure in Cape Colony before and during the war. He was leader of the opposition when it began and took office in the Sprigg Administration in 1900. His correspondence provides background to the military situation and the problems of maintaining loyalty and/or control of the situation in Cape Colony.

- 1080 Rosenthal, Eric. *General De Wet: A Biography*. Cape Town: Unie-Volkspers, 1946; rpt. 1968. Rosenthal's biography is popular in style and almost entirely uncritical.
- 1081 Rosenthal, Michael. *The Character Factory: Baden-Powell's Boy Scouts and the Imperatives of Empire*. New York: Pantheon Books, 1984. The Boer War is not a prominent part of this book, but the author goes to some extremes in suggesting that Baden-Powell's handling of the siege at Mafeking was a performance on a stage that he himself dressed. This interpretation has been questioned, and so Rosenthal should be consulted for his version.
- 1082 Rosny, J.-H. *La Guerre anglo-boer: histoire et récits d'après des documents officiels*. [The Anglo-Boer War: History and Accounts Taken From Official Documents.] Paris: Éditions de la Revue blanche, 1902. Well-illustrated account of the war.
- 1083 Ross, P. T. *A Yeoman's Letters*. London: Simpkin, Marshall, Hamilton, Kent, 1901. Ross supplies details of the everyday life of a British trooper on campaign in South Africa.
- 1084 Rosslyn, Earl of. ed. *The Gram: A Social Magazine Founded by British Prisoners of War in Pretoria*. London: Erye & Spottiswoode, nd. This volume is a facsimile of issues one through three of the publication done by the prisoners. It gives a sense of their situation.
- 1085 Rosslyn, Earl of. *Twice Captured: A Record of Adventure During the Boer War*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood and Sons, 1900. While serving as a correspondent, Rosslyn fell into the hands of the Boers, escaped, was recaptured. He describes his adventures and experiences in Boer prisons.
- 1086 Rotbert, Robert I. *The Founder: Cecil Rhodes and the Pursuit of Power*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1988. Rotbert tends to defend Rhodes, and blames Alfred Milner for causing the war, though he admits Rhodes agreed with Milner's ideas. He suggests those ideas were to get the Afrikaners "to be more tolerant, more open, more accommodating to English speaking miners and traders....," a position that not all would accept. He also admits that Rhodes' behavior while besieged at Kimberley was not his finest hour, but tends to give him better marks than most for helping the people of the city, while downplaying his failure to cooperate with the military authorities. Rhodes' involvement in the siege of Kimberley is not covered in detail.

- 1087 Rothmann, Frederick Lindeberg. *Oorlogsdakboek van 'n Transvaalse burger te velde, 1900-1901*. [War Diary of a Transvaal Citizen.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1947; rpt. 1976. Provides a Boer's observations and comments regarding the war.
- 1088 Rowat, G. *A Soldier Who Did His Duty. The Record of Sergeant-Major Rowat While on Active Service For Twelve Years In India and South Africa*. London: Partridge, nd. The largest part of the book concerns Rowat's experiences in the Boer War.
- 1089 Rowe, Kenneth. *The Postal History of the Canadian Contingents in the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902*. Toronto: Vincent G. Greene Philatelic Research Foundation, 1981. Although this volume is focused on philatelic history, it includes many details of Canadian units in the war.
- 1090 Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers. *A Short Account of the Part Played by the First Battalion the Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers During the South African Campaign, October 1899-May 1902*. Inniskillen: NP, 1903. Includes details of action and life on campaign.
- 1091 Royle, Stephen A. "St. Helena as a Boer Prisoner of War Camp, 1900-02: Information from the Alice Stopford Green Papers." *Journal of Historical Geography* 24 (Jan., 1998): 53-68. Royle describes the setting, and the handling of the prisoners on St. Helena.
- 1092 Ruda, Richard. "The Irish Transvaal Brigades." *The Irish Sword* 11 (1973-74): 201-211. Ruda gives an overview of the men, Irish and others, in the Irish brigades with the Boer forces.
- 1093 Ruijssenaers, L. C. *Krijgsgevangenschap van L. C. Ruijssenaers 1899-1902*. [The Wartime Imprisonment of L. C. Ruijssenaers.] Edited by O.J.O Ferreira. Pretoria: Raadvir Geesteswetenskaplik Navorsing, 1977. Provides a personal account of a Boer POW held on St. Helena.
- 1094 Runck, Richard. *Aus dem Freiheitskampfe der Buren—Die Deutschen Korps*. [The German Corps in the Boer War for Freedom.] Zweibrücken: Hermann Reiselt, 1902. Runck describes the part played in the South African campaigns by German volunteers who fought with the Boers.
- 1095 Russell, A. F. *Cavalry Doctor: Letters Written From the Field, 1900-1901, During the Anglo-Boer War*. Edited by Isobel Robertson.

Constantia, South Africa: Robertson, 1979. Consists of a personal narrative about the medical situation during the war.

- 1096 Russell, A.V.F.V. *Letters From South Africa*. London: Keliher, 1909. Russell, a major in the Grenadier Guards, wrote the letters in this volume to his mother. They are filled with details of life on campaign but say little about combat, perhaps out of respect for the recipient.
- 1097 Ryerson, G. Sterling. *Medical and Surgical Experience in the South African War*. Toronto: Toronto Clinical Society, 1903. Describes military medicine in South Africa.
- 1098 Salt, G.E.S. *Letters and Diary of Lieutenant G.E.S. Salt During the War in South Africa, 1899-1900*. London: John Murray, 1902; rpt. 1974. Provides the observations and comments of a junior officer (Royal Welch Fusiliers) about the first year of the war, particularly Buller's campaign, until the author's death from typhoid fever.
- 1099 Sampson, Victor and Ian Hamilton. *Anti-Commando*. London: Faber and Faber, 1931. The authors attempt to counter Boer attacks on British policy, especially those of Deney's Reitz in his book *Commando*. They also provide accounts of military action, including a particularly good description of the Battle of Elandsplaagte.
- 1100 Sanderson, Edgar. *The Fight for the Flag in South Africa: A History of the War From the Boer Ultimatum to the Advance of Lord Roberts*. London: Hutchinson, 1900. Furnishes a contemporary account of the first part of the war with a pro-British slant.
- 1101 Sangree, Allen. "De Wet and His Campaign." *Cosmopolitan* 31 (May, 1901): 65-74. Sangree spent time with De Wet on campaign and describes the general and his own experiences.
- 1102 Sauer, Hans. *Ex Africa*. London: Bles, 1937. Includes a contemporary account of the Jameson Raid by a doctor who was a friend of Cecil Rhodes.
- 1103 Savage, Raymond. *Allenby of Armageddon*. Indianapolis: Bobbs-Merrill, 1926. Savage provides a largely descriptive account of Allenby's service with the Inniskilling Dragoons during the first year of the war and then of his command of one of the eight flying columns used to circumvent Boer raids.

- 1104 Scaife, A. H. *The War to Date (March 1, 1900)*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1900. Gives a superficial account of the war.
- 1105 Scheibert, J. *Der Freiheitskampf der Buren und die Geschichte ihres Landes*. [The Boers' War for Freedom and the History of Their Land.] 2 Vols. Berlin: Verlag von A. Schroder, 1900-02. Provides a somewhat pro-Boer description of the background and beginnings of the war in South Africa.
- 1106 Schiel, Adolf. *23 Jahre Sturm und Sonnenschein in Südafrika*. [Twenty-three Years of Storm and Sunshine in South Africa.] Leipzig: F. A. Brockhaus, 1902. Schiel's memoirs include an account of experiences in the Boer War.
- 1107 Schiele, Wolfgang. *Mit den Deutschen im Buren-Kriege*. [With the Germans in the Boer War.] Berlin: Reimer, 1901. Contains personal observations of a volunteer.
- 1108 Schikkerling, R. W. *Commando Courageous: A Boer's Diary*. Johannesburg: Hugh Keartland, 1964. Supplies a lengthy personal narrative of experiences during the South African War.
- 1109 Schmidt, Max. *Aus unserem kriegsleben in Südwest-Afrika. Erlebnisse und erfahrungen*. [Our Life at War in Southwest Africa. Adventures and Experiences.] Berlin: E. Runge, 1907. Provides personal account of wartime experiences.
- 1110 Schoeman, Karel. *In liefde en trou: die lewe van president M. T. Steyn en mervrou Tibbie Steyn met 'n keuse uit hulle korrespondensie*. [Love and Fidelity: The Life of President M. T. Steyn and Tibbie Steyn With Selections From Their Letters. Kaapstad: Human & Rousseau, 1983. This joint biography of President Steyn of the Orange Free State and his wife includes comment and description concerning the war.
- 1111 Schoeman, Karel. *Only an Anguish to Live Here: Olive Schreiner and the Boer War, 1899-1902*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 1992. Schreiner was an English woman resident in South Africa, sister of a prominent Cape Colony politician, and a successful author in her own right. She was inclined to favor the Boer position, but it was not a simple choice for her.
- 1112 Schoeman, Karel. ed. *Witnesses to War: Personal Documents of the Anglo-Boer War From the Collections of the South African Library*.

Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 1998. Provides a collection of personal narratives concerning the war.

- 1113 Scholtz, G. D. *Europa en die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 1899-1902*. [Europe and the Second War for Freedom, 1899-1902.] Johannesburg: Voortrekkerpers, 1939; rpt. 1979. Describes reactions in Germany, Holland, and some other states to the Boer War.
- 1114 Scholtz, G. D. *Die Oorsake van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 1899-1902*. [The Causes of the Second War for Freedom, 1899-1902.] 2 Vols. Johannesburg: Voortrekkerpers, 1948-49. Scholtz traces relations between the British and the Boers from the Great Trek to the war. He tends to be pro-Boer in interpreting the causes of the conflict, and stresses the aggressive nature of British policy.
- 1115 Scholtz, G. D. *President Johannes Henricus Brand*. Johannesburg: Voortrekkerpers, 1957. Brand was president of the Orange Free State during the 1880-81 war. Scholtz's biography is well documented, using official correspondence and newspapers extensively.
- 1116 Scholtz, G. D. *Die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 1899-1902*. [The Second War for Freedom, 1899-1902.] Johannesburg: Voortrekkerpers, 1960. Provides a simple, straightforward account of the war from origins to peace.
- 1117 Scholtz, G. D. "Die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog in wêreldverband." [The Second War for Freedom in World Context.] *Historia* 20 (May, 1975): 2-43. Although not military in focus, this article is a concise statement of the international concerns that influenced the combatants.
- 1118 Scholtz, Leopold. ed. *Beroemde Suid-Afrikaanse Krygsmanne*. [Famous South African Soldiers.] Kaapstad: Rubicon-Pers, 1984. Scholtz sketches the biographies of leading Boer soldiers in the 1899-1902 war.
- 1119 Scholtz, W. L. von Ranke. *Generaal Christiaan de Wet as veldheer*. [General Christiaan De Wet As Military Leader.] D. Litt. thesis Rijksuniversiteit, Leiden, 1978. Provides a very detailed examination of De Wet's qualities as a soldier.
- 1120 Schooling, Frederick and Edward A. Rusher. *The Mortality Experience of the Imperial Forces During the War in South Africa*. London: Charles and Edwin Layton, 1903. The authors do an actuarial analysis of

British deaths in the war.

- 1121 Schowalter, A. ed. *Im Kampf um Südafrika*. [The Struggle in South Africa.] 4 Vols. Munchen: J. F. Lehmann, 1902. A number of the authors involved in these volumes were participants in the war.
- 1122 Schreiner, Olive. *An English South African's View of the Situation. Words in Season*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1899. Schreiner, a well-documented author, presents her position against war between South Africa and Britain.
- 1123 Schreiner, Olive. *The Letters of Olive Schreiner, 1876-1920*. Edited by S. C. Cronwright-Schreiner. Boston: Little, Brown, 1924. As an Englishwoman long resident in South Africa, Schreiner's comments about the problems between her native and adopted countries are poignant. She is critical of both sides.
- 1124 Schreiner, Olive. *Thoughts on South Africa*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1923; rpt. 1976, 1992. Schreiner does not address the war directly in this volume, but does provide thoughtful evaluations of the country of South Africa and its people, which make excellent background for the study of the war.
- 1125 Schreuder, D. M. *Gladstone and Kruger: Liberal Government and Colonial Home Rule, 1880-85*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1969. Schreuder provides an account of the first Boer War and is quite critical of General George Pomeroy Colley. He argues, however, that the importance of Majuba was political rather than military.
- 1126 Schreuder, D. M. *The Scramble for Southern Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1980. Schreuder provides a clear description of British policy and activity in Southern African during the late 19th century, and his book is excellent background of the study of the war.
- 1127 Scoble, John and H. R. Abercrombie. *The Rise and Fall of Krugerism*. London: Heinemann, 1900. The authors include an account of the Jameson Raid and the background to the war of 1899-1902. They are noticeably pro-British.
- 1128 Scott, Guy H. Guillum and Geoffrey L. McDonell. eds. *The Record of the Mounted Infantry of the City Imperial Volunteers*. London: E. & F. N. Spon, 1902. Traces the activities of the unit in South Africa.

- 1129 *2nd Battalion South Wales Borderers. South African War 1899-1902.* Devonport: Swiss, nd. Supplies an account of the South Wales Borderers campaigning in South Africa.
- 1130 Secrett, T. *Twenty-Five Years With Earl Haig.* New York: Duffield, 1929. Secrett was Haig's personal servant who joined him in South Africa. He is hardly critical, but he does make observations about Haig's ideas, behavior, and relations with other people.
- 1131 Selby, John M. "The Boer War, 1899-1902." In *History of the British Army.* Edited by Peter Young and J. P. Lawford. London: Arthur Barker, 1970. Selby praises the Boers as good riders and shots and for understanding the importance of digging in, but he notes that they lacked military discipline. He highlights the Battle of Elandslaagte (Oct. 21, 1899) to show that when well led the British could win even early in the war. The key leaders in this case were John French and Ian Hamilton. Selby suggests that a few more such performances in the first months might have quickly ended the war in British triumph.
- 1132 Selby, John M. *The Boer War: A Study in Cowardice and Courage.* London: Arthur Barker, 1969. Selby describes the entire course of the war with an emphasis on questions of morale in both armies. A key theme in the book is the tendency of the two sides to accept tacit rules of conduct.
- 1133 Sellers, W. E. *From Aldershot to Pretoria: A Story of Christian Work Among Our Troops in South Africa.* London: Religious Tract Society, 1900. Sellers includes details of hospital and charitable work among soldiers in his account.
- 1134 Semmler, Clement. *The Banjo of the Bush: The Work, Life, and Times of A. B. Patterson.* Melbourne: Lansdowne, 1966; rpt. 1983; 1974; 1970; 1987. Semmler describes Patterson's experiences as an Australian war correspondent in South Africa, but his focus is heavily on Patterson's writing, which lessens the value of the book for the study of the issues of the war.
- 1135 Sessions, Harold. *Two Years with the Remount Commissions.* London: Chapman and Hall, 1903. The vital need for livestock due to casualties makes information about remounts, such as this volume, very important for the study of the war.
- 1136 Seton, A. M. "A Garrison Artillery Company in the Field." *Journal of the*

Royal United Service Institute 45 (1901): 1075-1093. Provides details of artillery tactics and life in South Africa.

- 1137 Seton-Karr, Henry. *The Call to Arms, 1900-01 or a Review of the Imperial Yeomanry Movement and Some Subjects Connected Therewith*. London: Longmans Green, 1902. Seton-Karr's main focus is the 18th Battalion, but he does provide comment on broader issues.
- 1138 Settle, J. H. *Anecdotes of Soldiers in Peace and War*. London: Methuen, 1905. Settle has collected a large number of short tales—often humorous and some, at least, of dubious provenance—concerning soldiers in the Boer War.
- 1139 Severance, John B. *Winston Churchill: Soldier, Statesman, Artist*. New York: Clarion Books, 1996. Although Severance's main focus is World War II, he does cover Churchill's early life, including his dramatic experiences in the Boer War.
- 1140 Sevin Desplaces, L. *Les vaillants Boers*. [The Brave Boers.] Paris: Librairie d'education A. Hatier, nd. Provides descriptions of the war from a somewhat pro-Boer position.
- 1141 Shannon, Richard. *The Crisis of Imperialism*. St. Albans: Paladin, 1976. Shannon regards Milner for the Boer War.
- 1142 Sharp, G. *The Siege of Ladysmith*. Cape Town: Purnell, 1976. This account of the siege is based on the diaries and letters of naval officers involved. It includes details of the situation.
- 1143 Shearing, David & Taffy. *Commandant Johannes Lötter and His Rebels*. Sedgefield: D. & T. Shearing, 1998. The Shearings provide the story of Lötter who raised a commando in the Cape Colony, which was eventually captured. Lötter and four officers were executed—Cape residents were British citizens and for them taking arms was regarded as treason—and the rest shipped to Bermuda. The volume also includes biographical information about 154 men of the commando.
- 1144 Sheppard, Eric William. *A Short History of the British Army*. 4th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. London: Constable, 1950; orig. 1926. Sheppard praises the Boers for being better marksmen and riders than the British and notes that their artillery was superior except in quantity. He believes that prompt action on their part in the early stages of the war would have produced a victory. In the long run,

however, the war promoted reform in the Royal Army that was much needed before World War I.

- 1145 *A Short History of the Border Regiment*. 5th ed. Aldershot: Gale & Polden, 1938. This very short account provides a few details of the relief of Ladysmith and fighting at Spion Kop and Venter's Spruit.
- 1146 *A Short History of the 3rd Battalion The Prince of Wales's Volunteers (South Lancashire Regiment) Formerly 4th Royal Lancashire (The Duke of Lancaster's Own) Light Infantry Militia, Being Principally Extracts From the Regimental Records*. Manchester: Taylor, Garnett, Evans, 1909. The unit's activity in South Africa makes up much of the volume.
- 1147 Sibbald, Raymond. ed. *The Boer War: The War Correspondents*. Johannesburg : Ball, 1993. Sibbald has collected and thoughtfully introduced the dispatches of *The Times'* correspondents to illustrate the war and the development of journalism.
- 1148 Sidney, William. *On Active Service with the S. J. A. B., South African War, 1899-1902; A Diary of Life and Events in the War Hospitals at Wynberg, Nourse Deep, Johannesburg, and Other Places*. Kendal: Printed by Atkinson and Pollitt, 1903. Sidney's personal narrative of activities with the St. John's Ambulance Brigade offers details of medical problems and care during the war.
- 1149 Simpson, R. J. S. *The Medical History of the War in South Africa: An Epidemiological Essay*. London: HMSO, 1911. Drawn from the *Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps*, this volume offers a detailed and technical account of military, medical, and sanitary affairs in South Africa.
- 1150 Sims, M. and A. Kagan. *American and Canadian Doctoral Dissertations and Master's Theses on Africa, 1886-1974*. Waltham, MA.: African Studies Association, 1976. Sims and Kagan provide useful bibliographical information.
- 1151 Sister X, *The Tragedy and Comedy of War Hospitals*. London: John Murray, 1906. Provides an account of the experiences of an RAMC nurse during the South African War.
- 1152 Siwundhala, Hulme T. *The Participation of Non-Europeans in the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902*. Ph.D. Dissertation, Claremont Graduate

School, 1977. Siwundhala's study helps establish the significance of non-whites in what the British and Boers frequently called "a white man's war."

- 1153 Sixsmith, E. K. G. *British Generalship in the Twentieth Century*. London: Arms and Armour, 1970. Sixsmith praises Buller's overall understanding of the situation in South Africa, but agrees with critics that he lost his head after word of Stormberg and Magersfontein reached him, leading to poor decisions at Colenso.
- 1154 Sixsmith, E. K. G. "Kitchener and the Guerrillas in the Boer War." *Army Quarterly* 104 (Jan., 1974): 203-14. Sixsmith argues that in light of modern war the guerrilla campaign, which has often been ignored, is the important aspect of the Boer War. His description of that campaign is clear and detailed, and his conclusion is that Kitchener's methods, though slow, worked.
- 1155 Slocum, S. L'H. *Boer War Operations in South Africa 1899-1901: Extracts from the Reports of Captain S. L'H. Slocum and Captain Carl Reichmann*. Melville, South Africa: Scripta Africana, 1987. This brief summary of military operations in the South African War was written in 1901.
- 1156 Smail, J. L. *Those Restless Years*. Cape Town: Timmins, 1971. This volume is valuable for contemporary pictures and includes both Boer Wars and the Zulu Rebellion of 1906.
- 1157 Smit, F. P. *Die Staatsopvattinge van Paul Kruger*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 1951. Smit analyzes Kruger's political ideology and provides background for understanding the outbreak of the war. His biography is generally regarded as one of if not the best of Kruger.
- 1158 Smith, F. *A Veterinary History of the War in South Africa, 1899-1902*. London: H. & W. Brown, nd. The importance and suffering of horses during the Boer War makes this a book worthy of attention.
- 1159 Smith, Godfrey H. *With the Scottish Rifle Volunteers at the Front*. Glasgow: William Hodge, 1901. Supplies a personal account of action in the Boer War.
- 1160 Smith, H. Babington. "Ladysmith After the Siege." *Living Age* 225 (June 2, 1900): 537-46. Smith's account is based on a very brief visit to Ladysmith, but it does include details of the condition of the city and

the people only a few days after the siege was raised.

- 1161 Smith, Iain R. *The Origins of the South African War, 1899-1902*. London: Longman, 1996. Smith has done an excellent job of synthesizing the views of causes of the war. He brings together existing interpretations and his own research to provide an overall picture of past interpretations and current knowledge.
- 1162 Smith, Iain R. "Reading History: The Boer War." *History Today* 34 (May, 1984): 46-49. Smith follows the changing views of the war as its historiography became more sophisticated. He identifies seminal works, but does not take the analysis beyond them.
- 1163 Smith-Dorrien, Horace. *Memories of Forty-Eight Years Service*. London: John Murray, 1925. Smith-Dorrien commanded the 19th infantry brigade in South Africa, from December, 1899. He asserts his determination never to impute blame to others, and unfortunately he honors this promise so thoroughly that his description of the war is almost without point of view. He was involved in many of the campaigns and battles including Paardeberg, Bloemfontein, Sannah's Post, Zand River, and Pretoria, and was active in the pursuit of De Wet toward the end of the struggle. His descriptions are detailed, making this an excellent source for understanding the military operations, but it would have been interesting to know what this better-than-average soldier thought about the situations in which he was involved and the people with whom he worked.
- 1164 Smithers, A. J. *The Man Who Disobeyed: Sir Horace Smith-Dorrien and His Enemies*. London: Leo Cooper, 1970. Smith-Dorrien commanded a cavalry brigade. He fought at Paardeberg and was later involved in the effort to control the guerrilla war. Smithers defends him, but does not include much detail concerning events in South Africa.
- 1165 Smithers, Elizabeth (Dietrich). *March Hare: The Autobiography of Elsa Smithers*. London: Oxford University/Humphrey Milford, 1935. Includes a firsthand account of the siege of Pretoria during the First Anglo-Boer War.
- 1166 Smuts, J. C. *Jan Christian Smuts*. Cape Town: Cassell, 1952. Although the author is the son of the subject, this biography is dependable and non-adulatory. The son's admiration for his father does, however, show.

- 1167 Smuts, Jan. *Memoirs of the Boer War*. Edited by Gail Nattrass and S. B. Spies. Johannesburg: Ball, 1994. These autobiographical writings cover the period from the fall of Pretoria through the end of 1900 and include a detailed account of the Magaliesberg campaign. Although Smuts' writing is also in the published collection of his papers, the editors of this volume have added extensive notes and comments.
- 1168 Smyth, B. *A History of the Lancashire Fusiliers*. 2 Vols. Dublin: Sackville Press, 1903-04. Describes the unit's 2nd Battalion in the Boer War.
- 1169 Snyman, J. H. "Rebelle-vetrhoor in Kaapland gedurende die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog met spesiale verwysing na die militêre howe (1899-1902)." [Rebel Trials in the Cape Colony During the Second War for Freedom with Special Reference to the Military Courts (1899-1902).] *Archives Yearbook for South African History* Vol. 25 (1962). Snyman examines the handling of what seemed a potentially serious problem for the British—support for the Boer cause by Afrikaners living in Cape Colony. His account is somewhat narrowly focused, however.
- 1170 Solomon, Vivian. ed. *Selections from the Correspondence of Percy Alport Molteno, 1892-1914*. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 1981. Molteno, son of a prime minister of Cape Colony, was a businessman and opponent of British influence. He worked in support of the Boers during the war.
- 1171 *The South African Casualty Roll: The "South African Field Force" 11th Oct. 1899-June 1902*. Polstead: Hayward, 1982. Provides statistical details.
- 1172 South African Review. *The South Africa Review Book of 50 Famous Cartoons: A Unique Souvenir of the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1900*. Cape Town: W. A. Richards & Sons, nd. Views the conflict through cartoons published in South Africa before and during the war.
- 1173 *South African War Honours and Awards, 1899-1920: Officers and Men of the Army and Navy Mentioned in Despatches*. London: Arms and Armour Press, 1971; rpt. 1987. Includes biographical details and information about British soldiers' heroism during the war.
- 1174 Spender, Harold. *General Botha: The Career and the Man*. London: Constable, 1916; rpt. 1919. Spender's chapters concerning the war are clear though not always very detailed.

- 1175 Spicer, A. R. W. *Letters from the Transvaal, 1899-1901*. London: Cole, nd. Provides an account of the campaign in Natal by a lieutenant in the King's Royal Rifle Corps.
- 1176 Spiers, Edward M. *The Late Victorian Army*. Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1992. Spiers concludes this scholarly study with the Boer War. He suggests that the British army tended to focus on current conflicts and not plan for the future. His book is excellent background for understanding the problems of the British in South Africa.
- 1177 Spies, S. B. "The Hague Convention of 1899 and the Boer Republics." *Historia* 15 (March, 1970): 43-48. Spies considers the application of the Hague Convention—neither of the Boer Republics was a signatory—and concludes that although technically it did not apply, it was the standard most commonly used to judge the conduct of the war.
- 1178 Spies, S. B. *Methods of Barbarism? Roberts and Kitchener and Civilians in the Boer Republics, January 1900-May 1902*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 1977. Spies analyzes the efforts to deal with the Boer resistance by pressure on civilians. His account is the most complete and scholarly assessment of this aspect of the war. Spies' research is excellent and includes War Office records and both Roberts' and Kitchener's papers.
- 1179 Spooner, F. P. *South African Predicament*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1960. Spooner asserts that there were rights and wrongs on both sides in the Anglo-Boer confrontation, though he strongly implies that the British had the greater faults. His discussion of the war is as background to the problems of the mid-20th century, and his book is most valuable for consideration of the consequences of the conflict.
- 1180 Spurgin, Karl B. *On Active Service with the Northumberland and Durham Yeomanry, Under Lord Methuen: South Africa 1900-1901*. London: Walter Scott Publishing for the Author, nd. This memoir 80includes personal comments and observations of Methuen's column.
- 1181 St. Leger, S. E. *War Sketches in Colour*. London: Adam & Charles Black, 1903; rpt. as *Mounted Infantry at War* (1986). St. Leger, who served with the mounted infantry attached to French's brigade, includes pictures from his sketchbook accompanied by brief descriptions.
- 1182 Staniforth, J. M. *Cartoons of the Boer War*. Reprinted from the Western

Mail. 2 Vols. Cardiff: *Western Mail*, 1900-02. Offers a humorous, though often serious, perspective of the war.

- 1183 Statham, F. R. *Paul Kruger and His Times*. London: Fisher Unwin, 1898. Provides background on Kruger's role in confrontation with Britain from the time of the first war to the origins of the second.
- 1184 Steele, S. B. *Forty Years in Canada: Reminiscences of the Great Northwest with Some Account of his Service in South Africa*. Edited by Mollie Glen Niblett. Toronto: McClelland, Goodchild & Stewart, nd. Steele describes the raising of Strathcona's Horse in Canada and campaigning in South Africa.
- 1185 Steenkamp, Willem. *The Soldiers*. Cape Town: Don Nelson, 1978. Steenkamp's heavily illustrated volume of biographical sketches of South African military leaders includes Koos De la Rey and Christiaan De Wet from the 1899-1902 war. His accounts, although noticeably pro-Boer, are clear, effective descriptions.
- 1186 Steevens G. W. *From Capetown to Ladysmith: An Unfinished Record of the South African War*. Edited by Vernon Blackburn. Steevens, an experienced and respected correspondent, was trapped in the Ladysmith siege and died of typhoid before it ended. Although at times his book is quite personal, he includes a variety of details and observations about the situation before and during the siege.
- 1187 Sternberg, Adalbert Wenceslaus Heinrich Leopold Maria, Graf von. *My Experiences of the Boer War*. Trans. by G. F. R. Henderson. London: Longmans, Green, 1901. Originally *Meine Erlebnisse und Erfahrungen im Boerenkriege*. Berlin: G. Reimer, 1901. Sternberg provides an account from the point of view of a volunteer serving with the Boer forces—useful for details but some what biased in comment.
- 1188 Stevens, F. T *Complete History of the South African War, in 1899-1902*. London: W. Nicholson & Sons, 1901. The 1903 edition carries the story to the end of the conflict, but it remains a superficial contemporary account of the war.
- 1189 Stevenson, W. F. ed. *Report on the Surgical Cases Noted in the South African War, 1899-1902*. London: HMSO, 1905. Stevenson includes clinical details of wounds.
- 1190 Stewart, Patrick F. *The History of the XII Royal Lancers (Prince of*

Wales's). London: Oxford University Press, 1950. Provides an account of campaigning in South Africa.

- 1191 Stewart, Robert., *Sam Steele: Lion of the Frontier*. Toronto: Doubleday, 1979. This biography of Canadian Sir Samuel Benefield Steele describes his experiences in the Boer War and the South African Constabulary.
- 1192 Stickney, A. *The Transvaal Outlook*. New York: Dodd, Mead, 1900. Stickney denounces Chamberlain and his explanations of the war. His book is virtually a diatribe in favor of the Boers, but does include an account of the military situation and logistical problems.
- 1193 Stirling, John. *The Colonials in South Africa, 1899-1902: Being the Services of the Various Irregular Corps Raised in South Africa and the Contingents from Australia, Canada, New Zealand, India and Ceylon Together with Details of Those Mentioned in Despatches with Related Honours and Awards*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons, 1907; rpt. 1990. Stirling is a convenient reference for details of the imperial and other non-Royal Army forces that were part of British forces in South Africa.
- 1194 Stirling, John. *Our Regiments in South Africa 1899-1902: Their Record, Based on the Despatches*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood and Sons, 1903; rpt. 1994. Stirling provides useful details of the war, but little that is not available elsewhere. The 1994 edition has the title *British Regiments in South Africa*.
- 1195 Stokes, Eric. "Great Britain and Africa: The Myth of Imperialism." *History Today* 10 (June, 1960): 554-563. Stokes gives a clear outline of 19th century British imperialism in Africa and shows the Boer War fits into the overall pattern.
- 1196 Stokes, Eric. "Milnerism." *The Historical Journal* 5 (1962): 47-60. Stokes concludes that Milner was the driving force that pushed the British government to accept war in South Africa.
- 1197 Stone, Jay and Erwin A. Schmidl. *The Boer War and Military Reforms*. Lanham, MD: University Press of America; 1988. The first part of this book, by Stone, examines the problems of the Royal Army in South Africa and argues that a wide variety of organizational reforms, equipment improvements, training improvements, and other progress grew from the lessons learned. The second part, by Schmidl, is an

examination of Captain Robert Trimmel, an Austrian attaché, who spent six months in South Africa and then went home to advocate reform in the Austro-Hungarian military.

- 1198 *The Story of HMS Powerful, From the Diary of a Powerful Man*. London: Horace Marshall & Son, 1900. Includes a short account of the Naval Brigade in South Africa.
- 1199 Stowers, Richard. *Kiwi versus Boer: The First New Zealand Mounted Rifles in the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902*. Hamilton, NZ: Stowers, 1992. Furnishes an account of New Zealand cavalry campaigning during the war.
- 1200 Strachey, Ray. *Millicent Garrett Fawcett*. London: John Murray, 1931. Fawcett headed the Women's Commission sent to investigate conditions in the concentration camps. Strachey contrasts her moderate views with the more radical ones of Emily Hobhouse, and points out that her commission did find problems and successfully suggested changes.
- 1201 Strydom, C.J.S. *Kaapland en die tweede vryheidsoorlog*. [The Cape Colony and the Second War for Freedom.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1937; rpt. 1947; 1979. Describes the situation in the Cape Colony during the war, including the problems of the Cape Dutch.
- 1202 Strydom, C.J.S. *Ruitveruur: Dramatiese hoogtepunte van die Boereoorlog*. [Firing From the Saddle: Dramatic Highlights of the Anglo-Boer War.] Kaapstad: Tafelberg, 1970. Although selection has a somewhat pro-Boer inclination, the author does describe a number of important confrontations in the war.
- 1203 Stuart, John. *Pictures of War*. Westminster: Constable, 1901. Includes extracts from letters written by the author for the *Morning Post* during the South African War.
- 1204 Sturrock, J. P. (9176 I.Y.). *The Fifes in South Africa Being a History of the Fife and Forfar Yeomanry in the South African War, 1900-1901*. Cupar-Fife: A. Westwood & Son, 1903. Traces the activities of the unit in action and on campaign during the war.
- 1205 *Subaltern's Letters to His Wife, A*. London: Longmans, Green, 1901. The anonymous author (Reginald Rankin) describes his experiences in South Africa, and is critical of British training and equipment. He

accuses the War Office of hoping to win through numerical advantage rather than recognizing that in modern war the key is maximizing fire power.

- 1206 Surridge, Keith. "All You Soldiers Are What We Call Pro-Boer': The Military Critique of the South African War, 1899-1902." *History: The Journal of the Historical Association* 82 (Oct., 1997): 582-600. Surridge argues that failures in South Africa created serious morale problems for the British army. He takes a critical look at the army's own critique of the war.
- 1207 Surridge, Keith. *Managing the South African War: Politicians v. Generals*. Woodbridge, Suffolk: Royal Historical Society, 1998. Surridge includes discussion of the military campaigns along with much administrative history.
- 1208 Sutton, Ralph. ed. *For Queen and Empire: A Boer War Chronicle*. Ryde, N.S.W.: New South Wales Military Historical Society, 1974. Provides an Australian's point of view regarding the war.
- 1209 Sweig, Martin. *Origins of the Boer War, 1899-1902*. Ph.D. Thesis, Georgetown University, 1957. Sweig has made a detailed examination of the background to the war and has made a thorough and scholarly analysis of its causes.
- 1210 Swinton, E. D. *The Defense of Duffer's Drift*. London: Leo Cooper, 1990. This short volume was originally published in the *United Service Magazine* (July & Aug., 1904: 398-413; 516-37) under the name Backsight Forethought. The text has been reissued in a number of formats. It is a fictional account of a subaltern learning small unit defensive tactics in South Africa based on Swinton's observations of the war. It is a very informative volume regarding the tactics of the two sides and the reasons for the initial British problems in handling Boer commandos.
- 1211 Symons, Julian. "Buller in South Africa." *History Today* 11 (Nov., 1961): 770-78. In this biographical sketch, Symons argues that Buller's disaster in South Africa arose from a failure of nerve rather than incompetence.
- 1212 Symons, Julian. *Buller's Campaign*. London: Crescent Press, 1963; rpt. 1974. Symons includes a great deal of background concerning the Royal Army before the war. He is critical of Buller for lack of

resolution, and like many observers regards him as foolish. He does mitigate his criticism by suggested strongly that Buller was seriously depressed, which caused his irresolution. His book is readable and well argued.

- 1213 Tatham, G. F. *Diary of the Siege of Ladysmith, 1 November 1899-1 March 1900*. Ladysmith: Ladysmith Historical Society, 1970; rpt. 1994. Although short, this diary, of a soldier who was living in Ladysmith at the time of siege, provides trained, eyewitness observations. It is a good source for details of life during the siege.
- 1214 Taylor, D. *Souvenir of the Siege of Mafeking. From Original Photographs by D. Taylor, Photographer, Mafeking, 1899-1900*. Sheffield: Sir W. C. Leng, nd. The contemporary photographs in this volume supply visual details of the city and battle areas of the siege.
- 1215 Terblanche, Annette. *Emily Hobhouse*. Johannesburg: Afrikaanse persboekhandel, 1948. Terblanche discusses Hobhouse's challenge to the treatment of Boer women and children in the concentration camps run by the British authorities in South Africa.
- 1216 Theal, G. McCall. *Catalogue of Books and Pamphlets Relating to Africa*. Cape Town: Maskew Miller, 1912. Theal's bibliography is extensive, if quite outdated, including some 2,000 items.
- 1217 Themaat, H. Ver Loren van. *Twee Jaren in den Boerenoorlog*. [Two Years in the Boer War.] Haarlem: Willink & Zoon, 1903. Provides a personal narrative of wartime experiences.
- 1218 Thomas, Anthony. *Rhodes*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1996. Thomas writes well. He admires but is quite critical of Rhodes. His account of Rhodes' involvement in the origins of the war is detailed and insightful.
- 1219 Thomas, C. H. *Origin of the Anglo-Boer War Revealed; The Conspiracy of the 19th Century Unmasked*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1900. Offers some background regarding the war but is not very convincing.
- 1220 Thomas, James Brown. *Sir Redvers Buller in the Post-Cardwellian Army: A Study of the Rise and Fall of a Military Reputation*. Ph. D. Dissertation, Texas A&M University, 1993. Thomas attempts to assess Buller's successes and failures and to determine whether his reputation

for incompetence is justified.

- 1221 Thompson, C. W., Campbell, N.D.H., Whetherly, W. S., and J.E.D. Holland. *Seventh (Princess Royal's) Dragoon Guards. The Story of the Regiment/ With the Regiment in South Africa*. Liverpool: Daily Post Printers, 1913. This volume is two quite separate accounts—a general history of the regiment and a specific description of its experiences in the Boer War.
- 1222 Thompson, L. M. "Great Britain and the Afrikaner Republics." In *The Oxford History of South Africa*. 2 Vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1971. Thompson supplies detailed background concerning the diplomatic relations between the governments that fought the Boer War.
- 1223 Thompson, L. M. "South Africa." In *The Historiography of the British Empire Commonwealth*. Edited by R. W. Winks. Durham: Duke University Press, 1966. Although his discussion of the war is quite limited, Thompson overview of South African historiography is excellent, and provides the basis for setting the war in the larger context of the empire.
- 1224 Thompson, L. M., Elphick, R. and I. Jarrick. *South African History Before 1900: A Select Bibliography of Articles*. Stanford: Hoover Institution Press, 1971. This bibliography, though hardly complete, is helpful with the first war (1880-81), the Jameson Raid, and the background to the second war.
- 1225 Thomson, Ada. *Memorials of Charles Dixon Kimber, Lieut. 48th Co. Imperial Yeomanry*. London: James Nisbet, 1902. Thomson includes descriptions of the Battle of Lindley, her brother's capture and escape, and his subsequent service, including the battle at Elandsfontein, until his death in July, 1901.
- 1226 Thomson, S. J. *The Transvaal Burgher Camps, South Africa*. Allahabad, India: Pioneer, 1904. Describes medical and sanitary conditions in the camps.
- 1227 Tilemann, Hero. *Tagebuchblätter eines deutschen Arztes aus dem Burenkriege*. [Excerpts from the Diary of a German Doctor in the Boer War.] München: Beck, 1910. Provides personal narrative of medical services in the war.

- 1228 Tipping, H. Avary. *The Story of the Royal Welsh Fusiliers*. London: Country Life, nd. Furnishes an account of campaigning in South Africa.
- 1229 Tobin, R. F. *A Memoir of the Late Lieutenant-Colonel Charles Dalton, R.A.M.C.* London: Bale & Danielsson, 1915. Tobin supplies a short account of a doctor in the war.
- 1230 Todd, Pamela and David Fordham. compilers. *Private Tucker's Boer War Diary: The Transvaal War of 1899, 1900, 1901, & 1902 With the Natal Field Force*. London: Elm Tree Books, 1980. Tucker was a private soldier whose diary begins with being called to the colors as a reservist and continues to his return home. The compilers have added a running commentary to tie Tucker's remarks into the overall situation and extensive illustrations producing a complete and useful study of the war.
- 1231 Tomasson, W. H. *With the Irregulars in the Transvaal and Zululand*. London: Remington, 1881. Includes a personal narrative of service in the first Boer War.
- 1232 Tremearne, A.J.N. *Some Austral-African Notes and Anecdotes*. London: J. Bale, Sons & Danielsson, 1913. Although much of the book is an African travelogue, Tremearne includes two chapters describing experiences with Australian forces in South Africa, particularly the hospitals where he spent several months recovering from wounds before he could be sent home.
- 1233 Treves, Frederick. "The South African Hospitals Commission." *Nineteenth Century and After* 49 (1901): 396-405. Treves defends the medical services in South Africa because of a patriotic belief that revealing the truth would give comfort to the opponents of the war.
- 1234 Treves, Frederick. *The Tale of a Field Hospital*. London: Cassell, 1900. Treves, a distinguished surgeon, was a civilian consultant with the RAMC and attended Frederick Roberts at Colenso. This book is a defense of the RAMC and was written out of patriotic concern that critics of the war not be able to use reports of poor care for soldiers as ammunition against the conflict. Treves changed his tune quite dramatically in testimony given to government investigating bodies after the war.
- 1235 Trevor, Tudor G. *Forty Years in Africa*. London: Hurst and Blackett,

1932. Includes some personal anecdotes concerning the war and the people involved.

1235a Trew, Peter. *The Boer War Generals*. Thrupp Stroud: Sutton Publishing, 1999. Trew examines in detail the personalities and generalship of the three British commanders-in-chief and for the Boers, Botha De Wet and De La Rey. He shows how these men each influenced the course of the conflict.

1236 Trichardt, S. P. E. *Geschiedenis, werken en streven van S. P. E. Trichard, luitenant-kolonel der vroegere staats-artillerie Z. A. R.: door hemzelve beschreven*. [History, Achievements and Goals of S. P. E. Trichard, Lieutenant Colonel of the Original State Artillery of the S. A. R.: Told by Himself.] Edited by O. J. O. Ferreira. Pretoria: Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing, 1975. Provides a personal narrative by an officer in the most professional unit of the Boer army.

1237 Trombley, Stephen. *Sir Frederick Treves: The Extra-Ordinary Edwardian*. London: Routledge, 1989. Treves, a very well-documented surgeon, went to South Africa as a consultant to the RAMC. Trombley describes his experiences including details of medical problems in the war, and then the debate at home in which Treves was initially, out of patriotism, a defender of the RAMC and then a bitter critic.

1238 Troup, Freda. *South Africa: An Historical Introduction*. London: Erye Methuen, 1972. Troup provides a clear outline of the war and the full context of Southern African history in which to set it.

1239 Tullibardine, Marchioness of. *A Short History of the Black Watch (Royal Highlanders)*. London: Blackwood, 1907. Tullibardine's account of the Black Watch in South Africa is brief but does include some details of the campaign.

1240 Turton, Robert Bell. *The North Yorks Militia*. Leeds: Whitehead, 1907. Includes an account of building and manning a block house line near Vryburg and some campaigning at the end of the war.

1241 Twistleton, F. *With the New Zealanders at the Front*. Skipton: Edmondson, nd. Provides personal details of the experiences of a corporal during the war and offers some insight into attitudes of imperial forces.

1242 Unger, Frederick William. *With 'Bobs' and Kruger: Experiences and*

Observations of an American War Correspondent in the Field With Both Armies. Philadelphia: Henry T. Coates, 1901; rpt. 1975. Unger makes comparisons of the two forces in the war.

- 1243 United States. Adjutant General's Office. *Notes of Military Interest.* 2 Vols. (No. XXXVI–1901 and No. XXXVIII–1902.) Washington: Government Printing Office, 1901-02. These volumes include details and comments by U.S. military observers concerning strategies, tactics, and equipment used in the Boer War.
- 1244 United States. Adjutant General's Office. *Reports on Military Operations in South Africa and China.* Washington: Government Printing Office, 1901. Compilation of observations by American military attachés.
- 1245 United States. War Department. Office of the Chief of Staff. *Selected Translations Pertaining to the Boer War.* Washington: Government Printing Office, 1905. This volume includes translations of six essays written by French and German soldiers about lessons, especially tactical studies, learned from the Boer War.
- 1246 Vallentin, W. *Der Burenkrieg.* [The Boer War.] 2 Vols. Leipzig: Wald-Solingen Reinisches Verlagshaus, 1902-03. Well-illustrated survey of the war.
- 1247 Van Coller, H. P. *Generaal P. A. Cronjé.* [General P. A. Cronjé.] D. Phil. Dissertation, University of Pretoria, 1945. Van Coller has an account of the first (1880-81) and second (1899-1902) Boer Wars and Cronjé's involvement in each.
- 1248 Van Dalsen, J. "Die Hollander-korps tydens die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog." [The Dutch Corps During the Second War for Freedom.] *Historiese Studies* 4 (1943): 63-107. The Dutch, due to nationalistic sentiment, were particularly supportive of the Boers. Van Dalsen examines Dutch participation in South Africa.
- 1249 Van den Heever, C. M. *General J. B. M. Hertzog.* Johannesburg: A.P. Boekhandel, 1943. Van den Heever's book is a factually accurate account of Hertzog's career as first legal adviser to the Orange Free State military and then commando leader during the guerrilla phase of the war.
- 1250 Van der Hoogt, C. W. *The Story of the Boers: Narrated by Their Own Leaders.* Prepared Under the Authority of the South African

Republics. New York: Harper & Brothers, 1900. This volume is strongly pro-Boer and was intended to sway American public opinion. It is a revised version of *A Century of Injustice*.

- 1251 Van der Merwe, N. J. *Marthinus Theunis Steyn: 'n lewensbeskrywing*. [Marthinus Theunis Steyn: A Biography.] 2 Vols. Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1921. Steyn, president of the Orange Free State, was initially reluctant to go to war, but once involved he became one of the driving forces that kept the Boers going.
- 1251a van Hartesveldt, Fred R. *The Boer War*. Thrupp Stroud: Sutton Publishing, 2000. Provides a short introductory survey of the war.
- 1252 Van Jaarsveld, F. A. "The Anglo-Boer War and the Writings of Dr. W. J. Leyds." In *The Afrikaner's Interpretation of South African History*. Cape Town: Simondium, 1964. Van Jaarsveld sets the work of W. J. Leyds into the context of Afrikaner nationalism and explains Leyds' strong attack on the British. His essay is an excellent example of historiographical writing.
- 1253 Van Jaarsveld, F. A. *The Awakening of Afrikaner Nationalism, 1868-1881*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 1961. Van Jaarsveld shows the impact of British annexation on Afrikaner national sentiment and the origins of the first war. Because the continuation of such conflict led to the second war, his book is also valuable as background to it.
- 1254 Van Jaarsveld, F. A., A.P.J. van Rensburg, and W. A. Stals, eds. *Die Eerste Vryheidsoorlog: Van Verset en Geweld tot Skikking deur Onderhandel, 1877-1884*. [The First War for Freedom: From Passive Resistance to Force to Negotiations.] Pretoria: HAUM, 1980. Provides an anthology of scholarly essays concerning the first Boer War from origins through the peace settlement.
- 1255 Van Niekerk, L. E. *Dr. W. J. Leyds as gesant van die Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek*. [Dr. W. J. Leyds as Envoy of the South African Republic.] Pretoria: Staatsdrukker, 1980. Describes Leyds' efforts to win support for the Boer cause.
- 1256 Van Niekerk, M. "Adolf Schiel en die Duitse kommando." [Adolf Schiel and the German Commando.] *Archives Yearbook for South African History* Vol. 14, Part 2 (1951). Germans were particular prominent among foreigners who served with the Boer forces. Van Niekerk focuses particularly on Schiel but does describe the German unit as a

whole and in some detail.

- 1257 Van Oordt, J. F. *P. Kruger en de Opkomst der Zuid Afrikaansche Republiek*. Amsterdam: NP, 1898. The author, noticeably pro-Kruger, does provide details of the president's dealing with Rhodes and background regarding the Jameson Raid.
- 1258 Van Schoor, M.C.E. *Spotprente van de Anglo-Boereoorlog*. [Cartoons of the Anglo-Boer War.] Cape Town: Tafelberg, 1981. Includes caricatures and cartoons of the war from the Boer perspective.
- 1259 Van Schoor, M.C.E. and C. G. Coetzee. *Kampkinders, 1900-1902: 'n gedenkboek*. [Children of the Camps, 1900-1902. A Memorial Volume.] Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepublieke, 1982. Provides information concerning about the problems children faced because of the concentration camps during the war.
- 1260 Van Warmelo, Dietlof. *On Commando*. London: Methuen, 1902; rpt. 1977. Translation of *Mijn commando en Guerrilla Commando-Leven*. (Amsterdam: 1901.) Van Warmelo describes his experience in the Boer military from the beginning of the war through being captured in 1901. His memoir is detailed and insightful.
- 1261 Van Wyk, Johannes. *Die Mauser knal*. [The Crack of the Mauser.] Johannesburg: Perskor, 1971. Furnishes a personal narrative of experiences of the war.
- 1262 Van Zyl, M. C. *Die Protesbeweging van die Transvaalse Afrikaners*. [The Protest Movement of the Transvaal Afrikaners.] Pretoria: Academica, 1979. Van Zyl traces the development of Afrikaner unrest from the initial British annexation of the South African Republic to the outbreak of the war of 1880-81. His work is useful background for both the first and second wars.
- 1263 Veitch, E. Hardinge. *8th Battalion the Durham Light Infantry, 1793-1926*. Durham: J. H. Veitch & Sons, nd. Veitch includes a very brief account of service by 8th Battalion volunteers who served as a company in the 1st Battalion Durham Light Infantry. A volunteer service company was also dispatched but arrived only after peace was achieved.
- 1264 Verner, Willoughby. ed. *The Rifle Brigade Chronicle for 1900*. London: John Bale, Sons and Danielsson, 1901; 2nd ed. 1902. This volume in

the series has substantial amounts of information about the Boer War, especially the siege of Ladysmith.

- 1265 Verney, Ralph. *The Joyous Patriot: Correspondence of Ralph Verney, 1900-1916*. Edited by David Verney. London: Leo Cooper, 1989. Provides personal comment and narrative regarding the war in South Africa.
- 1266 Vernon, P. V. ed. *The Royal New South Wales Lancers, 1885-1960*. Sydney: Halstead Press, 1961. Includes a limited account of campaigning in South Africa.
- 1267 Vernon-Harcourt, F. C. *The Bible on the Battlefield*. London: Marshall Bros., 1903. Describes charitable work and proselytizing during the war.
- 1268 Vickers, Roy. *Lord Roberts: The Story of His Life*. London: Pearson, 1914. Vicker's clearly favors his subject, who he asserts should have had command in South Africa from the beginning. He praises Roberts for being charismatic, pragmatic, and willing not to cast blame when problems arose.
- 1269 Viljoen, Ben. *An Exiled General*. St. Louis: A. Noble, 1906. This volume is a mix of pre-war history of South Africa and the author's experiences a Boer general during the war. His reminiscences provide a more complete account of his military career.
- 1270 Viljoen, Ben. *Mijne Herinneringen uit den Anglo-Boeren Oorlog*. Amsterdam: Verslags, 1902. Translated as *My Reminiscences of the Anglo-Boer War*. London: Hood, Douglas, and Howard, 1902. Supplies Viljoen's personal narrative of his involvement as a soldier and commando leader during the war.
- 1271 Villebois-Mareuil, Count G. H. de. *War Notes: The Diary of Colonel de Villebois-Mareuil from November 24, 1899 to March 7, 1900*. Translated by Frederic Lees. London: A. & C. Black, 1901. Originally *Carnet de campagne du colonel de Villebois-Mareuil*. Paris: P. Ollendorff, 1901. Villebois-Mareuil was a French professional soldier who from a desire for action and sympathy for their cause volunteered to serve with the Boers. He ended up commanding a unit of foreign volunteers and providing military expertise for the sometimes resentful but amateurish Boer forces. He was killed during the fighting.

- 1272 Villebois-Mareuil, Georges de. *Le La Fayette de l'Afrique du Sud: Villebois-Mareuil*. [The Lafayette of South Africa: Villebois-Mareuil.] Monaco: Editions du Rocher, 1900. Gives an account of Villebois-Mareuil and the war in South Africa.
- 1273 Villiers, J. L. de. *Hoe ik ontsnapte. Verhaal van een merkwaardige ontsnapping van een Boer uit Engelsch-Indie*. [How I Escaped. The Story of a Remarkable Escape of a Boer Out of British India.] Amsterdam: Boekhandel voorheen Hoveker & Wormser, 1904. Villiers describe his adventures as a POW and escaping from the British.
- 1274 Vincent, Howard. "Lessons of the War: Personal Observations and Impressions of the Forces and Military Establishments Now in South Africa." *Journal of the Royal United Service Institute* 44 (1900): 605-662. A military observer provides an assessment of the tactics of the early part of the war.
- 1275 Vincent, Howard. "The Situation in South Africa: Further Personal Observations and Impressions." *Journal of the Royal United Service Institute* 46 (1902): 141-205. Vincent extends his comments, begun in an earlier article, to the end of the war.
- 1276 Vindex. *Cecil Rhodes: His Political Life and Speeches, 1881-1900*. London: Chapman and Hall, 1900. A large number of subjects is covered in this volume, but the background and political situation leading up to the Boer War are among them. The volume is important for its inclusion of Rhodes' speeches.
- 1277 Visagie, L. A. *Terug na kommando. Avonture van Willie Steyn en vier ander krygsgevangenes*. [The Return of a Commando. Adventures of Willie Steyn and Four Other Prisoners of War.] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1932. Provides a personal narrative of the war and experiences of prisoners of war.
- 1278 Visscher, Joh. *De ondergang van een wereld: historisch-oeconomische studie over de oorzaken van den Anglo-Boer Oorlog (1899-1902)*. [The Ruin of a World: A Historical-Economic Study of the Origins of the Anglo-Boer War.] Amsterdam: Soep, 1903. Analyzes the background of the war but tends to be pro-Boer.
- 1279 Vulliamy, C. E. *Outlanders: A Study of Imperial Expansion in South Africa, 1877-1902*. London: Jonathan Cape, 1938. Vulliamy picks

up the story of Anglo-Boer dispute in 1870 and follows the conflict through the first war and on through the Jameson Raid and the subsequent problems that produced the second war in 1899. His focus is the Uitlanders as a cause of tension, but he is also concerned with British fear of German ambitions in South Africa.

- 1280 Wade, A. G. *Counterspy*. London: Stanley Paul, 1938. Wade, who served with the 29th Company 9th Battalion Imperial Yeomanry, describes his experiences in the last 18 months of the war. His comments are mostly about life on campaign, but he does detail some skirmishes and one expedition in search of De Wet.
- 1281 Wade, E. K. *The Piper of Pax: The Life Story of Sir Robert Baden-Powell*. London: Pearson, 1924. Wade's account of Baden-Powell in South Africa is detailed but includes little comment pro or con.
- 1282 Walker, E. A. "Lord Milner and South Africa." *Proceedings of the British Academy* 28 (1942): 155-78. This essay, Walker's Raleigh Lecture, is a detailed overview of Milner's entire tenure as High Commissioner in South Africa.
- 1283 Walker, Eric A. *A History of South Africa*. London: Longmans, Green, 1928; rpt. 1935; 1940; 1947; 1957. A very good, if somewhat outdated, survey history that helps set the war in context.
- 1284 Walker, Eric A. "The Jameson Raid." *Cambridge Historical Journal* 6 (1940): 283-306. Walker's analysis of the Raid leads to the conclusion that the responsibility lies with those in South Africa and authorities in London really knew little before the very last minute.
- 1285 Walker, Eric A. *Lord de Villiers and His Times: South Africa, 1842-1914*. London: Constable, 1925. Walker's discussion of Cape Colony politics in this volume helps explain the political problems out of which the war grew.
- 1286 Walker, Eric A. *W. P. Schreiner: A South African*. London: Oxford University Press, 1937. Schreiner's role in Cape Colony politics and his influence in keeping the colony's Boer population from rebelling during the war is important background to the military effort. Walker provides thorough research and detailed analysis.
- 1287 Wallace, D. and F. D. Boyd. eds. *Report of the Work of the Edinburgh and East of Scotland South African Hospital*. Edinburgh: Oliver and

Boyd, 1901. Provides an account of the hospital at Norvals Pont.

- 1288 Wallace, Edgar. *Unofficial Despatches on the Boer War*. London: Hutchinson, nd. Wallace was a British correspondent and relates first hand details of the war through mid 1901, but he is very opinionated and nationalistic in point of view.
- 1289 Wallace, R. L. *The Australians at the Boer War*. Canberra: Australian War Memorial, 1976. Wallace describes Australians in the South African War. He notes that about 20,000 were involved, mostly as mounted infantry.
- 1290 Wallace, Robert L. *The Circumstances Surrounding the Siege of Elands River Post: a Boer War Study*. Wollstonecraft: N.S.W.: R.L. Wallace, 1992. Wallace examines the Battle of Elandslaagte and particularly the Australian participation in it.
- 1291 Wallis, J.P.R. *Fitz: The Story of Sir Percy Fitzpatrick*. London: Macmillan, 1955. Wallis' biography is a well-written account of the life of Fitzpatrick, who served on the Reform Committee during the Jameson Raid and whose career during the period is useful background of the study of the Boer War.
- 1292 Walters, John. *Aldershot Review*. London: Jarrold, 1970. Walters's study of the military facility at Aldershot includes a biographical sketch of Redvers Buller. Walters is extremely critical of Buller, repeatedly asserting that over indulgence in food and drink had dulled his senses and undermined him physically so that he was utterly incompetent to command in South Africa.
- 1293 *The War in South Africa, in the Light of Facts and History*. Madras: Higginbotham, 1900. This account is very strongly pro-British in bias.
- 1294 Warner, Philip. *Kitchener: The Man Behind the Legend*. New York: Atheneum, 1986. Warner includes many personal details about Kitchener and gives him very high marks for his performance in South Africa. Unfortunately, some of the praise is based on factual error, which makes it less convincing.
- 1295 Warwick, Peter. *Black People and the South African War, 1899-1902*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983. Warwick's scholarly but readable monograph makes clear that the logistical effort of the war on both sides would have been impossible without blacks as

sometimes forced, sometimes hired labor. He also makes clear that blacks fought on both sides, though more willingly with the British. He also discusses the war's impact on black society and indicates that blacks sometimes suffered and sometimes profited. It is an excellent piece of scholarship.

- 1296 Warwick, Peter. ed. *The South African War: The Anglo-Boer War 1899-1902*. Harlow, Essex: Longman, 1980. Warwick has put together a collection of seventeen excellent essays covering virtually all aspects of the war. His volume is an excellent source for the state of knowledge and interpretations of the war at the time of its publication.
- 1297 Waters, R. S. "An Incident of the South African War." *Army Quarterly* (Jan., 1938): 328-34. Waters gives a very detailed account of a small group of British mounted infantry that was besieged by 1,000 Boers near Winburg, August 24-26, 1900. The British held out and were rescued.
- 1298 Watkins, Owen Spencer. *Chaplains at the Front. Incidents in the Life of a Chaplain During the Boer War, 1899-1900*. London: Partridge, 1901. Provides details of conditions faced by soldiers during the South African campaign.
- 1299 Watkins, Yeardley J. *With the Inniskilling Dragoons: The Record of a Cavalry Regiment During the Boer War, 1899-1902*. London: Longmans, Green, 1904. This regimental history has details of cavalry action and life during the war.
- 1300 Watkins-Pitchford, Herbert. *Besieged in Ladysmith: A Letter to his Wife*. Pietermaritzburg: Shuter & Shooter, 1964. The author, a member of the volunteer force in the city, gives a real sense of the privations that were faced and the lack of knowledge of the outside world that the typical person had.
- 1301 Watson, J.N.P. *Through Fifteen Reigns: A Complete History of the Household Cavalry*. Staplehurst: Spellmount, 1997. Watson's account of the Boer War is brief but does contain a number of excerpts from eyewitness accounts.
- 1302 Watson, William. *The Siege Diary of William Watson*. Ladysmith: Ladysmith Historical Society, 1989. Although short, this publication does provide a primary source regarding the siege.

- 1303 Watteville, H. de *Lord Roberts*. London: Blackie & Son, 1938. Contains a brief account of Roberts' command in South Africa.
- 1304 Wauchope, A. G. *A Short History of the Black Watch (Royal Highlanders) 1725-1907. To Which is Added an Account of the Second Battalion in the South African War, 1899-1902*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons, 1908. Provides details of the Black Watch in South Africa, where the unit played a significant role in a number of battles.
- 1305 Wavell, Archibald. *Allenby: A Study in Greatness*. London: G. G. Harrap, 1940. Allenby served effectively under John French, and Wavell provides a good description of cavalry in action, especially at Kimberley and Bloemfontein in 1900. From January, 1901 to May, 1902, Allenby commanded an independent column. He was unusual in not losing status in such duty, but he never lost a convoy or suffered any reverse. Wavell's biography, thus, provides a thorough discussion of cavalry in much of the war, but he offers analysis only of Allenby's learning and performance.
- 1306 Weaver, Lawrence. *The Story of the Royal Scots (The Lothian Regiment). Formerly the First or Royal Regiment of Foot*. London: Country Life, 1915. Weaver's chapter concerning the Boer War is short, but includes details of the Royal Scots in combat at Paardeberg and other engagements.
- 1307 Webster, F.A.M. *The History of the Fifth Battalion the Bedfordshire and Hertfordshire Regiment (T.A.)*. London: Frederick Warne, 1930. Webster supplies some details of fighting at Winburg and Naauwpoort Nek in June and July of 1900, but his volume is most useful for his description of the difficult living conditions and sickness faced by British soldiers in South Africa.
- 1308 Weeber, E. J. *Op die natalse front (1 Oktober 1899-31 Mei 1900)*. [On the Natal Front (1 October 1899-31 Mei 1900).] Kaapstad: Nasionale Pers, 1940. Provides a South African's personal narrative of the Natal campaign to the capture of Johannesburg.
- 1309 Weeber, E. J. *Op die Transvaalse front, 1 Junie 1900-31 Oktober 1900*. [On the Transvaal Front, 1 June 1900-31 October 1900.] Bloemfontein: Nasionale Pers, 1942. Furnishes a Boer's detailed personal account of four months of the war.
- 1310 Weir, Charles. *The Boer War: A Diary of the Siege of Mafeking*.

Edinburgh: Spence and Phmister, 1900. Provides a personal narrative of the situation in Mafeking during the siege.

- 1311 Wessels, Andre. *Die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902: 'n oorsig van die militere verloop van die stryd*. [The Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902: A Summary of the Military Struggle.] Bloemfontein: Oorlog Museum van die Boererepublieke, 1991. Analysis of the campaigns in the Boer War.
- 1312 Wessels, Andre, Raath, A.W. G., and F. J. Jacobs. eds. *Egodokumente: persoonlike ervarings uit die Anglo-Boereoorlog 1899-1902*. [Autobiographies: Personal Experiences of the Anglo-Boer War 1899-1902.] Bloemfontein: Oorlogsmuseum van die Boererepublieke, 1993. The editors have compiled a number of personal accounts of the war.
- 1313 Westlake, Ray. *English and Welsh Infantry Regiments: An Illustrated Record of Service, 1662-1994*. Staplehurst: Spellmont, 1996. This volume is a convenient reference for identifying the regiments involved in particular battles and for details about their service and organization.
- 1314 Wetton, Thomas Charles. *With Rundle's Eighth Division in South Africa, Being a Volunteer's Experience with the Division, 1900-1902*. London: Henry J. Drane, nd. This personal narrative provides information about life in South Africa as well as cavalry campaigning.
- 1315 Whigham, H. J. "The Fighting With Methuen's Division: Belmont, Gras Pan and Modder River." *Scribner's Magazine* 27 (March, 1900): 259-72. Whigham's descriptions of the campaigning are clear, and although he is clearly pro-British, he is not uncritical.
- 1316 Whigham, H. J. "Magersfontein." *Scribner's Magazine* 27 (April, 1900): 469-82. Whigham describes the battle, and is mildly critical of Methuen. Neither his description nor his comments are unusual.
- 1317 Whitehorne, A. C. and Thomas O. Marden. *The History of the Welch Regiment*. Cardiff: Western Mail and Echo, 1932. Describes Welch units in the cavalry commanded by John French from late fall 1899 through the occupation of the Boer capitals and then duty on the garrison lines at the end of the conflict. Although useful for tactical details, the volume includes little comment on the overall situation.
- 1318 Wigmore, Lionel with Bruce Harding. eds. *They Dared Mightily*.

Canberra: Australian War Memorial, 1963; rpt. 1986. Sketches the biographies of Australians who won the Victoria and George Crosses.

- 1319 Wilde, R. H. "Joseph Chamberlain and the South African Republic, 1895-1899: A Study in the Formulation of Imperial Policy." *Archives Yearbook for South African History*. Vol 19, Part 1, (1956). Wilde's examination of the relationships between Chamberlain and British agents on the scene in South Africa led him to believe that those agents, especially Milner, manipulated the Colonial Secretary by controlling the information that went to London.
- 1320 Wilkinson, Frank. *Australia at the Front: A Colonial View of the Boer War*. London: John Long, 1901. Describes Australian troops in South Africa and helps make clear the importance of the imperial contribution to the war.
- 1321 Wilkinson, Spenser. *Lessons of the War Being Comments from Week to Week to the Relief of Ladysmith*. London: Constable, 1900. Wilkinson traces the course of the war and points out problems and solutions.
- 1322 Wilkinson, Spenser. *War and Policy: Essays by Spenser Wilkinson*. London: Constable, 1900. Wilkinson uses examples from the South African war to recommend political decisions about the military.
- 1323 Wilkinson-Latham, Christopher. *The Boer War*. London: Osprey, 1977. A volume in the Men-at-Arms series, this book is short and lavishly illustrated.
- 1324 Willan, Brian. *Sol Plaatje: A Biography*. London: Heinemann, 1984. Willan's thorough and well-written biography describes Plaatje's experiences in the siege of Mafeking and during the rest of the war. It also provides some insight into the relationship between the English and the black African population.
- 1325 Willan, Brian. ed. *Edward Ross: Diary of the Siege of Mafeking*. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 1980. Ross' diary includes a variety of firsthand details concerning the siege of Mafeking.
- 1326 Williams, Basil. *Botha, Smuts and South Africa*. London: Hodder and Stoughton for the English Universities Press, 1946. This short book includes a chapter outlining the roles of Botha and Smuts in the war. Beyond praise for their abilities, however, there is little comment.

- 1327 Williams, Basil. *Cecil Rhodes*. London: Constable, 1921. Although less biased than most of the early biographers of Rhodes, Williams emphasizes his contributions and downplays his flaws. He also denies that Chamberlain was in any way involved in the Raid.
- 1328 Williams, Basil. *Record of the Cape Mounted Riflemen*. London: Sir Joseph Causton & Sons, 1909. This volume includes a substantial account of the Boer War.
- 1329 Williams Basil and Erskine Childers. eds. *The H.A.C. in South Africa, A Record of the Services Rendered in the South African War by Members of the Honourable Artillery Company*. London: Smith Elder, 1903. Provides details of artillery in combat and the importance of guns in the efforts of the Royal Army.
- 1330 Williams, Charles. *The Life of Lieutenant-General Sir Henry Evelyn Wood, V.C.* London: Sampson Low, Marston, 1892. After the death of Colley during the first Boer War, Wood took command of British forces and became High Commissioner. Williams insists that Wood's conduct was unimpeachable and that problems were due to the insistence on peace by the government in London.
- 1331 Williams, Eric. ed. *The Book of Famous Escapes; a Chronicle of Escape in Many Wars, With Eighteen First-hand Accounts*. New York: Norton, 1953. Williams includes large extracts from the books by Winston Churchill and Aylmer Haldane concerning their escapes from the Boers. The book was published in England as *The Escapers*.
- 1332 Williams, Godfrey Trevelyan. *The Historical Records of the Eleventh Hussars, Prince Albert's Own*. London: George Newnes, 1908. Provides an account of a unit that fought in South Africa.
- 1333 Williams, Hugh and Frederick Charles Hicks. eds. *Selected Official Documents of the South African Republic and Great Britain: A Documentary Perspective of the Causes of the War in South Africa*. Philadelphia: American Academy of Political and Social Science, 1900. The editors include a number of key documents, such as the Transvaal ultimatum of 1899, concerning the war.
- 1334 Williams, Watkin W. *The Life of General Sir Charles Warren*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell, 1941. The author, Warren's grandson, includes extensive quotations from Warren's papers, providing first hand testimony about the war, particularly the Battle of Spion Kop. He

blames Buller for failing to give Warren due credit. Unfortunately, he is overly eager to deny criticism of his grandfather, especially regarding Spion Kop, where Warren had independent command and has been accused of being incompetent. The obvious bias leaves questions about the dependability of his work.

- 1335 Wilson, C. H. *The Relief of Ladysmith: The Artillery in Natal*. London: William Clowes, 1901. Provides details from the perspective of gunners concerning the efforts to raise the siege of Ladysmith.
- 1336 Wilson, C. H. "With the Artillery in Natal." *Journal of the United States Artillery* 15 (1901): 198-201. Wilson, a Royal Artillery officer, comments on the importance of artillery fire in several of the battles early in 1900. He thinks the British needed more weight of fire to destroy Boer positions, and he praises the Boers for their skill at concealing gun positions and use of the light "pom pom" guns.
- 1337 Wilson, David MacKay. *Behind the Scenes in the Transvaal*. London: Cassell, 1901. Wilson, a Transvaal burgher of English extraction and a government official for a time, supplies background regarding the problems between the British and the Boers. His tendency to blame the latter may have arisen from his being expelled from the country.
- 1338 Wilson, Herbert Wrigley. *After Pretoria, the Guerrilla War*. 2 Vols. London: Amalgamated Press, 1902. An extension of Wilson's work about the earlier part of the war, these volumes also provide detail and offer comment on the conduct of the campaign.
- 1339 Wilson, Herbert Wrigley. *With the Flag to Pretoria: A History of the Boer War*. 2 Vols. London: Harmsworth Brothers, 1900-01. Wilson's description of the war is full and complete, and although his sense of British nationalism shows, he is quite critical of the British Army. The problems he cites as causing the difficulties in South Africa are the lack of a general staff to do contingency planning, inadequate reserves (both quantity and quality), inferior artillery (both quality and quantity), and overly cautious commanders.
- 1340 Wilson, Lady Sarah. *South African Memories Social, Warlike & Sporting From Diaries Written at the Time*. London: Edward Arnold, 1909. Wilson was the aunt of Winston Churchill, and was in South Africa for the Jameson Raid and then was in Mafeking, where her husband was an officer, during the siege. She was also briefly held by the Boers when she attempted to get away before the siege was closed. Her

account of her adventures is colorful and provides some details of the situations she observed.

- 1341 Wilson, W. D. *Report on the Medical Arrangements in the South African War*. London: HMSO, 1904. This is the official report by the surgeon-general in South Africa, and it includes a variety of details and comments.
- 1342 Wilson, W. L. *England and the Transvaal*. London: Grosvenor Press, 1899. Wilson's examination of foreign relations is useful as background to the war of 1899-1900.
- 1343 Winkler, Henry R. "Joseph Chamberlain and the Jameson Raid." *American Historical Review* 54 (July, 1949): 841-49. Winkler analyzes Chamberlain's involvement in the raid.
- 1344 Wisser, John P. *The Second Boer War*. Kansas City: Hudson-Kimberley Publishing Co., 1901. This is a detailed and sometimes technical account of the first eighteen months of the war by an American military officer.
- 1345 "With the Boers around Mafeking 1899-1900." *Blackwood's Magazine* 171 (Jan., 1902): 16-27. The author, a medical officer, furnishes a personal narrative of the besiegers.
- 1346 "With Plumer to the Relief of Mafeking, by One of His Troopers." *Blackwood's Magazine* 168 (Dec., 1900): 804-16. Provides a personal narrative and details of the campaign.
- 1347 Witton, George. *Outlaw Trails: A Yankee Hobo Soldier of the Queen*. New York: Minton, Balch, 1929. Witten's account of being a British scout is histrionic and superficial.
- 1348 Witton, George. *Scapegoats of the Empire: The True Story of Breaker Morant's Bushveldt Carbineers*. Melbourne: D. W. Paterson, 1907; rpt. 1982. This is a subjective account of the Morant incident by one of the men jailed due to it. He claims the court martial was unfair. He does include long, if carefully selected, quotes from the trial proceedings, which have not been available in their original form.
- 1349 Wojcik, Carl. *Über den Krieg in Süd-Afrika*. [About the War in South Africa.] Wien: Seidel, 1900. Provides comment concerning the Boer War.

- 1350 Wolseley, Lord. *Letters of Lord and Lady Wolseley*. Edited by George Arthur. London: Heinemann, 1922. As commander in chief of the British army, Wolseley was involved in preparing the army for the Boer war and had some influence on decisions regarding its conduct. His comments in his letters are limited but worthwhile.
- 1351 Wood, A. A. *Natal Past and Present*. Ilfracombe: Arthur H. Stockwell, 1962. Wood presents the history of the Natal Mounted Police since 1874. The police served as part of British forces at various times and places during the Boer War, but Wood's coverage is not in depth.
- 1352 Wood, Clement. *The Man Who Killed Kitchener: The Life of Fritz Joubert Duquesne*. New York: Faro, 1932. Wood describes Duquesne's experiences and his outrage over the suffering of his nation and own family in the Boer War. He then asserts that Duquesne developed a hatred of the English and especially Kitchener and determined to kill the latter. Ultimately, he helped the Germans target the H.M.S. *Hampshire* in the sinking of which Kitchener died. Wood claims to have interviewed Duquesne, but otherwise offers no substantiation for his assertions. The book is histrionic and, frankly, not credible.
- 1353 Wood, Elliott. *Life and Adventure in Peace and War*. Edward Arnold, 1924. Wood offers the perspective of a member of the Royal Engineers, and was in South Africa for most of the period of the war. Initially he was in command of the Frontier Posts with his headquarters at De Aar. His assignment was to protect the railroad lines. He was subsequently responsible for water drilling projects and in February, 1900, became Lord Roberts' chief engineer, and provides an interesting account of sapping along the Modder River at Paardeberg. In 1901-02 he served under Kitchener, developing a system of blockhouses to ensure railroad security, extending his search for water to supply horses, and protecting supply convoys. Although he does not offer much analysis or comment, his description of engineering work provides a description of an aspect of the war not often portrayed.
- 1354 Wood, Evelyn. *Winnowed Memories*. London: Cassell, 1918. Although comments about South Africa are scatted through text and letters in this volume, there are observations about Spion Kop and other aspects of the war.
- 1355 Wood, Walter. *The Northumberland Fusiliers*. London: Grant Richards, 1901. This regimental history includes descriptions of the unit on

campaign and in action in South Africa.

- 1356 Wood, Walter. *The Rifle Brigade, 1800-1900*. London: Grant Richards, 1901. Provides some accounts of the Rifle Brigade units in South Africa.
- 1357 Woodhouse, C. M. "The Missing Telegrams and the Jameson Raid." *History Today* 12 Pt. 1 (June, 1962): 396-404; Pt. 2 (July, 1962): 506-14. Woodhouse, having uncovered some of the previously missing telegrams between Rhodes and his subordinates involving Chamberlain and the raid, concludes that the evidence supports the Colonial Secretary's denial of involvement.
- 1358 Woods, Frederick. ed. *Winston S. Churchill War Correspondent, 1895-1900*. New Rev. Ed. London: Brassey's, 1992. Woods includes all Churchill's dispatches for *The Morning Post*, from November 27, 1899 through July 25, 1900. These were the basis for Churchill's own books, but are printed here in their original form.
- 1359 Woollright, H. H. *Records of the Seventy-Seventh (East Middlesex) Regiment Now 2nd Battalion Duke of Cambridge's Own Middlesex Regiment*. Aldershot: Gale & Polden, 1907. Provides details of campaigning in South Africa.
- 1360 Wormser, J. A. *Drie en zestig jaren in dienst der vrijheid. De levens geschiedenis van General Joubert*. [Sixty-Three Years in the Service of Freedom. The Vital History of General Joubert.] Amsterdam: Hoveker, nd. Traces the biography of a man particularly respected by the Boers. He was the hero of Majuba and preceded Louis Botha as the senior Boer commander in the war of 1899-1902.
- 1361 Worsfold, W. B. *Lord Milner's Work in South Africa From Its Commencement in 1897 to the Peace of Vereeniging in 1902*. London: John Murray, 1906. The author is quite sympathetic to Milner. He denounces South African politicians as unreasonable and the British Liberal Party for failing to defend British interests.
- 1362 Worthington, Larry. *The Spur and the Sprocket: The Story of the Royal Canadian Dragoons*. Kitchener: Reeve Press, 1967. Includes a chapter about the dragoons in South Africa.
- 1363 Wrench, J.E.L. *Alfred Lord Milner: The Man of No Illusions, 1854-1925*. London: Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1958. This popular biography is

clearly pro-Milner and empire.

- 1364 Wulfsohn, L. "Elands River: A Siege Which Possibly Changed the Course of History in South Africa." *Military History Journal* 6 (June, 1984): 106-08. The siege in question was of a position near Pretoria and shortly after the city fell to the British. A small Royal Army unit—mostly Australians and New Zealanders—held out for almost two weeks until help came. Boer success would have been embarrassing and represented a logistical problem, but would not have been likely to change the overall outcome significantly.
- 1365 Wulfsohn, Lionel. *Rustenburg at War: The Story of Rustenburg and Its Citizens in the First and Second Anglo-Boer Wars*. Rustenburg: L. M. Wulfsohn, 1987; rpt. 1992. Wulfson's examines the impact of war on a South African town, an interesting mix of military and local history.
- 1366 Wyllly, H. C. *History of the King's Own Yorkshire Light Infantry*. 3 Vols. London: Percy Lund, Humphries, nd. Wyllly provides a detailed description of the process of getting volunteers from military units to go to South Africa and of British tactics in the war.
- 1367 Wyllly, H. C. *History of the Manchester Regiment (Late the 63rd and 96th Foot)*. 2 Vols. London: Forester Groom, 1923-25. Follows Manchester units in the South African campaigns.
- 1368 Wyllly, H. C. *A Short History of the Cameronians*. 2nd ed. Aldershot: Gale & Polden, 1939. Wyllly includes some details particularly about Spion Kop and the relief of Ladysmith, but his focus on battalions results in information being so scattered that his book is difficult to use.
- 1369 Wyndham Malet, Guilbert E. *The History of 'J' Battery Royal Horse Artillery (Formerly A Troop, Madras Horse Artillery) Compiled from Private and Official Records*. London: Charles Good, nd. Supplies some details of artillery in action during the war.
- 1370 Yardley, J. Watkins. *With the Inniskilling Dragoons: The Record of a Cavalry Regiment During the Boer War, 1899-1902*. London: Longmans, Green, 1904. Provides details of the unit in the war and illustrates the significance of mobility in the conflict.
- 1371 Young, Filson. *The Relief of Mafeking; How It Was Accomplished by Mahon's Flying Column with an Account of Some Earlier Episodes in*

the Boer War of 1899-1900. London: Methuen, 1900. Young, a *Manchester Guardian* correspondent, traces the war from its beginnings through the relief of Mafeking in 1900. His account is personal and provides eyewitness details.

- 1372 Young, P. J. *Boot and Saddle: A Narrative Record of the Cape Regiment, the British Cape Mounted Riflemen, the Frontier Armed Mounted Police and the Colonial Cape Mounted Riflemen*. Cape Town: Maskew Miller, 1955. South African police units helped augment the initially inadequate British mounted forces. Young provides details of such police forces in the war.
- 1373 Younghusband, Francis. *South Africa of To-day*. London: Macmillan, 1899. Younghusband was a correspondent for *The Times* and provides firsthand accounts of the Jameson Raid. The paper sent him back to survey the situation in the years before the war and his account of this mission is good background concerning the outbreak of hostilities in 1899.
- 1374 Younghusband, George. *Forty Years a Soldier*. London: Jenkins, 1923. Describes the 3rd Imperial Yeomanry on campaign, but offers little analysis of the strategy or tactics of the war.
- 1375 Younghusband, George. *A Soldier's Memories in Peace and War*. New Edition. New York: E. P. Dutton, 1925. Younghusband, who commanded the 3rd Imperial Yeomanry, wrote a very episodic account of his experiences in South Africa, but he included some useful details of combat and observations of people on both sides.
- 1376 Zepper, G. L. *De Zuid-Afrikaansche oorlog; historisch gedenkboek*. [The South African War; Memorial Volume.] Leiden: Sijhoff, nd. Zepper's is a pictorial work with illustrations of the war.
- 1377 Zietlre, C. *Die Artillerie im Südafrikanischen Krieg*. [Artillery in the South African War.] Berlin: Militarische Lielfrogen, 1920. Analyzes artillery tactics in the war.
- 1378 Zyl, Paul Hendrik Stefanus van. *Die helde-album, verhaal en foto's van aanvoerders en helde uit ons vryheidstryd*. [Album of Heroes, The Story of Our Struggle for Freedom in Photographs of Leaders and Heroes.] Johannesburg: Afrikaanse pers-boekhandel, 1944. Zyl includes pictures of many of the significant figures of the Boer War.

Index

Numbers shown in regular type refer to entry numbers in the annotated bibliography. Numbers in bold type refer to pages in the historiographical essay. Numerals have been treated as if they were spelled out. Names with prefixes, such as van and de, have been alphabetized according to customary usage. Thus De Wet, for instance, appears under "D."

Aardrykskundige involede in die stryd tussen
Brittanje en die Boererepublieke met
besondere verwysing na die Tweede
Vryheidsoorlog, 5

Abadie, Eustace Henry Egremont, 1

Abbott, J.H.M., 2-3

Abercrombie, H. R., 1127

*Abraham Esau's War: A Black South African
War in the Cape*, 908

*Absent-Minded War Being Some Reflections on
Our Reverses and the Causes which Have
Led to Them by a British Staff Officer*, An.
147

Ackerman, W. H., 4

Ackermann, P.C.M., 5

*Administration of Imperialism: Joseph
Chamberlain at the Colonial Office*, The,
711

"Adolf Schiel en die Duitse kommando," 1256

"Advance on Pretoria," 330

*Adventures and Letters of Richard Harding
Davis*, 301

Adventures of a Boer Family, 991, 14

Africa and the Victorians, 1064

African Portraits, 245

*Africanders: A Century of Dutch English Feud
in South Africa*, The, 618

Afrikaner Bond, 294, **2, 20**

Afrikaner Bond, The, 294

Afrikaners, The, 394

Afrikanischer Totentanz, 372

After Pretoria, the Guerrilla War, 1338

*Against These Three: A Biography of Paul
Kruger, Cecil Rhodes, and Lobengula Last
King of the Matabele*, 246

"Agrarian Class Struggle and the South African
War," 702

Airlie, David, 9th Earl of, 6

Aitken, W. Francis, 7

*Alarms and Excursions: Reminiscences of a
Soldier*, 142

Alasdair Murray, 1900, 900

Aldershot Review, 1292

Alfred Fripp, 1059

*Alfred Lord Milner: The Man of No Illusions.
1854-1925*, 1363

*All Sir Garnet: A Life of Field-Marshal Lord
Wolseley*, 734

"All You Soldiers Are What We Call Pro-Boer":
The Military Critique of the South African
War," 1206

Allen, Vivien, 8

Allenby, 431

Allenby: A Study in Greatness, 1305

Allenby, Edmund, 431, 1103, 1305

Allenby of Armageddon, 1103

Almost in Confidence, 54

Alt, Brian, 9

Altham, E. A., 10

*Amateur Atkins on Active Service with the
Seaforths' First Volunteer Company in South
Africa*, 268

- American and Canadian Doctoral Dissertations and Master's Theses on Africa, 1886-1974*, 1150
- American Diplomacy and the Boer War*, 385
- American Sympathy in the Boer War*, 701
- American with Lord Roberts, An*, 1028
- Amery, Julian, 439
- Amery, L. S., 11-12, **12**, **41**
- Ander Oorlog: Die Stryd on die Openbare Mening in Engeland gedurende die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, Die*, 706
- Anderson, Ken, 13
- Anecdotes of Soldiers in Peace and War*, 1138
- Angels on Horseback*, 282
- Anglais et Boers: Histoire anecdotique de la Guerre au pays de l'or*, 429
- Anglesey, Marquess of., 14
- Anglican Church in South Africa, The*, 594
- Anglo-Boer Conflict: Its History and Causes, The*, 639
- Anglo-Boer War: A Collection of Contemporary Documents*, 660
- "Anglo-Boer War and the Writings of Dr. W. J. Leyds, The," 1252
- Anglo-Boer War Diary of Herbert Gwynne Howell*, 623
- Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902: A Pictorial History, The*, 838
- Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902: Illustrated Postcards & Covers*, 202
- Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902: Mounting Tension, and the Outbreak of Hostilities as Reflected in Overseas Magazine Contributions Published January-December 1899, The*, 685
- Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902, on Film, The*, 313
- Anglo-Boer War: The Road to Infamy, 1899-1900, The*, 250, **14**
- Anglo-Boer War: Why Was It Fought? Who Was Responsible?, The*, 195
- Anglo-Boer Wars: The British and the Afrikaners, 1815-1902, The*, 68
- Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-1902: 'n oorsig van die militere verloop van die stryd*, 1311
- Annals of an Active Life*, 798
- Anti-Commando*, 1099
- Anti-War Sentiment in Britain During the Boer War*, 26
- Anzacs at War*, 718
- Appelgryn, M. S., 15
- Appleton, Francis M., 16
- Appleton, Lewis, 17
- Archibald, James F. J., 18
- archival sources, **15-16**
- Armstrong, H. C., 19
- Armstrong, Henrietta E. C., 20
- Army in My Time, The*, 423
- Army Medical System: What It Is, Is Not, and Ought to Be, The*, 937
- "Army Reform From a Battalion Point of View," 968
- Army Remount Department-Report of a Court of Enquiry on the Administration of the Army Remount Department Since Jan. 1899. By Order of the Commander-in-Chief Dated 20th Feb. 1902*, 476
- Army Remount Service*, 476 **33**
- "Army Shooting and Its Improvements," 635
- Arnold-Forster, H. O., 21
- Arnoux, Jules, 22
- Arrogant Armies: Great Military Disasters and the Generals Behind Them*, 970
- Arthur, G., 829
- Arthur, George, 23-24
- Artillerie im Sudafricanischen Krieg, Die*, 1377
- Artists and Illustrators of the Anglo-Boer War*, 517
- Arts Under Arms*, 398
- Ashe, E. O., 25
- Ashman, Patricia Ann Shaw, 26
- Aston, P. E., 27, **5**
- At Pretoria: The Capture of the Boer Capitals and the Hoisting of the Flag at Pretoria*, 1029
- Atkins, J. B., 28
- Atkinson, C. T., 29
- Atthill, A.W.M., 30
- Au Transvaal et dan le Sud-Africain avec les Attachés Militaires*, 1037
- Auld, John William, 31
- Aus dem Freiheitskampfe der Buren-Die Deutschen Korps*, 1094
- Aus unserem kriegsleben in Südwest-Afrika. Erlebnisse und erfahrungen*, 1109
- Autobiography*, 1078
- Australia at the Front: A Colonial View of the Boer War*, 1320
- Australian Commonwealth Horse*, 922
- Australian troops*, 69, 153, 165, 390-91, 574, 718, 744, 771, 870, 902, 922, 1040, 1208, 1226, 1289-90, 1318, 1320
- Australians at the Boer War, The*, 1289
- Australians in Nine Wars, The*, 391
- Australians in War: With the Australian Regiment from Melbourne to Bloemfontein*, 1040
- Autobiography of a Military Scapegoat, Being a History of the 1st Norfolk Volunteers Active Service Co., The*, 159
- Autobiography of John Hays Hammond, The*, 556
- Avant, Deborah D., 32

- Average Observer, An, 33
Awakening of Afrikaner Nationalism, 1868-1881. The, 1253
 Ayde, John, 34
 Aylward, Alfred, 35
 Ayrshire Volunteers, 779

 Backeberg, H.E.W., 36
Background to Bitterness: The Story of South Africa, 1652-1954, 442
 Backhouse, J. B., 37
 Badenhorst, Alida, 38, 721
Baden-Powell, 688
Baden-Powell, 1051
Baden-Powell at Mafeking, 524
 Baden-Powell, B. F. S., 39
Baden-Powell of Mafeking, 403
 Baden-Powell, R.S.S., 7, 40-41, 84, 133-34, 403, 433, 591, 645, 652, 688, 1081, 1281, 15, 17-19, 38
Baden-Powell: The Hero of Mafeking, 7
Baden-Powell: The Two Lives of a Hero, 591
 Badsey, S. D., 42
 Bagot, Doria, 43
 Baillie, F. D., 44, 17
 Baird, W., 45
 Baker, Herbert, 46
 Bakkes, C. M., 47-48
 Balfour, Arthur, 343
 Ballard, C. R., 49
 Balme, Jennifer Hobhouse, 50
Banjo of the Bush: The Work, Life, and Times of A. B. Patterson, The, 1134
Bannelinge oor die oseaan: boerekrygsgevangenes 1899-1901, 526
 Barbary, James, 51
 Barclay, Glen St. J., 52
 Barker, A. J., 53
 Barlow, Arthur G., 54
 Barlow, Tafford B., 55
 Barnard, C.J., 56-61
 Barnato, Barney, 743, 3
 Barnes, James, 62-65
Barney Barnato: From Whitechapel Clown to Diamond King, 743
 Barolongs, 19
 Barrett, C. R. B., 66
 Barrow, George, 67
 Barthorp, Michael, 68
 Barton, G. B., 69
 Baschet, Eric, 70
 Bateman, Philip, 71
 Batten, A.G.M., 72
 Battersby, Henry Francis Prevost, 73
Battle of Magersfontein, 11th December, 1899. The, 363
Battle of Majuba Hill, 1035

Battle of Spion Kop, The, 1036
Battles of the Boer War, 965, 14
 Batts, H. J., 74
 Baty, Thomas, 75
 Baylen, J. O., 76
 Baynes, Arthur Hamilton, 77
 Baynes, John, 78
 Beadon, R. H., 414
 Bean, Lucy, 79
 Bechuanaland, 3, 17
 Beck, Henry Houghton, 80
 Beckerling, Joan Letitia, 81
 Beevor, W., 82
 Begbie, Harold, 83-84
 Beheer, behandeling en lewe van die krygsgevangenes gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1899-190, Die, 943
Behind the Scenes in Many Wars, 795
Behind the Scenes in the Transvaal, 1337
 Beit, Alfred, 3, 7, 10
 Beleg van Mafeking tydens die Anglo-Boereoorlog, Die, 124
 Belfield, Eversley, 85
 Bell, F. W., 86
 Bell, Moberly E., 87
 Bell, W. H. Somerset, 88
 Bellairs, Blanche, 89
 Belmont, Battle of, 965, 1315, 25
 Benbow, Colin H., 90
 Bengough, H. M., 91
 Bennett, Ernest N., 92
 Benyon, John, 93
Beroemde Suid-Afrikaanse Krygsmanne, 1118
 Berry, R. P., 94-95
Besieged by the Boers, 25
Besieged in Ladysmith: A Letter to His Wife, 1300
Besieged in the Transvaal: The Defense of Standerton, 882
Besieged with B-P. A Full and Complete Record of the Siege of Mafeking, 918
 Bester, Ron, 96
 Bethell, L. A., 97
 "Betrekkings Tussen die Suid-Afrikaanse republiek en Duitsland tot na die Jameson-Inval (1852-1896), Die," 36
 Bezuidenhout, G. E., 98
Bible on the Battlefield, The, 565
 Biet, Alfred, 104
 Billington, R.C.A., 99
Biograph in Battle, The, 329
 Birch, James H., 100
 Birdwood, W. R., 101
 Birkin, R. L., 102
Bittereinders, 155
Bittereinders, Junie 1901-Mei 1902, Die, 528
Black People and the South African War, 1295

Black People in the Boer Republics During and in the Aftermath of the South African War of 1899-1902, 877

Black Watch, The, 621

Blackburn, Douglas, 103

Blacker, Irwin, 1045

blacks, 182, 186, 318, 424, 702-03, 737, 877, 894, 908-11, 926, 985-86, 1152, 1295, 1324, 2, 5, 10, 15, 19, 37-39, 41

"Blainey and the Jameson Raid: The Debate Renewed," 850

Blainey, G., 104, 7

Blake, J. Y. F., 105

Blanch, H. J., 106

Bleibtreu, Karl, 107

Bleloch, W., 108

Blerk, J. A. van, 109

blockhouses, 135, 424, 34, 42

Bloemfontein, 16, 22

Bloemfontein, Battle of, 221, 1030, 1040, 1305

Bloemfontein, Conference of, 495, 497, 7, 10, 17

Blood, Bindon, 110

Blue Bonnets, Boers and Biscuits: The Diary of Private William Fessey D.C.M. Serving in the King's Own Scottish Borderers During the Boer War, 388

Blue Shirt and Khaki, 17

Boas, Guy, 111

Bobs-Kipling's General: The Life of Field-Marshal Earl Roberts of Kandahar, VC., 564

Boer and Britisher in South Africa, 919

Boer Fight for Freedom, The, 307

Boer Prisoners of War in Bermuda, 90

Boer Rifles and Carbines of the Anglo-Boer War, 96

"Boer, the British and the Bantu: The Causes and Results of the Boer War, 1899-1902," 515

"Boer View of Buller: New Evidence, The," 344
Boer War: A Diary of the Siege of Mafeking, The, 1310

Boer War: A Study in Cowardice and Courage, The, 1132, 32

Boer War: Diary of Captain Eyre Lloyd, 755

Boer War Diary of Sol T. Plaatje: An African at Mafeking, The, 985

Boer War Generals, The, 1235a

Boer War Letters, 599

Boer War, 1899, 156

Boer War, 1899-1900. Organization of the British and Boer Forces, 157

"Boer War, 1899-1902, The," 1131

Boer War Memories: Personal Experiences of the Early Stages of the War, 291

Boer War of 1880-81, 55, 89, 103, 106, 114-15, 127, 139, 214, 216, 228, 276-77, 316, 355, 360, 362, 382, 735, 761, 767, 827, 854, 882, 983, 1017, 1035, 1125

Boer War: Official Dispatches from Generals De La Rey, Smuts and Others, The, 112

Boer War: Open Letter to Dr. Conan Doyle, 1061

Boer War Operations in South Africa 1899-1901: Extracts from the Reports of Captain S. L'H. Slocum and Captain Carl Reichmann., 1156

Boer War Reminiscences of Trooper Robert Percy Rooke, 1073

Boer War, The, 52

Boer War. The, 85

Boer War, The, 580

Boer War, The, 613, 613

Boer War, The, 667

Boer War, The, 684

Boer War, The, 823

Boer War, The, 954, 13

Boer War, The, 1251a

Boer War, The, 1323

Boer War: The War Correspondents, The, 1147

Boerenoorlog in oude ansichten, De, 310
Boere-offisiere van die Tweede Vryheids-oorlog, 805

Boers and the British, The, 112

Boers in Europe, The, 935

"Boers' Worst Enemies., 153

Boguslawski, A. von, 113

Bond, Brian, 114-16

Bonham-Carter, Victor, 117

Bonnal, H., 118

Book of Famous Escapes, The, 1331

Boot and Saddle: A Narrative Record of the Cape Regiment, the British Cape Mounted Riflemen, the Frontier Armed Mounted Police and the Colonial Cape Mounted Riflemen, 1372

Border Regiment in South Africa, 1899-1902, 119

Bordie, J., 120

Boscawen-Wright, C., 121

Bosman, Casp, 122

Botha, C. L., 126

Botha, J. P., 123

Botha, Johannes Petrus, 124

Botha, Louis, 56-58, 61, 258, 267, 369, 841, 885, 1326, 25-26, 38, 40-42

Botha, P. R., 125

Botha, Paul M., 126

Botha, Smuts and South Africa, 1326

Bousfield, H. B., 127

- Bouwer, Ben, 739
 Bowlby, Anthony A., 128
Boy-Man—The Life of Lord Baden-Powell, The, 652
 Boyd, F. E., 1287
 Bradlow, Edna, 129
 Brand, Henricus, 1115
 Brandwater Basin, 33
Breaker Morant: A Horseman Who Made History, 289
Breaker Morant and the Bushveldt Carbineers, 298
 "'Breaker' Morant in Fact, Fiction, and Film," 160
Breaker: The Novel Behind Breaker Morant, The, 320
 Brandt, Johanna, 130-31
 Bredell, H. C., 132
 Bremmer Smith, R. J., 133
 Brendon, Piers, 134
 Brett, G. A., 135
 Brett-Smith, Richard, 136
 Breytenbach, J. H., 137-41, 10, 13, 14
Brian Alt, 9
 Briand, Johannes Henricus, 55
 Bridges, Tom, 142
 Bridgland, Tony, 143
Briewe uit ou Transvaal, 616
 Briggs, Lady, 144
 Brink, J. N., 145
Britain and Germany in Africa: Imperial Rivalry and Colonial Rule, 183
Britain and the Boers, 146
Britain and the Boers. Who Is Responsible for the War In South Africa?, 17
 British Army, Transport Service, 78, 253
 British Army, Units of
 Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders, 352
 Bedfordshire and Hertfordshire Regiment, 1307
 Black Watch, 621, 1239, 1304
 Border Regiment, 119, 1145
 Cameronians (Scottish Rifles), 266, 1368
 Cape Field Artillery, 945
 Cape Mounted Riflemen, 762, 1328
 Cheshire Yeomanry, 261
 City Imperial Volunteers, 9, 229, 287, 754, 793, 978
 Coldstream Guards, 547, 755
 Connaught Rangers, 665
 Devon Yeomanry, 417
 Devonshire Regiment, 644
 Dorset Imperial Yeomanry, 426
 Duke of Lancaster's Own Yeomanry Cavalry, 662
 Durban Light Infantry, 821, 930, 1263
 East Kent Regiment, 37
 East Surrey Regiment, 725, 962
 East Surry Volunteers, 437
 8th Division, 875, 1314
 8th Hussars, 893
 18th Hussars, 177, 812
 11th Hussars, 136, 1332
 Essex Regiment, 181
 Fife and Forfar Yeomanry, 452, 1204
 Fifth Dragoon Guards, 469
 1st Dragoons, 803
 1st Grenadier Guards, 753
 1st Wiltshire Imperial Yeomanry, 963
 14th Hussars, 551
 Gordon Highlanders, 434, 468, 863
 Green Howards, 387, 1001
 Grenadier Guards, 900
 Guards' Brigade, 473, 769
 Highland Brigade, 45, 247, 883, 24-25
 Imperial Light Horse, 445
 Imperial Yeomanry, 102, 264-65, 398, 448, 479, 576, 622, 716, 1041, 1050, 1059, 1066, 1137, 1280
 Inniskilling Dragoons, 1299, 1370
 King's Guards, 94
 King's Own Scottish Borderers, 388
 King's Royal Irish Hussars, 401
 King's Royal Rifle Corps, 283, 1039
 Lancashire Fusiliers, 861, 1038, 1168
 Leicester Militia, 176
 Leinster Regiment, 774
 Lovat Scouts, 749
 Loyal North Lancashire Regiment, 392
 Lumsden's Horse, 961
 Manchester Regiment, 1367
 Monmouthshire Regiment (2nd Battn.), 135
 Naval Brigade, 279-80
 New Zealand Rough Riders, 888
 9th Division, 255
 9th Lancers, 256
 Norfolk Regiment, 972
 Norfolk Volunteers, 159
 Norfolk Yeomanry Cavalry, 573
 North Yorks Militia, 1240
 Northumberland and Durham Yeomanry, 1180
 Northumberland Fusiliers, 1355
 Paget's Horse, 1077
 Prince of Wales' Volunteers, 1146
 Oxfordshire Imperial Yeomanry, 964
 Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 872-73
 Queen's Own Cameron Highlanders (1st Battn.), 200
 Queen's Own Hussars, 1077
 Queen's Royal West Surrey Regiment, 302-03
 Rifle Brigade, 158, 852-53, 883, 1264, 1356

- Rimington's Scouts, 975
 Royal Army Service Corps, 414, 1053
 Royal Australian Artillery, 284
 Royal Dragoons, 29
 Royal Dublin Fusiliers, 1068
 Royal Engineers, 365, 926, 1353
 Royal Field Artillery, 543
 Royal Garrison Artillery, 824, 1136
 Royal Horse Artillery, 308, 1369
 Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers, 1090
 Royal Irish Hussars, 903
 Royal Irish Rifles, 730
 Royal New South Wales Lancers, 1266
 Royal Regiment of Artillery, 95, 197
 Royal Scots, 1306
 Royal Scots Fusiliers, 163, 779
 Royal Sussex Regiment, 348
 Royal Welch Fusiliers, 217, 1098
 St. John's Ambulance Brigade, 1148
 Scottish Rifle Volunteers, 1159
 Scots Guards, 288, 466
 Seaforth Highlanders, 268, 300
 7th Dragoon Guards, 1221
 7th Imperial Yeomanry, 819
 7th Mounted Infantry, 643
 17th Lancers, 413, 958
 Sherwood Foresters, 453
 16th/5th Lancers, 957
 6th Division, 67, 221
 South African Light Horse, 848
 South Wales Borderers, 135, 1129
 Strathcona's Horse, 815, 1073
 3rd Imperial Yeomanry, 1374, 1375
 13th Hussars, 66
 12th Lancers, 6, 1190
 23rd London Regiment, 409
 Warwickshire Yeomanry, 627
 Welsh Regiment, 1317
 York and Lancaster Regiment, 675
 Yorkshire Light Infantry, 1366
 "British at Pretoria, The," 62
 British Casualties of the First Boer War
 1880-1881, 767
British Generalship in the Twentieth Century,
 1153
*British Military Intelligence: The Development
 of a Modern Intelligence Organization*, 386
 British Officer, A, 147
British Policy Towards the Boers, 240
British Pro-Boers, 1877-1902, The, 296
 British Red Cross, 148
British Supremacy in South Africa, 1899-1907,
 737
Briton and Boer, 161
*Briton and Boer in South Africa; The Story of
 England's War With the Brave Boers and the
 Eventful History of South Africa*, 549
 Brits, J. P., 359
*Britse deurbraak aan die Benede-Tugela op
 Majubadag 1900, Die*, 47
 Bron, Alice, 149
 Bronkerspruit, Battle of, 586, 812
 Brooke-Hunt, Violet, 150
 Broughton, E. C., 151
 Brown, Harold, 152
 Brown, John, 153
 Brown, Stanley M., 154
 Bruggen, J.R.L. van, 155
 Brunker, H.M. E., 156-57
Brunt of the War and Where It Fell, The, 600
 Bryant, Arthur, 158
 Bryant, H. J., 159
 Bryant, Hallman B., 160
 Bryce, James, 161-62, 5
 Buchan, John, 163
 Buel, J. W., 164
 Bufton, John, 165
 Bull, P. B., 166
*Buller: A Scapegoat? A Life of General Sir
 Redvers Buller*, 1000
 "Buller in South Africa," 1211
 Buller, Redvers, 12, 24, 33, 167, 175, 187, 237-
 38, 332, 344, 349, 351, 644, 657, 697, 727,
 777, 834, 847-48, 860, 905, 926, 1000,
 1030, 1036, 1048, 1153, 1211-12, 1220,
 1292, 1334, 12-16, 21-23, 25-31, 42
Buller's Campaign, 697
Buller's Campaign, 1212, 14
 "Buller's March From Ladysmith to Newcastle,"
 351
 Bulpin, T. V., 168
 Bunce, C. T., 169
*Burden of Proof: Some Aspects of Sir Redvers
 Buller's Work During His Recent Campaign
 in South Africa Considered From an
 Ordinary Commonsense Standpoint, The*, 33
 Burdett-Coutts, W. L., 170
Burenkrieg, Der, 1246
Burenkrieg in Südafrika, Der, 373
Buren und der Südafrikanische Krieg, Die, 713
*Burenkrieg: seine Ursachen und seine
 Entstehung, nach amtlichen Quellen der
 Burenregierung*, 748
 Burger, A.J.P., 171
 Burger, S. J., 172
 Burgers, Thomas François, 15, 368
*Burgin's War: From the Diary of an Old
 Infantry Soldier*, 886
 Burke, Peter, 173
 Burleigh, Bennet, 174
 Burne, C.R.N., 175
 Burne, G.H.P., 176
 Burnett, Charles, 177
 Burnham, Frederick Russell, 178

- Burnitt, Tom, 179
 Burn-Murdoch, J. H., 180
 Burrows, John W., 181
 Burton, Antoinette, 182
Bushman and Buccaneer: His Ventures and Verses, 1047
 Butler, Jeffrey, 183-85, 5-6, 10
 Butler, Josephine E., 182, 186
 Butler, Lewis, 187
 Butler, W. F., 188-89, 7
 Buttery, John A., 190
 Buxton, Earl, 191
 Buys, M. H., 192
By Jingo: Letters from the Veldt, 959
Bygone Days, 88

 Cadell, W. Waithman, 103
 Cairnes, W. E., 193
 Cairnes, William Elliot, 147
 Cakars, Janis, 194
 Caldwell, Theodore C., 195
Call to Arms, 1900-1901; or, A Review of the Imperial Yeomanry Movement and Some Subjects Connected Therewith, 1137
 Callwell, C. E., 196-99
 Cameron, N. G., 200
Camillo Ricchiardi: Italian Boer War Hero, 773
 Cammack, Diana, 201
Camp Diary of Henrietta E. C. Armstrong: Experiences of a Boer Nurse in the Irene Concentration Camp, 6 April-11 October 1901, 20
Campaign Pictures of the War in South Africa (1899-1902): Letters from the Front, 541
Campaigns in the Free State to 13 March 1900, The, 220
Campaigns of a War Correspondent, 1017
 Campbell, Guy, 852-53
 Campbell, John, 202
 Campbell, N.D.H., 1221
Canada's Sons on Kopje and Veldt, 815
Canadian Contingent and Canadian Imperialism, The, 374
Canadian General Sir William Otter, 892
 Canadian government documents, 203-06
 Canadian troops, 154, 203-07, 374, 521, 571, 659, 717, 771, 774, 781, 815, 846, 861, 891-92, 1032, 1042, 1072, 1089, 1184, 1362
Canadians in Khaki: South Africa, 1899-1900, 207
"Canadians" Those Who Served in South Africa, "The", 1072
 Cape Colony, 11, 88, 198, 208, 477, 488, 692, 704, 782, 855, 1078-79, 1143, 1201, 2-4, 7, 19-23, 34-36
 Cape Colony Colonial Government Documents, 208, 477
Cape Colony. Correspondence Relating to the Affairs of the Cape Colony, 477
 Cape Dutch, 4, 17, 41
 Capstickdale, Lyonel, 209
Captain of the Gordons, A, 863
 "Capture of Lötter's Commando, The," 692
 Carnegie, Margaret, 210
Carnet de campagne du colonel de Villebois-Mareuil, 1271
 Carrère, Jean, 211
 Carruthers, Jane, 212
 Carter, A.C.R., 213
 Carter, Thomas Fortescue, 214
Cartoons of the Boer War. Reprinted from the Western Mail, 1182
 Cartwright, A. P., 215-16
 Cary, A.D.L., 217
 Cassar, George H., 218
Cassell's History of the Boer War, 292
 Castle, H. G., 219
 casualties, 474, 767, 1171
Catalogue of Books and Pamphlets Relating to Africa, 1216
 Caunter, J. E., 220-21
Cavalry Doctor: Letters Written From the Field, 1900-1901, 1095
 Cecil, Evelyn, 222
 Cecil, Lady Violet (see also Viscountess Milner), 22
 Cecil Rhodes, 46
 Cecil Rhodes, 406
 Cecil Rhodes, 989
 Cecil Rhodes, 1327
 Cecil Rhodes: *A Study of a Career*, 587
 Cecil Rhodes: *Flawed Colossus*, 1056
 Cecil Rhodes: *His Political Life and Speeches, 1881-1900*, 1276
 Cecil Rhodes: *His Private Life*, 666
 Cecil Rhodes: *Man and Empire Maker*, 1027
 Cecil Rhodes: *The Man and His Work*, 740
 Celliers, J. H., 223
 Celliers, Jan François Elias, 224
 censorship, 513
Cent ans de lutte. Les héros Boers, 258
Century of Wrong, A, 1046
 Chamberlain, Joseph, 87, 242, 267, 342-43, 416, 439, 519, 610, 651, 658, 668, 711, 724, 808, 816-17, 890, 923, 953, 973, 990, 995-96, 1319, 1327, 1343, 5-10, 16, 40-41
Chamberlain Tradition, The, 973
Changes & Chances of a Soldier's Life, 834
 Changuion, L., 225
 chaplains, 74, 166, 171, 534, 780, 952, 999, 1298

- Chaplains at the Front. Incidents in the Life of a Chaplain During the Boer War*, 1298
- Chaplains in Khaki: Methodist Soldiers in Camp, on the Field, and on the March*, 534
- Character Factory: Baden-Powell's Boy Scouts and the Imperatives of Empire*, The, 1081
- Charteris, John, 226-27
- Chase of De Wet and Later Phases of the Boer War as Seen by an American Correspondent*, The, 624
- Childers, E. Spencer, 228
- Childers, Erskine, 229-30, 1329
- Childs, Wyndham, 231
- Chilvers, Hedley A., 232-33
- Chisholm, Cecil, 234
- Chisholm, Ruari, 235, **22, 25**
- Christiaan de Wet: 'n Lewensbeskrywing*, 682
- Christians in Khaki*, 952
- Christison, Grant, 810
- Chorus of Stones: The Private Life of War*, A, 523
- Churchill, Winston S., 111, 236-39, 939, 1057, 1139, 1331, 1340, 1358, **15, 20, 22, 28, 33**
- Churchills in Africa*, 1057
- Circumstances Surrounding the Siege of Elands River Post: a Boer War Study*, The, 1290
- Clark, G. B., 240-41
- Clarke, Edward, 242
- Clayton, Ann, 243
- Clearly My Duty: The Letters of Sir John Gilmour From the Boer War, 1900-1901*, 452
- Cleaver, Mrs. M. M., 244
- Cloete, Stuart, 245-46
- Closed File*, 321
- Coates, Thomas F. G., 247-48
- Cobban, James Maclaren, 249
- Coetzee, C. G., 1259
- Coetzer, Owen, 250, **14, 20, 29**
- Coetzer, P. W., 251
- Cohen, Louis, 252
- Col. R. S. S. Baden-Powell, 133
- Coldstream Guards, 1885-1914*, The, 547
- Cole, John, **28**
- Colenso, Battle of, 56, 61, 142, 167, 270, 696, 834, 849, 965, 1067, **22, 25, 27, 29**
- Colenso 1899: The Boer War in Natal*, 696
- "Colenso: The First Battle of the Early Tugela River Campaign (1899)," 270
- Collen, Edwin H., 253
- Colley, George Pomeroy, 115, 188, 1035, 1125, 1330
- Colonel de Villebois-Mareuil*, Le, 384
- Colonial Officer, A., 254
- Colonials in South Africa, 1899-1902: Being the Services of the Various Irregular Corps Raised in South Africa and the Contingents from Australia, Canada, New Zealand, India and Ceylon Together with Details of Those Mentioned in Despatches with Related Honours and Awards*, The, 1193
- Colville, H. E., 255
- Colville, Sir Henry, 455
- Colvin, F. F., 256
- Colvin, Ian, 257
- Comaroff, J. L., 985
- Combes, Paul, 258
- Commandant Johannes Lötter and His Rebels*, 1143
- Commandant-General: The Life and Times of Petrus Jacobus Joubert of the South African Republic, 1831-1900*, The, 839
- Commander*, The, 553
- Commando: a Boer Journal of the Boer War*, 1043, **14, 34**
- Commando Courageous: A Boer's Diary*, 1108
- Commission of H.M.S. Terrible, 1898-1902*, 279
- Complete History of the South African War, in 1899-1902*, 1188
- Complete Story of the Transvaal from the Great Trek to the Convention of London*, The, 925
- Conan Doyle, 263
- Concentratie-Kamp van Irene*, Het, 130
- Concentration Camps, 38, 50, 79, 83, 85, 98, 155, 299, 324, 393, 396, 422, 478, 482, 491, 671, 820, 916, 1021-25, 1215, 1226, 1259, **13-15, 36, 38, 40, 42**
- Bethulie Camp, 1023
- Bloemfontein Camp, 1025
- Irene Camp, 20, 130, 575, 598-603, 948
- Vredefortweg Camp, 1021
- Women's Commission concerning, 79, 383, 490, 1200
- Concentration Camps Commission. Report on the Concentration Camps in South Africa by the Committee of Ladies Appointed by the Secretary of State for War: Containing Reports on the Camps in Natal, The Orange River Colony, and the Transvaal*, 478
- Concentration Camps in South Africa*, 324
- Concentration Camps, 1900-1902: Facts, Figures and Fables*, 820
- Confidential Telegrams 12 Oct. 1899 to 1 Oct. 1902*, 501
- Connaught Rangers*, The, 665
- Conradie, François D., 259
- Conspirators in Conflict: A Study of the*

- Johannesburg Reform Committee and Its Role in the Conspiracy Against the South African Republic*, 1052
- Continuation of the Historical Records of the 1st Regiment. Of Militia or 3rd West York Light Infantry, Now 3rd Battalion. York and Lancaster Regiment, from 1875 to 1905*, A, 151
- Conquête des républiques sud-africaines, Transvaal et Orange*, La, 281
- Cook, Edward T., 260
- Cooke, John H., 261
- Cooper, Alfred Duff, 262
- Copies of Orders in Council, General Orders, Appointments to Office and Militia Orders Affecting the Contingents, in Connection With the Despatch of the Colonial Military Force to South Africa*, 205
- Coren, Michael, 263
- Corner, W., 264
- Corporal, The, 265
- Correspondence Etc. Between British and Boer Generals Concerning Matters Relating to the Usages of War Etc.*, 502
- Correspondence Relating to the Despatch of Colonial Military Contingents to South Africa*, 206
- Counterspy*, 1280
- Courtenay, A. H., 266
- Courtney, W. L. and J. E., 267
- Colville, Henry, 860
- Cowan, N., 216
- Cowper, W., 268
- Crafford, F. S., 269
- Crane, David M., 270
- Crankshaw, Edward, 271
- Craw, Bella, 272
- Creagh, O'Moore, 273
- Creswicke, Louis, 274
- Crisis of Imperialism, The*, 1141
- Crisp, R., 275
- Cromb, David L., 276
- Cromb, James, 276-77
- Cronjé, P. A., 1247, **18, 24, 30-32**
- Crosby, Arthur Joseph, 278
- Crowe, George, 279-80
- Crown and Charter: The Early Years of the British South Africa Company*, 427
- Croze, Firmin de, 281
- Crozier, F. P., 282
- Crum, F. M., 283
- Cubis, R., 284
- Cunliffe, Foster Hugh Egerton, 285
- Currey, R. N., 286, **14**
- Curtis, Lionel, 287
- Cuthbert, J. H., 288
- Cutlack, F. M., 289
- Dagboek van H. C. Bredell, 1900-1904*, 132
- Dagboek van Oskar Hintrager, mei-September 1900*, 596
- "*Dagboek*" van Rocco de Villiers, 323
- Dalbiac, P. H., 290
- Daly, F. A. B., 291
- Danes, Richard, 292
- Daniel, W. H., 293
- Davenport, T. R. H., 294-95
- Davey, A. M., 296-99
- David and Goliath: The First War of Independence, 1880-1881*, 362
- Davidson, H., 300
- Davis, Charles Belmont, 301
- Davis, J., 302
- Davis, John, 303
- Davis, Richard Harding, 301, 304-05, 337
- Davis, Webster, 306
- Davitt, Michael, 307
- Davson, H. M., 308
- De Beers, **3, 9**
- De Graaf, H. J., 310
- De Kiewiet, C. W., 311-12, **6**
- De la Rey, J. E. (Mrs.), 314
- De la Rey, J. H. "Koos," 194, 314, 840, 842, 1061, 1185, **24, 31, 33, 42**
- De La Rey-Lion of the West*, 840
- De Lange, J. H., 313
- De Lisle, Beauvoir, 315
- De Souza, C. W. L., 322
- De Villiers, Rocco, 323
- "De Wet and His Campaign," 1101
- De Wet, Christiaan, 13, 224, 258, 326, 595, 681-82, 933, 979-80, 1080, 1101, 1119, 1185, 1280, **14, 24, 30-35, 41, 42**
- "*Dear Tom*": *Diary of a Young Soldier During the Boer War*, 179
- Death of Glory Boys: The Story of the 17th Lancers. The*, 958
- Death of the Last Republic: The Story of the Anglo-Boer War, The*, 444
- Defender, 309
- Defense of Duffer's Drift, The*, 1210
- Delagoa Bay, **3**
- Denby, Edward E. 1072
- Dennison, C. G., 316
- Denny, Alice, 1064
- Denoon, Donald, 317-19
- Denton, Kit, 320, 321
- Dernier commando Boer: un volontaire français dans la guerre anglo-boer, Le*, 679
- Detailed History of the Railways in the South African War, 1899-1902*, 500
- Detailed Reports on the Sanitary Conditions Relating to Proposed Cantonments and Encampments for the Troops in South*

- Africa*; by Lt. Col. W. G. Macpherson, 503
Deux possédés de l'héroïsme: L'escadron du Colonel-France. L'homme au mehari blanc, 421
Development of the British Army, 1899-1914, The, 350
 Devitt, Napier, 324
 Dewar, T. F., 325
 Diamond Hill, Battle of, 6, 315, 957
Diary and Sketches of the South African War, 253
 "Diary of a Boer Before Ladysmith," 327
Diary of a National Scout, P. J. du Toit, 1900-1902, 359
Diary of a Nurse in South Africa Being a Narrative of Experiences in the Boer and English Hospital Service, 149
Diary of an Edinburgh Trooper Being a Series of Letters Written During the South African Campaign, 576
 "Diary of Charlie Moses, The," 1011
Diary of Sir Edward Walter Hamilton, The, 550
Diary of the 9th Lancers During the South African Campaign, 256
Diary of the Siege of Kimberley, During the Transvaal War, 328
Diary of the Siege of Ladysmith, 272
Diary of the Siege of Ladysmith, 1 November 1899-1 March 1900, 1213
 Dickson, W. K.-L., 329
 Dinwiddie, William, 330
Diplomacy of Imperialism, The, 724
 "Disaster at Majuba Hill, 1881, The," 114
 "Disease and the British Army in South Africa," 950
 Dixon, Clive M., 331
 Dixon, Norman, 332
 "'Doing Down Their Masters': Africans, Boers, and Treason in the Cape Colony During the South African War," 911
 Dooner, Mildred G., 333
 Dorman, George L., 334
 Dormer, F. J., 335
Dominion of Afrikanerdom: Recollections Pleasant and Otherwise, The, 878
 Douglas, George, 336
 Downey, Fairfax, 337
 Doyle, Arthur Conan, 263, 338-39, 1031, 1061, 5, 12-13, 25
 Dr. Jameson, 411
Dr. Jameson's Raid: Its Causes and Consequences, 690
Dr. W. J. Leyds as gesant van die Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, 1255
Drie en zestig jaren in dienst der vrijheid. De levens geschiedenis van General Joubert, 1360
 Driver, Kate, 340
 Drus, Ethel, 341-43, 6
 Du Cane, Hubert, 1018
 Du Moulin, L. E., 348
 Du Plessis, C.N.J., 353
 Du Plessis, E. P., 858
 Du Plessis, Gezina, 354
 Du Plessis, Johannes, 355-57
 Du Toit, Petrus Jacobus, 359
 DuVal, Charles, 360
Dueling with Long Toms: An Account of the 16th Battery, Southern Division, R.G.A. During the Anglo-Boer War, 824
Duke of Lancaster's Own Yeomanry Cavalry, 23rd Co., I.Y., The, 662
 Dudley, Charles., 344
 dum dums, 32-33
 Duminy, A. H., 345-47
 Dundonald, Earl of, 174, 349
 Dunlop, John K, 350
 Dunn, J. S., 351
 Dunn-Pattison, R. P., 352
 Durand, Mortimer, 358
Durban Light Infantry, The, 821
Dusty Measure, 884
 Duval, Roger R., 361
 Duxbury, G. R., 362-63

Earl Roberts as a Soldier in Peace and War, 193
East Surrey Regiment, The, 962
East Surrey Regiment (The 31st and 70th Regiments of Foot), 725
Economic Imperialism in Theory and Practice: The Case of South African Gold-Mining Finance, 712
Edward Ross: Diary of the Siege of Mafeking, 1325
 Edwards, E.J., 436
 Edwards, Neville, 364
 Edwards, R. F., 365
Eerste Annexatie van de Transvaal, Der, 746
Eerste Vryheidsoorlog: Van Verset en Geweld tot Skikking deur Onderhandeling, 1877-1884, Die, 1254
Egodokumente: persoonlike ervarings uit die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1312
1899-1902 Die Angloboere-Oorlog, 1009
18th Hussars in South Africa, The, 177
8th Battalion the Durham Light Infantry, 1793-1926, 1263
8th (King's Royal Irish) Hussars. Diary of South African War, 893
Eighty Years: Soldiering, Politics, Games, 777
Ek en die vierkleur, 680

- 11th Hussars, The*, 136
 Elands River, 718, 1290, 1364
 "Elands River: A Siege Which Possibly Changed the Course of History in South Africa," 1374
 Elandslaagte, Battle of, 42, 218, 798, 1099, 1131, 1221, 21
 Ellis, Edward S., 1054
 Elphick, R., 1224
 Emden, P. H., 366
 Emily Hobhouse, 1215
 Emily Hobhouse A Memoir, 422
 Eminent Edwardians, 134
 Eminent Victorian Soldiers, 380
 Empire at War, *The*, 771
 Empire Is Marching: A Study of the Military Effort of the British Empire, 1800-1945, *The*, 52
 Engelbrecht, Joseph A., Jr., 367
 Engelbrecht, S. P., 368
 Engelenburg, F. V., 369-70
 Engelse Oorlog, 1899-1902: Die gevegsmethodes waarmee die Boer-republieke verower I, *Die*, 529.
 England and the Transvaal, 1342
 England 1870-1914, 371
 England's Enemies, 435
 England, Germany, and the Transvaal, 966
 English and Welsh Infantry Regiments: An Illustrated Record of Service, 1662-1994, 1313
 English Guns and Gun Makers, 106
 English South African's View of the Situation, *An*, 1122, 14
 Enseignements de deux guerres récentes, 726
 Ensor, R.C.K., 371, 6
 ENZBERG, Eugen von, 372
 Episodes and Reflections Being Some Records From the Life of Major-General Sir Wyndham Childs, 231
 Epistles of Atkins, *The*, 866
 Epitomized History of the Militia (*The 'Constitutional Force'*) Together with the Origin, Periods of Embodied Service, and Special Services (Including South Africa, 1899-1902) of Militia Units Existing October 31, 1905, *An*, 576
 Erinnerungen aus dem Missionslaben in Transvaal, 1859-1882, 854
 Escapers, *The*, 1331
 Essex Regiment, *The*, 181
 Estorff, Ludwig von, 373
 Étude tactique de la guerre Sudafricaine, 407
 Europa en die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 1113
 Evans, W. Sanford, 374
 Everdingen, W. van, 375
 Everett, Marshall, 376
 Evidence of General the Rt. Hon. Sir Redvers Buller, V.C., G.C.B., G.C.M.G., Taken Before the Royal Commission on the War in South Africa, 167
 Ex Africa, 1102
 Ex-Lieutenant, 377
 Exiled General, *An*, 1269
 Experience of a Siege: A Nurse Looks Back on Ladysmith, 340
 Extracts From Notes Taken on the Boer Campaign, 278
 Extracts from Reports by Officers Commanding Units in South Africa During 1899-1901, 504
 Fairburn, John, 378
 Fall of Kruger's Republic, *The*, 808, 10
 Far From a Donkey: The Life of General Sir Ivor Maxse, 78
 Farrelly, M. J., 379
 Farther Frontier: Six Case Studies of Americans and Africa, 1848-1936, *The*, 859
 Farwell, Byron, 380-82, 13
 Fawcett, Millicent, 383, 1200, 15, 37
 Félix, G., 384
 Ferguson, John H., 385
 Fergusson, Thomas G., 386
 Ferrar, M. L., 387
 Ferreira, O.J.O., 1093
 Fessey, William, 388
 Fessler, Julius, 389
 Few Months with the Boers: The War Reminiscences of a Russian Nursing Sister, *A*, 641
 Field Gun Jack Versus the Boers, 143
 Field, Laurie, 390
 Field Marshal Earl Haig, 226
 Field-Marshal Lord Roberts: A Biographical Sketch, 532
 Field-Marshal Sir George White, 358
 "Field Weapons of the Anglo-Boer War. Notes on Their Use and Mis-Use," 443
 "Fight at Magersfontein," 63
 Fight for the Empire the Story of the War in South Africa, 947
 Fight for the Flag in South Africa, *The*, 1100
 Fight to the Finish, 316
 Fighting in Africa, 164
 Fighting the Boers, 518
 "Fighting With Methuen's Division: Belmont, Gras Pan and Modder River, *The*," 1315
 Fire and Sword: The British Army and the *Arme Blanche* Controversy, 1871-1921, 42
 Firkins, Peter, 391
 First Anglo Boer War 1880-1881, *The*, 525

- First Annexation of the Transvaal, The*, 746
1st Battalion Loyal North Lancashire Regiment. South African War 1899-1902, 392
1st Battalion Scots Guards in South Africa, 1899-1902, The, 288
First Boer War, The, 735
First or Grenadier Guards in South Africa, 753
First South African: The Life and Times of Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, The, 215
 Fischer, Maria A., 393
 Fisher, John, 394-96
 Fisher, William E. G., 397
 Fitz Roy, Olivia, 401
Fitz: The Story of Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, 1291
 Fitzgibbon, Maurice, 398
 Fitzpatrick, Percy, 215, 346-47, 399-400, 1291, 5
Fitzpatrick: South African Politician: Selected Papers 1896-1905, 346
5,000 Miles with the Cheshire Yeomanry in South Africa, 261
 Flemming, Wymble, 402
 Fletcher, J. S., 403-04
 Fletcher-Vane, Francis P., 405
 Flint, John, 406
Flora Shaw, Lady Lugard, 87
Following the Drum, 412
 Fonville, E.F.R., 407
 Forbes, A. A., 408
For King and Country 1899-1902; Being a Record of Funds and Philanthropic Work in Connection With the South African War, 449
For Remembrance and in Honour of Those Who Lost Their Lives in the South African War 1899-1902 Lest We Forget, 450
 Fordham, David, 1230
Foreign Volunteers, 998
Forgotten War: Australia and the Boer War, The, 390
 Former Officers of the Regiment, 409
 Forrest, George, 410
For Queen and Empire, 1208
Forsaken Idea: A Study of Viscount Milner, The, 271
 Fort, G. Seymour, 411
 Fortescue, John W., 412-14, 21
Forty Years a Soldier, 1374
Forty Years in Africa, 1235
Forty Years in Canada: Reminiscences of the Great Northwest with Some Account of his Service in South Africa, 1184
Foto Biografie: Paul Kruger, 1852-1904, 225
Founder: Cecil Rhodes and the Pursuit of Power, The, 1086
Four Months Besieged, the Story of Ladysmith, 960
Four Score Years and Ten; Sir Bindon Blood's Reminiscences, 110
Four Studies of War and Peace in This Century, 560
 Fournier, August, 415
 Fox, Frank, 1047
 Frank Rhodes, 630
 Fraser, Edward, 665
 Fraser, Peter, 416, 6
 Freeman, Benson, 417
Freiheitskampf der Buren und die Geschichte ihres Landes, Der, 1105
 Fremantle, Francis E., 418
French Colonel: Villebois-Mareuil and the Boers, The, 796
 French, Gerald, 419
 French, John, 29, 165, 218, 234, 419, 612, 836, 1131, 1305, 1317, 20-21, 30
French's Cavalry Campaign, 836
 Fripp, Alfred, 1059
 Frocard, Lt.-colonel, 420
From Aldershot to Pretoria: A Story of Christian Work Among Our Troops in South Africa, 1133
From Boer to Boer and Englishman, 126
From Capetown to Ladysmith: An Unfinished Record of the South African War, 1186
 "From Enslin to Bloemfontein with the 6th Division," 221
From Norwich to Lichtenburg Via Pretoria Being Some Personal Experiences with the 2nd Norfolk Volunteer Active Service Company in South Africa 1901-2, 30
From Portsmouth to Peking Via Ladysmith with a Naval Brigade, 280
From Private to Field Marshal, 1063
From Quebec to Pretoria With the Royal Canadian Regiment, 571
 Frondaie, Pierre, 421
Frontier Patrols, History of the B.S.A. Police, 565
 Frost, Meigs O., 1032
 Fry, A. Ruth, 422
 Fuller, J.F.C., 422-23, 32, 34, 36, 38
 Furley, John, 425

"G" Company, or Everyday Life of the R.C.R.: Being a Descriptive Account of Typical Events in the Life of the First Canadian Contingent in South Africa, 625
 Gage, M. F., 426
 Galbraith, J. S., 427-28
 Gallagher, John, 1064, 6
 Galli, H., 429
 Galvayne, Sydney, 430

- Gardner, Brian, 431-33, 17-18, 20
 Gardyne, C. G., 434
 Garnier, Jules, 435
 Garrett, Edmund, 436
 Garrish, A. G., 437
 "Garrison Artillery Company in the Field, A," 1136
 Garson, Noel G., 438
 Garvin, J. L., 439, 6
 Gaskell, H. S., 440
 Gatacre, Beatrice, 441
 Gatacre, William, 22-23
Gedenkalbum van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 141
Gedenkblätter aus dem Burenkrieg, 672
Gedenkboek Generaal J.B.M. Hertzog, 824
 Gelfand, Michael, 719
 Generaal Ben Viljoen, 1868-1917, 837
Generaal Christiaan de Wet as veldheer, 1119
Generaal Louis Botha op die Natalse Front, 1899-1900, 56
Generaal P. A. Cronjé, 1247
 "General Botha at the Battle of Colenso," 57
 "General Botha in the Spioenkop Campaign," 58
General Botha: The Career and the Man, 1174
 "General Botha's Own Report on the Battle of Colenso," 61
General De Wet: A Biography, 1080
General Gatacre: The Story of the Life and Services of Sir William Forbes Gatacre, K.C.B., D.S.O., 1843-1906, 441
General Hertzog: Prime Minister of the Union of South Africa Since 1924, 913
General J.B.M. Hertzog, 1249
General Louis Botha, 369
General Louis Botha: A Biography, 841
General Louis Botha's Second Expedition to Natal During the Anglo-Boer War, September-October, 1901, 885
General Report on the Sanitary Conditions Likely to Affect the Health of Troops in Cantonments and Encampments in South Africa; by Lt. Col. W. G. Macpherson, 505
General Sir John Maxwell, 23
General Smuts, 865
General Wauchope, 45
Generals of the Anglo-Boer War, 71
Gentleman of the Press: The Life and Times of an Early Reporter, Julian Ralph of the Sun, 720
 "German Factor in Anglo-Transvaal Relations, The," 183
 Germany, 36, 183, 209, 289, 966, 1018, 1047, 1094, 1107, 1113
 Gerneth, Ritter von, 373
Geskiedenis van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog in Suid-Afrika. Die, 137, 13
Geschiedenis, werken en streven van S. P. E. Trichard, luitenant-kolonel der vroegere staats-artillerie Z.A.R.: door hemzelve beschreven., 1236
 Girouard, E.P.C., 454
 Gibbs, Henry, 442
 Gibbs, K. R., 443
 Gibbs, Peter, 444
 Gibson, G. F., 445
 Giddings, Robert, 446
 Gifford, Prosser, 183
 Gilbert, Georges, 447
 Gilbert, Sharrad A., 448
 Gildea, J., 449
 Gildea, James, 450
 Gill, W. H., 451
 Gilmour, John, 452
 Gilson, Charles J. L., 45
 Gladstone, William, 1125, 2
Gladstone and Kruger: Liberal Government and Colonial Home Rule, 1880-85, 1125
 Gleichen, Lord Edward, 455
Glimpses of South Africa in Peace and War, 402
 Glossop, Reginald, 456
 Gluckstein, S. M., 457
God and Our Soldiers, 165
 Godley, Alexander, 458
 Godley, R. S., 459
 Goetzsche, Eric, 460
 Goldmann, Charles Sydney, 461
 Goldmann, Richard, 462
 Gollin, A. M., 463
 Gooch, John., 464
Good-bye Dolly Gray: The Story of the Boer War, 708, 13, 34
 Goodfellow, C. F., 465
 Goodinge, Anthony, 466
 Gordon, C. T., 467
 Gordon, E. R., 256
 Gordon-Duff, Lachlan, 468
 Gore, St. John, 469
 Gough, Hubert, 470
Gram: A Social Magazine Founded by British Prisoners of War in Pretoria, The, 1084
Grand Illusion: The Failure of Imperial Policy in the Transvaal Colony During the Period of Reconstruction. A, 317
 Grant, M. H., 830
 Grant, Maurice Harold, 750-51
Graphic History of the South African War, 1899-1900, The, 631
 Graspan, Battle of, 1315, 25
 Graydon, William Murray, 471
Great Boer War, 338, 13

- Great Boer War 1899-1901, The*, 472
Great Boer War, The, 381
 "Great Britain and Africa: The Myth of Imperialism," 1195
 "Great Britain and the Afrikaner Republics," 1222
 Great Britain. Army, 473-74
 Great Britain. Parliament, 475-498
 Great Britain. Royal Engineers Institute, 500
 Great Britain. War Office, 501-513
 Great Britain. War Relief Funds Committee, 514
Great Raids in History, 196
Great War Trek: With the British Army on the Veldt, The, 64
Green Horse in Ladysmith, The, 469
 Green, Howard, 515
 Green, James, 516
 Greenwall, Ryno, 517
 Greenwood, T. J., 518
 Grenville, J.A.R., 519, 6
 Grew, E. Sharp, 152
Grey Steel: J. C. Smuts A Study in Arrogance, 18
 Grierson, James Moncrieff, 520
 Griesbach, W. A., 521
 Griffith, K., 522
 Griffith, Susan, 523
 Grinnell-Milne, D. W., 524
 Grobler, John Edward Holloway, 525
 Groenewald, Coen, 526
 Groningem, Paul, 527
 Gronum, M. A., 528-530
 Gross, Felix, 531
 Grosser, Horace G., 532
Growth of Boer Opposition to Kruger, 1890-5, The, 467
Guardsmen's Memories: A Book of Recollections, A, 455
Guerre anglo-boer: histoire et récits d'après des documents officiels, La, 1082
Guerre au Transvaal, La, 420
Guerre des Boers, La, 772
Guerre du Transvaal La, 211
Guerre néfaste au pays des Boers: recueil d'impressions & de notes sur cette guerre sanglante, Une, 918
Guerre Sud-Africaine, La, 415
Guerre Sud-Africaine, La, 447
 guerrilla warfare, 110, 122, 194, 315, 731, 742, 812, 860, 885, 913, 969, 984, 1002, 1043-45, 1338, 13, 31, 33-36
 Guest, W. H., 346-47
 Guilbert E., 1369
Gunnery of the Cape. The Story of the Cape Field Artillery, 944
 Guyot, Yves, 533
H.A.C. in South Africa, A Record of the Services Rendered in the South African War by Members of the Honourable Artillery Company, 1329
 H. K., 534
 Hackett, Ronald, 377, 535, 11-12
 Haferkorn, Henry E., 536
 Haggard, H. Rider, 537, 5
 Hague Convention of 1899, 32
 "Hague Convention of 1899 and the Boer Republics, The," 1177
 Haig, 227
 Haig, 262
Haig as Military Commander, 818
 Haig, Douglas, 226-27, 262, 818, 1130, 21
 Haldane, Aylmer, 538, 1331
 Haldane, J.A.L., 539
 Hale, Lonsdale, 540
 Hales, A. G., 541
Half a Life, 650
 Hall, D. D., 542
 Hall, D.O.W., 543
 Hall, Darrell, 544, 545
 Hall, John Richard, 546
 Hall, Robert, 547
 Halpérin Vladimir, 548
 Halstead, Murat, 549, 619
Halt! Action Front! With Colonel Long at Colenso, 544
 Hamilton, Edward Walter, 550
 Hamilton, H. B., 551
 Hamilton, Ian, 336, 552, 553, 554, 1099, 1131
 Hamilton, Ian B. M., 552
 Hamilton, J. A., 555, 17
 Hamilton, Sir Frederick, 569
 Hammond, John Hays, 556, 557, 558, 859, 5
 Hammond, Mrs. John Hays [Natalie.], 559
 Hancock, W. K., 560-562
Handbook of the Boer War, 563
Handy Notes on S. Africa. For the Use of Speakers and Others, 633
 Hannah, W. H., 564
Happy Warrior: A Life of General Sir Ian Hamilton, The, 552
Happy Warrior: A Short Account of the Life of David, 9th Earl of Airlie, The, 6
 Harding, Bruce, 1318
 Harding, C., 565
 Harding, William, 566
 Hardy, E. J., 567
 Harington, Charles, 568
 Harlow, Vincent, 569
 Harrison, Frederic, 570
 Harrison, H. R., 302
 Hart, Arthur Fitzroy, 1068, 25-26
 Hart-McHarg, William, 571
 Hart-Synnot, B. M., 572

- Harvey, John R., 573
 Harvey, Len, 574
 Hassell, John A., 590
 Hattingh, J. L., 575
 Hay, G. J., 576
 Hay, R. Patterson, 577
 Hayes, Bertram, 578
 Hayes, M. H., 579
 Haythornthwaite, P. J., 580
 Headlam, Cecil, 581-82, 6
 Headlam, J., 196
 Healy, Phyllis Foster, 583
 Hector Macdonald or the Private Who Became
 a General, 247
 Hedge of Wild Almonds: South Africa, the
 Pro-Boers & the Quaker Conscience,
 1890-1910, 589
 Heileman, Zoster, 584
 Helde-album, verhaal en foto's van
 aanvoerders en helde uit ons vryheidstryd,
 Die, 1378
 Heldenkampfs der Buren und die Geschichte
 Sudafrikas, 527
 "Helot" Dispatch, 7, 10
 Henderson, G.F.R., 585
 Hendry, Hamish, 586
 Hensman, H., 587
 Heroes and Gentlemen. An Army Chaplain's
 Experiences in South Africa, 780
 Heroes of South Africa, 13
 Heroes of the Boer War, 1069
 Hertzog, J.B.M., 913, 924, 984, 1249, 33
 Hewison, Hope Hay, 588
 Heyningen, Elizabeth, 79
 Hibbard, Mary Eugene, 583
 Hickman, A. S., 589
 Hicks, Frederick Charles, 1333
 High Pressure; Being Some Record of
 Activities in the Service of the Times
 Newspaper, 648
 Highland Brigade and Its Heroes, The, 276
 Hiley, Alan R. I., 590
 Hillcourt, William, 591
 Hillegas, Howard C., 592
 Hillegas, Howard Clemens, 593
 Hillier, Alfred P. 1008
 Hinchliff, Peter, 594
 Hintrager, O., 595
 Hintrager, Oscar, 596
 Hippisley, R. L., 597
 Histoire du peuple boer, 22
 Historical Records of the Eleventh Hussars,
 Prince Albert's Own, The, 1332
 Historical Records of the 14th Hussars, 1715-
 1900, 551
 Historiography of the British Empire
 Commonwealth, The, 1223
 History of 'A' Battery New South Wales
 Artillery (1871-1899), Royal Australian
 Artillery, A, 284
 History of 'J' Battery Royal Horse Artillery
 (Formerly A Troop, Madras Horse Artillery)
 Compiled from Private and Official Records,
 The, 1369
 History of Lumsden's Horse, 961
 History of Railways during the War in South
 Africa, 1899-1902, 454
 History of South Africa, The, 1284
 History of South Africa and the Boer British
 War, 80
 History of South Africa, Social and Economic,
 A, 311
 History of South Africa to the Jameson Raid,
 The, 770
 History of the Army Ordnance Services, A, 408
 History of the Boer War to the Occupation of
 Bloemfontein, The, 285
 History of the British Army, 1131
 History of the British Cavalry 1816-1919., A,
 13
 History of the VIII King's Royal Irish Hussars,
 903
 History of the Fifth Battalion the Bedfordshire
 and Hertfordshire Regiment, 1307
 History of the 1st Batt. Sherwood Foresters
 (Nott. And Derby Regt.) In the Boer War,
 1899-1902, 453
 History of the 45th Regiment, 290
 History of the Green Howards, The, 1001
 History of the King's Own Yorkshire Light
 Infantry, 1366
 History of the Lancashire Fusiliers, A, 1168
 History of the Manchester Regiment (Late the
 63rd and 96th Foot), 1367
 History of the Medical and Hospital Services of
 the Anglo-Boer War, The, 1016
 History of the Natal Mounted Rifles, 629
 History of the Norfolk Regiment, The, 972
 History of the Royal Artillery, The, 196
 History of the Royal Dragoons, 29
 History of the Royal Irish Rifles, 730
 History of the Royal Scots Fusiliers, 163
 History of the 2nd Battalion The Monmouth-
 shire Regiment, A, 135
 History of the Second, Queen's Royal
 Regiment, Now the Queen's (Royal West
 Surrey Regiment, The, 303
 History of the Telegraph Operations During
 the War in South Africa, 597
 History of the 3rd Regiment Imperial Yeomanry,
 102
 History of the 17th (Duke of Cambridge's Own),

- A, 413
History of the XIII Hussars, 66
History of the XII Royal Lancers (Prince of Wales's), The, 1190
History of the Twentieth Century, A, 825
History of the War in South Africa, 100
History of the War in South Africa, 830
History of the Welch Regiment, The 1317
Hobhouse, C. E., 598
Hobhouse, Emily, 38, 50, 383, 396, 422, 599-603, 645, 671, 1058, 1200, 1215, 15, 37
Hobson, J. A., 604-05, 6, 8
Hodges, Arthur, 606
Hoe ik ontsnapte. Verhaal van een merkwaardige ontsnapping van een Boer uit Engelsch-Indie, 1273
Hoe zij stierven: Mededelingen aangaande het einde dergenen, aan wie gedurende den laatsten oorlog 1899-1902, in de Kaap-Kolonie het doodvonnis voltrokken is, 663
Hofmeyr, Adrian, 607
Hofmeyr, Jan, 294, 2
Hofmeyr, N., 608
Hole, H. Marshall, 609
Holland, J.E.D., 1221
"Hollander-korps tydens die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, Die" 1248
Holli, Melvin G., 610, 6
Holmes, Prescott, 611
Holmes, Richard, 612
Holt, Edgar, 613, 10, 13, 23, 33
Holt, H. P., 614
Holtz, Lucy, 312, 314
Home, William, 615
Hoogeveen, Jan, 616
Hook, Major, 617
Hooker, Leroy, 618
Hopkins, J. C., 619
Hoppford, Wim, 620
horses, 494, 579, 1158
Horses on Board Ship, 579
How We Escaped from Pretoria, 539
How We Kept the Flag Flying: The Siege of Ladysmith Through Australian Eyes, 784
Howard, Philip, 621
Howe, Countess, 622
Howell, Herbert Gwynne, 623
Howland, Frederick Hoppin, 624
Hubly, Russell, 625
Hudleston, W., 626
Hull Down: Reminiscences of Windjammers, Troops and Travellers, 578
Humphris, E. M., 273
Hunt, Meynell, 627
Hunter, Archibald, 21
Hunter, Archie, 628
Hurst, Godfrey Thomas, 629
Hutchinson, G. T., 630
Huyshe, Wentworth, 631
I Remember, 521
"I. Y." An Imperial Yeoman at War, 265
Ian Hamilton's March, 236
Illustrated War Special, 632
I'm Alone, 1032
Imperial Echoes: Eye-Witness Accounts of Victoria's Little Wars, 446
Imperial Factor in South Africa, The, 312
Imperial Policy and South Africa, 1902-10, 1019
Imperial South African Association, 633
Imperial War and the British Working Class: Working Class Attitudes and Reactions to the Boer War, An, 1014
Imperial Warrior: The Life and Times of Field-Marshal Viscount Allenby, 647
Imperial Yeomanry Hospitals in South Africa, 1900-1902, The, 622
Imperial Yeomanry. Report of the Deputy Adjutant-General of the Force Regarding Its Home Organization, Inspection of the Constitution of Its Base and Advanced Depots, and Distribution of Stores in South Africa, and Proposals for Future Organization, 488
Impressions of a Doctor in Khaki, 418
Impressions of a War Correspondent, 776
Impressions of South Africa, 162
In Africa with the Union Jack, 983
In liefde en trou: die lewe van president M. T. Steyn en mevrou Tibbie Steyn met 'n keuse uit hulle korrespondensie, 1110
In Memoriam, R. Ernest Reade, D.S.O., Lieutenant, King's Royal Rifle Corps, 1039
In Peace and War. (The Red Cross in South Africa.), 425
In Search of Breaker Morant, 210
In Smuts' Camp, 760
In South Africa with Buller, 905
In the Ranks of the C.I.V., 229
In the Web of a War, 73
"Incident of the South African War, An" 1297
Incwadi Yami, or Twenty Years' Personal Experience in South Africa, 827
Inder, W. S., 634
Index to Periodical Articles on South African Political and Social History Since 1902, 251
Infantry Officer, 635
Ingogo, Battle of, 586
Ingham, Kenneth, 636
Insluiten van de Boeren Republieken Het, 747
Intelligence Officer, The, 637

- Interfering in Politics: A Biography of Sir Percy Fitzpatrick*, 347
- International Law in South Africa*, 75
- international opinion, 385, 672, 701, 705-06, 783
- Internationale Buren-Agitation 1899-1902, Die*, 705
- "Invasion of the Orange Free State," 638
- Ireland, Alleyne, 639
- "Irenekonsentrasiekamp, Die," 575
- Irish Brigade (Boer), 105, 775
- Irish Pro-Boers, The*, 783
- "Irish Transvaal Brigades., The," 1092
- Irregulars, Partisans, Guerrillas*, 1045
- Iwan-Müller, E. B., 640
- Izedinova, S., 641
- Jack the Sniper, 642
- Jackets of Green: A Study of the History, Philosophy, and Character of the Rifle Brigade*, 158
- Jackson, Murray Cosby, 643
- Jacobs, F. J., 1312
- Jacobus Hercules De la Rey en die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 942
- Jacson, M., 644
- Jaff, Fay, 645
- James Barry Munnik Hertzog*, 984
- James, David, 646, 23
- James, Lawrence, 647
- James, Lionel, 648
- Jameson, Leander Starr, 27, 191, 257, 411, 690, 4-5
- Jameson Raid, 27, 87, 88, 103-04, 184, 191, 208, 232, 242, 245, 257, 342, 346, 399-400, 411, 416, 436, 557, 558, 559, 569, 581, 609, 610, 668, 690, 719, 738, 743, 771, 826, 850, 855, 876, 878, 953, 976-77, 990, 1008, 1052, 1102, 1124, 1279, 1284, 1291, 1340, 1357, 4-6, 8-9, 18, 41
- Jameson Raid: An Annotated Bibliography, The*, 876
- "Jameson Raid and the World War, the True Story of the Raid, The," 557
- "Jameson Raid, The," 191
- "Jameson Raid, The", 581
- Jameson Raid, The*, 609
- Jameson Raid, The*, 990
- "Jameson Raid, The," 1283
- Jameson's Raid: The Prelude to the Boer War*, 953
- Jan Christian Smuts*, 1166
- Jan Christian Smuts: The Conscience of a South African*, 636
- Jan Smuts: A Biography*, 269
- Jan Smuts, Being a Character Sketch of Gen. the Hon. J. C. Smuts*, 742
- Jannasch, Hans, 649
- Jarrick, I., 1224
- Jarvis, C. S., 650
- Jay, Richard, 651
- Jeal, Tim, 652, 18-19
- Jeans, T. T., 653
- Jeeves, Alan, 654
- Jeppe, Carl, 655
- Jerrold, Walter, 656-57
- Jeyes, Samuel H., 658
- Johannesburg, 64, 976-77, 1052, 1074, 1308, 3-5, 20
- Johannesburg en die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 1074
- John Buchan and the Idea of Empire (British), 710
- John Bull's Crime or Assaults on Republics*, 306
- John X. Merriman: Paradoxical South African Statesman*, 745
- Johnson, Daniel F., 659
- Johnson, David, 660
- Johnson, Henry, 661
- Johnson, L. H., 662
- Jordaan, G., 663
- Jordan, Robert Alan, 664
- Joseph Chamberlain*, 816
- Joseph Chamberlain: A Political Study*, 651
- "Joseph Chamberlain and the Jameson Raid," 1343, 6
- "Joseph Chamberlain and the Jameson Raid; A Bibliographical Survey," 610
- "Joseph Chamberlain and the South African Republic, 1895-1899: A Study in the Formulation of Imperial Policy," 1319
- Joseph Chamberlain, 1836-1914: A Bibliography*, 923
- Joseph Chamberlain, Radicalism and Empire*, 416
- Joseph Chamberlain, The Man and the Statesman*, 816
- Josling, Harold, 159
- Joubert, Petrus "Piet," 258, 1360
- Jourdain, H.F.N., 665
- Jourdan, Philip, 666
- Journal of the C.I.V. in South Africa*, 793
- Journal of the Principal Events Connected with South Africa*, 507
- Joyous Patriot: Correspondence of Ralph Verney, 1900-1916, The*, 1265
- Judd, Denis, 667-69
- Juta, Marjorie, 670, 6
- Kaapland en die tweede vryheidsoorlog*, 1201
- Kagan, A., 1150
- Kaleidoscopic Transvaal, The*, 655
- Kaler, James O., 947

- Kaminski, Diane Clements, 671
 Kammer, J., 672
Kampdagboek, 393
Kampf um Recht und Freiheit, 799
Kampf um Südafrika, Im, 1120
Kampkinders, 1900-1902: 'n gedenkboek, 1259
 Kandyba-Foxcroft, Elisaveta, 673
Kappie kommando of Boerevrouen in geheime dienst, Die, 131
Kaptein Hindon, oorlogsaventure van 'n baas verkenner, 1004
 Kay, James Alexander, 1055
 Keaney, Annette, 674
 Kearsey, A.H.C., 675
 Keenan, C. B., 676
Kekewich in Kimberley, 934
 Kekewich, Robert, 25, 432, 934, **19-20**
 Kelly-Kenny, Thomas, **30**
 Kemp, Jan, 677
 Keppel-Jones, Arthur, 678
 Kersauson, Robert de, 679-80
 Kestell, J. D., 13, 681-83, **14, 41**
 Kesteven, G. R., 684
 Kesting, J. G., 685
 Kgatla, **37**
Khaki and Blue: Twenty-five Years' Service in South Africa, 459
Khaki and Gown, 101
Khaki in South Africa. An Album of Pictures and Photographs Illustrating the Chief Events of the War Under Lord Roberts, 686
 Kieran, Brian L., 687
 Kiernan, R. H., 688
 Kieser, Alen, 689
Kimberley Flying Column: Being the Reminiscences of Service in the South African War of 1899-1903, The, 969
 Kimberley, Siege of, 25, 64, 91, 252, 328, 432, 653, 934, 957, 974, 1057, 1086, 1305, **17, 30, 38**
 King, J., 690
King's Guards: History of the Household Cavalry, The, 94
King's Royal Rifle Corps Chronicle 1901, The, 852
King's Royal Rifle Corps Chronicle 1902, The, 853
 Kinnear, Alfred, 691
 Kinsey, H. W., 692
 Kipling, Rudyard, 693, 1031
 Kisch, Henry, 694
Kitchener, 49
 "Kitchener and the Guerrillas in the Boer War," 1154
 Kitchener, Herbert Horatio, Lord, 24, 34, 49, 83, 101, 267, 380, 412, 414, 606, 801, 909, 1063, 1154, 1178, 1294, **16, 30-31, 34-36, 40-42**
Kitchener: Organizer of Victory, 83
Kitchener: Portrait of an Imperialist, 801
Kitchener: The Man Behind the Legend, 1294
Kitchener's Sword-Arm: The Life and Campaigns of General Sir Archibald Hunter, 628
 Klip's Drift, Battle of, 42
 Knight, E. F., 695
 Knight, Ian, 696
 Knox, E. Blake, 697, **33**
Komdt. Danie Theron: baasverkenner die tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 138
Kommando-jare, 858
Kommandolewe tydens die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1010
Kommandoprediker. Een en ander uit die lewe van die Weleerwaarde Heer James Murray, 'n, 765
konsentrasiekampe, Die.., 948
Konsentrasiekamp te Bethulie gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, Die, 1023
Konsentrasiekamp te Bloemfontein gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, Die, 1025
Konsentrasiekamp te Vredefortweg gedurende die Anglo-Boereoorlog, Die, 1021
 "Kos De la Rey in the Transvaal," 194
 Koss, Stephen, 698
 Krause, Ludwig, 699
Krieg in Süd-Afrika, 1899-1900 und seine Vorgeschichte, Der, 896
Kriegschirurgische Erfahrungen aus dem Sudafrikanischen Kriege, 714
 Kriel, C., 700
 Krige, Jan, 701
Krijgsgevangenschap van L. C. Ruijsenaers, 1093
 Krikler, Jeremy, 702-03
 Kritzing, P. M., 704
 Kröll, Ulrich, 705
 Kruger, D. W., 706-07
 Kruger, Paul, 13, 169, 190, 225, 245-46, 258, 335, 354, 356, 395, 611, 655, 670, 674, 709, 758, 778, 790, 808, 842, 912, 938, 1033, 1157, 1183, 1257, **2-10, 15, 18**
 Kruger, Rayne, **708, 6, 13, 34**
 Kruger, S. J. P., 709
Kruger's Pretoria, 8
Kruger's Secret Service, 938
 Krugersdorp, Battle of, 586
 Kruse, Juanita Fern, 710
Krygsman Christiaan de Wet, 933
 Kubicek, Robert V., 711-12, **6, 9**
 Kurschner, Joseph, 713

- Kuttner, H. von, 714-15
Kiwi versus Boer: The First New Zealand Mounted Rifles in the Anglo-Boer War, 1199
- L. N., 716
La Fayette de l'Afrique du Sud: Villebois-Mareuil, Le, 1272
- Labat, Gaston, 717
Ladysmith, 235
 "Ladysmith After the Siege," 1160
Ladysmith and Lydenburg: Anglo-Boer War Letters of Alfred Markham, 810
Ladysmith: Diary of a Siege, 920
 "Ladysmith During the Siege, 1899-1900," 887
 "Ladysmith Siege Diary of Dr. James Alexander Kay, The," 1055
Ladysmith, Siege of, 10, 28, 47, 158, 175, 218, 235, 248, 272, 278, 305, 327, 331, 340, 358, 469, 642, 644, 694, 696-97, 727, 784, 788, 798, 822, 834-35, 887, 920, 956, 960, 971, 1055, 1142, 1213, 1300, 1302, 1321, 1335, 14, 17, 20-23, 25-27, 29-31
 "Ladysmith Pigeon Post, The," 10
 Laffin, John, 718
 Laidler, Percy Ward, 719
 Laing's Nec, Battle of, 188, 586, 2
Lancashire Fusiliers, The, 1038
 Lancaster, Paul, 720
 Landman, Christina, 721
 Landon, Perceval, 722-23
 Langer, William, 724
 Langley, Michael, 725
 Langlois, Hippolyte, 726
Laslap Herinneringe aan die Driejarige Oorlog, 354
Last Boer War, The, 537
Last of the Gentlemen's Wars: A Subaltern's Journal of the War in South Africa, The, 424
 "Last Post": *Being a Roll of All Officers (Naval, Military or Colonial) Who Gave Their Lives for Their Queen, King and Country in the South African War, 1899-1902, The*, 333
 "Last Word on Rhodes?, The", 1034
 "Late Campaign in Natal, The" 727
Late Victorian Army, The, 1176
 Latimer, Jon, 728
 Laurence, E. C., 729
 Laurie, G. B., 730
 Lawford, J. P., 1131
 Lawrence, James, 731
Lawrence Richardson: Selected Correspondence 1902-1903, 299
 Le May, G.H.L., 737, 8-10
 Le Riche, P. J., 739
 Le Roux, J. H., 251
 LeSueur, Gordon, 740
Leading Points in South African History, 1003
Leaguer of Ladysmith, The, 331
 Lecoy de La Marche, Henri Marie Albert, 732
 Lee, Emanoel C. G., 733
 Lees, Frederic, 1271
 Lehmann, Joseph H., 734-35
Leicester Militia in South Africa, The, 176
 Leigh, Ramon Lewis, 736
 Leonard, Charles, 738
Lessons From the Varsity of Life, 40
Lessons From Two Recent Wars, 726
Lessons of the War Being Comments from Week to Week to the Relief of Ladysmith, 1321
 "Lessons of the War: Personal Observations and Impressions of the Forces and Military Establishments Now in South Africa, 1274
Letter to the Committee of the South African Women and Children's Distress Fund, A, 601
Letters and Diary of Lieutenant G.E.S. Salt During the War in South Africa, 1098
Letters From a Boer Parsonage: Letters of Margaret Marquard During the Boer War, 814
Letters From an Uitlander 1899-1902, 741
Letters From Ladysmith, 956
Letters From South Africa, 334
Letters From South Africa, 1096
Letters from the Transvaal, 1899-1901, 1175
Letters From the Veldt: An Account of the Involvement of Volunteers from Queensland at the War in South Africa, 1899-1902., 574
Letters Home. 1900., 716
Letters of Jane Elizabeth Waterston, 1866-1905, The, 79
Letters of Lord and Lady Wolseley, 1350
Letters of Major-General Fitzroy Hart-Synnot, 572
Letters of Olive Schreiner, The, 1123
 Levi, N., 742
 Lewinsohn, Richard, 743
 Lewis, R. C., 744
 Lewsen, Phyllis, 745, 856
 Leyds, W. J., 746-47, 1252, 1255, 5
 Liberal Party, 184, 2, 5, 9, 37, 40
Liberal Party and the Jameson Raid, The, 184
Life and Adventure in Peace and War, 1353
Life and Deeds of Earl Roberts, The, 249
Life and Letters of George Wyndham, 789
Life and Letters of the Right Honourable Hugh C. E. Childers, The, 228
Life and Times of Sir John Charles Molteno, The, 879
Life and Work of Gustav Preller, 1875-1943, The, 357

- Life of a Regiment: A History of the Gordon Highlanders*, 434
Life of an Irish Soldier, 458
Life of Andrew Murray of South Africa, The, 355
Life of Field-Marshal Sir John French, First Earl of Ypres, 419
Life of General Sir Charles Carmichael Monro, 67
Life of General Sir Charles Warren, The, 1334
Life of General The Right Hon. Sir Redvers Buller, 847
Life of Jameson, The, 257
Life of Joseph Chamberlain, The, 439
Life of Lieutenant-General Sir Henry Evelyn Wood, 1330
Life of Lord Kitchener, 24
Life of Lord Roberts, The, 410
Life of Lord Wolseley, 829
Life of Major-General Sir John Ardagh, 806
Life of Major General Wauchope, 336
Life of Sir George Pomeroy Colley, The, 188
Life of the Rt. Hon. Cecil John Rhodes, 871
Light Horse: The Story of Australia's Mounted Troops, 870
Liman, Paul, 748
"Linchwe I and the Kgatla Campaign in the South African War," 894
Lindley Affair: A Diary of the Boer War, The, 1041
Lindley, Battle of, 255, 398, 1041, 1225
Lindley, Francis, 749
Linesman, 750-51
Linklater, Joseph, 752
Lion et le sanglier: deux heros de la guerre des Boers: Paul Kruger et Georges de Villebois-Mareuil, Le, 674
Lion's Cage, The, 432, 20
Listening for the Drums, 554
Little Field Marshall: Sir John French, The, 612
Livre d'Or (The Golden Book) of the Canadian Contingents in South Africa, Le, 717
Lloyd, F., 753
Lloyd, J. Barkley, 754
Lloyd, T. H. Eyre, 755
Lockhart, J. G., 756, 6
Lombaard, S. G., 757
Lombard, J. P. la Grange, 758
Lombard, P. S., 759
London, Convention of, 3
London to Ladysmith via Pretoria, 237
Long, B. K., 760
Long, C. J., 26
Long, Mrs. Walter H. C., 761
Long Tom: The Story of the Four Long Tom Guns in the 2nd Anglo-Boer War, 545
Longford, Elizabeth, 853
Lorch, A. E., 762
Lord de Villiers and His Times: South Africa, 1842-1914, 1285
Lord Kitchener, 606
Lord Lovat: *A Biography*, 749
Lord Methuen and the British Army, 864
Lord Milner and South Africa, 640
"Lord Milner and South Africa," 1282
"Lord Milner and the South African State," 811
Lord Milner et l'évolution de l'impérialisme britannique, 548
Lord Milner's Work in South Africa From Its Commencement in 1897 to the Peace of Vereeniging in 1902, 1361
Lord Roberts, 646
Lord Roberts, 1303
Lord Roberts: A Biography, 150
Lord Roberts of Kandahar, 656
Lord Roberts: The Story of His Life, 1268
Lord Salisbury and Foreign Policy: The Close of the Nineteenth Century, 519
"Lord Salisbury, Mr. Chamberlain and South Africa, 1895-9," 996
Lossberg, Otto von, 763
"Lost Causes of the Jameson Raid," 104
Lost Trails of the Transvaal, 167
Lotgevalle van die burgerlike bevolking gedurende dien Anglo-Boereoorlog, Die, 987
Löföter, Johannes, 692, 1143
Louis, Prince of Orleans and Braganca, 764
Louis, William Roger, 183
Louw, James Murray, 765
Louw, R. M., 1023-25
Lovegrove, Peter, 766
Lovell, Kenneth C., 767
Lovell, R. L., 768
Lowry, Edward P., 769
Lucas, Charles, 770-71
Lugan, Bernard, 772
Lupini, Mario, 773
Luttman-Johnson, F., 774
Lynch, Arthur, 775
Lynch, G., 776
Lyttelton, Neville, 777
McCance, McCance, 217
MacCarthy, Desmond, 778
M'Caw, R., 779
M'Clelland, R., 780
McCormick, Alexander S., 781
McCourt, Edward, 782
McCraken, Donald P., 783
Macdonald, Donald, 784
Macdonald, Hector, 247, 380, 883

- McDonald, J. G., 785
 Macdonald, J. Ramsay, 786
 McDonald, R. D., 704, 787
 McDonell, Geoffrey L., 1128
 McHugh, R. J., 788
 MacKail, J. W., 789
 Mackenzie, Fred A., 790
 MacKenzie, W. Douglas, 791
 Mackern, H. F., 792
 Mackinnon, W. H., 793
 Mclean, A.H.H., 794
 MacMunn, George, 795
 Macnab, Roy, 796-97
 Macready, Nevil, 798
 Mader, Friedrich Wilhelm, 799
Mafeking: A Diary of the Siege, 44
Mafeking: A Victorian Legend, 433
Mafeking Mail Special Siege Slip, 799
 Mafeking, Siege of, 7, 40-41, 44, 124, 133, 259, 403, 433, 555, 565, 591, 652, 688, 799, 869, 918, 985, 1002, 1051, 1075, 1081, 1214, 1281, 1310, 1324-25, 1340, 1371, **15-19**, **30-31**, **38**
 Magaliesberg campaign, 1167
 "Magersfontein," 723, 1316
 Magersfontein, Battle of, 45, 63-64, 336, 363, 723, 965, 1316, **24-25**
 Magnus, Philip, 801, **6**
 Maguire, T. Millier, 293
 Mahan, A. T., 802, **13**
 Mainwaring, A. E., 1068
Majuba. Bronkerspruit, Ingogo, Lang's Nek, and Krugerdorp, 586
 Majuba Day, 47, **31**
Majuba Gedenkboek: Uitgave ter Herdenking van die Boere se Stydter Verkryging van Hul Onafhanklikheid 'n Eeu Gelede, 139
 Majuba Hill, Battle of, 47, 114-15, 139, 188, 216, 276-77, 586, 757, 812, 1035, 1125, **1-2**, **27**
 Makins, E., 803
 Makins, George H., 804
 Malan, Jacques, 805
 Malmesbury, Susan, Countess of, 806, **22**
Man Who Disobeyed: Sir Horace Smith-Dorrien and His Enemies, *The*, 1164
Man Who Killed Kitchener: The Life of Fritz Joubert Duquesne, *The*, 1352
Managing the South African War: Politicians v. Generals, 1207
 Mangold, W.F.C., 807
 Marais, J. S., 808, **6**, **8**, **10**
 Marais, Jaap, 809
March Hare: The Autobiography of Elsa Smithers, 1165
 Marden, Thomas O., 1317
 Markham, Alfred, 810
 Marks, Shula, 811
 Marling, Percival, 812
 Marlowe, J., 813
 Marquard, Leo, 814
 Marquard, Margaret, 814
 Marquis, T. G., 815
 Marris, N. Murrell, 816
 Marsh, Peter T., 817
 Marshall-Cornwall, James, 818
 Marson, T. B., 819
Marthinus Theunis Steijn, 1070
Marthinus Theunis Steyn: 'n lewensbeskrywing, 1251
 Martin, A. C., 820-21, **37**
 Martin, B., 822
 Martin, Christopher, 823
 Martin, David, 824
 Martin, Gilbert, 825
 Martineau, John, 826
Martin-Leake Double VC, 243
 Mary Eugenie Hibbard: Nurse, Gentlewoman and Patriot, 583
 Matthews, J. W., 827
 Matthiolius, 828
 Maurice, F. B., 829
 Maurice, F. M., 830-31
Mauserknal, Die, 1261
 Maxse, F. I., 832
 May, E. S., 833
 May, Edward, 834
 May, H. J., 835
 Maydon, J. G., 836
Mechanism of War, The, 750
Medical and Surgical Experience in the South African War, 1097
Medical History of the Anglo-Boer War: A Bibliography, *The*, 81
Medical History of the War in South Africa: An Epidemiological Essay, *The*, 1149
 medical services, 43, 81, 92, 128, 148-49, 170, 243, 291, 324, 340, 378, 389, 415, 425, 483, 503, 505, 514, 584, 622, 634, 641, 676, 714-15, 719, 729, 766, 804, 901, 915, 937, 950, 1016, 1059, 1075, 1095, 1097, 1148, 1149, 1151, 1189, 1233, 1234, 1237, 1287, 1341
 Meijer, Jan Willem, 837
 Meintjes, Johannes, 838-844, **14**
 Meiring, P., 845
 Mellish, Annie, 846
Melton Prior: War Artist in Southern Africa, 1895 to 1900, 212
 Melville, C. H., 847
 Member of the H.A.C., 848
Memorials of Charles Dixon Kimber, 1225
Memories of Forty-Eight Years Service, 1163
Memoirs of General Ben Bouwer, 739

- Memoirs of Paul Kruger, The*, 709
Memoirs of Senator the Hon. G. G. Munnik, 899
 Men at the Front, 849
Men of Valour: History of the VIII King's Royal Irish Hussars, 401
 Mendelsohn, Michael, 850
 Mendelssohn, Sidney, 851
Mendlessohn's South African Bibliography, 851
Memoir of the Late Lieutenant-Colonel Charles Dalton, R.A.M.C., A, 1229
Memoirs of the Boer War, 1167
 Mends, H. R., 852-53
 Merensky, Alexander, 854
 Mermeix, 855
 Merriman, John X., 744, 856
Met de Boeren-Commando's Mijne ervaringen als veldprediker, 681
Met Cronjé aan die wesfront, 1899-1900 en Waarom het die Boere die oorlog verloor?, 259
Met den Mauser: Persoonlijke ervaringen in den Zuid-Afrikaanschen Oorlog, 988
Met die Boere in die veld: die ervarings van die skryfster, 1020
Met het Roods Kris Kee in dem Boerenvrijheidsoorlog, 584
Met ryperd en mauser, 124
Met Steijn en de Wet op Kommando: Een dagboek uit den Oorlog in Zuid Afrika, 595
Methods of Barbarism? Roberts and Kitchener and Civilians in the Boer Republics, January 1900-May 1902, 1178
 Methuen, A.M.S., 857
 Methuen, Lord Paul S., 92, 653, 691, 864, 1315-16, 16, 22, 24-25
 Meyer, Jan H., 858
 Meyer, Lysle E., 859
 Nichols, G. A., 413
 Midleton, Earl of, 860
Mijne Herinneringen uit den Anglo-Boeren Oorlog, 1270
Military Forces of the Crown, The, 293
Military Notes on the Dutch Republics of South Africa, 506
 Militêre regering in Transvaal, 1900-1902, 192
 "Militêre situasie aan die benede-Tugela op die vooraand van die Britse deurbraak by Pietersshoogte, 26 Februarie 1900, Die," 48
Militia Unit in the Field: Being a Brief Account of the Doings of the Sixth Battalion Lancashire Fusiliers in the South African War During the Years 1900 and 1901, A, 861
 Miller, Carman, 862
 Miller, David S., 863
 Miller, Stephen M., 864
Millicent Garrett Fawcett, 1200
 Millin, Sarah. G., 865-66, 10, 30-31, 33
 Milne, James, 866
 Milner, Alfred, 185, 189, 260, 267, 271, 343, 347, 394, 548, 582, 640, 654, 710-11, 724, 782, 808, 811, 813, 868-69, 929, 955, 995, 1086, 1141, 1196, 1282, 1319, 1361, 1363, 7-10, 16, 21-23, 40-41
Milner: Apostle of Empire, 813
Milner Papers, The, 582
Milner: Viscount Milner of St. James's and Cape Town, 929
 Milner, Viscountess, 869
 "Milnerism," 1196
Minutes of Evidence, Appendices and Index, 515
 "Missing Telegrams and the Jameson Raid, The," 1357
Mit den Deutschen im Buren-Kriege, 1107
Mit Santa Barbara in Südafrika, 763
 Mitchell, Elyne, 870
 Mitchell, L. M., 871
Mobile Boer Being the Record of the Observations of Two Burgher Boer Officer, The, 590
 Mockler-Ferryman, A. F., 872-73
 Modder River, 691, 965, 1315, 24
 Moeller, B., 874
 Moffett, E. C., 875
 Moggridge, Ann, 876
 Mohlamme, Jacob Saul, 877
 Molteno, James T., 878
 Moltano, P. A., 879
 Monck-Mason, Edith M., 880
 Monik, S., 881
 Montague, W. E., 882
 Montgomery, John, 883
 Montgomery-Cunninghame, Thomas, 884
 Moore, D. M., 885
 Moore, Geoffrey, 886, 978
 Moore, H., 887
 Moore, James G. Harle, 888
 Moores, S., 889
 Morant, Breaker, 160, 210, 233, 289, 298, 320, 321, 650, 1047
 Morley, Viscount, 890
 Morrison, E.W.B., 891
Mortality Experience of the Imperial Forces During the War in South Africa, The, 1120
 Morton, Desmond, 892
 Morton, J. W., 893
 Morton, R. F., 894
 Mostert, D., 895
Mounted Police of Natal, The, 614
 "Moving Lord Kitchener: Black Military

- Transport and Supply Work in the South African War, 1899-1902," 909
- Mr. Chamberlain: His Life and Public Career*, 658
- Mr. Thomas Atkins*, 567
- Mule Driver at the Front*, A, 99
- Müller, Alfred von, 896
- Muller, C.F.J., 897
- Muller, C. H., 898
- Munnik, George Glaeser, 899
- Murray, Alasdair, 900
- Murray, Mary, 901
- Murray, P. L., 902
- Murray, Robert H., 903
- Murray, S. M., 904
- Musgrave, George Clarke, 905
- Music of the Guns: Based on Two Journals of the Boer War*, 835
- Musiker, Naomi, 906, 11
- Musiker, Reuben, 906-07, 11
- Muste-Roll of Angus: South African War, 1899-1902, The*, 120
- My Army Life*, 349
- My Diocese During the War*, 77
- My Early Life*, 238, 15
- My Experiences of the Boer War*, 1187
- My Life Story*, 775
- My Picture Gallery*, 869
- My Political Life*, 11
- My Reminiscences of the Anglo-Boer War*, 1270
- Naauppoort Nek, 1307
- Narrative of the Boer War*, A, 214
- Nasson, Bill, 908-11, 14, 39
- Natal, 58, 174-75, 198, 248, 478, 696, 727, 751, 849, 949, 1308, 1351, 14, 16, 20-23, 27, 30
- Natal Campaign, The*, 174
- Natal Past and Present*, 1351
- Nathan, M., 912
- Nation and the Empire Being a Collection of Speeches and Addresses, The*, 868
- National and Social Problems*, 570
- Native Life in South Africa*, 986
- Native Races and the War*, 186
- Naval Brigades in the South African War*, 653
- "Naval Guns in Natal, 1899-1902, The," 542
- Neame, L. E., 913
- Neck, Louis van, 914
- Nederlandsche Roods Kruis*, 915
- Neethling, E., 916, 37
- Neil, C. L., 917
- Neilly, J. E., 918
- Neville, John Ormond, 919
- Nevinson, H. W., 920
- New South Africa, The*, 108
- New Zealand troops, 69, 153, 718, 752, 771, 921, 1199
- New Zealander, A, 921
- New Zealanders and the Boer War or Soldiers from the Land of the Moa*, 921
- New Zealanders in South Africa, 1899-1902, The*, 543
- Newbury, George, 922
- Newton, Scott, 923, 6
- Nienaber, P. J., 924
- 1900: *l' Afrique decouvre l'Europe*, 70
- Nixon, John, 925, 5
- No Charge for Delivery*, 322
- No Outspan*, 1044
- Norris, S. L., 926
- Norris-Newman, Charles L., 927
- North Yorks Militia, The*, 1240
- Northrop, Henry Davenport, 100
- Northumberland Fusiliers, The*, 1355
- Not Least in the Crusade: A Short History of the Royal Army Medical Corps*, 766
- Notes and Reflections on the Boer War*, 91
- "Notes of a Regimental Doctor in a Mounted Infantry Corps," 676
- Notes of Military Interest*, 1243
- Nurse's Life in War and Peace*, A, 729
- Nutting, Anthony, 928
- Oberholster, A. G., 132, 929
- O'Brien, T. H., 929
- O'Connell, J., 929
- O'Connor, Thomas Patrick, 1033
- Official Correspondence Between the Governments of Great Britain, the South African Republic, and the Orange Free State, Which preceded the War in South Africa, The*, 241
- Official Records of the Australian Military Contingents to the War in South Africa*, 902
- Official Records of the Guards' Brigade in South Africa*, 473
- Ogden, H. J., 931
- Ogston, Alexander, 932
- Olave, Lady Baden-Powell, 591
- Old Soldiers Never Die*, 822
- Old Transvaal: 1834-1899, The*, 216
- O'Leary, Byron E., 659
- Oliver, Ben, 933
- Oliver, Danie, 1025
- O'Mahony, Charles James, 642
- O'Meara, W.A.J., 934
- Omond, G.W.I., 935
- O'Moore, MacCarthy, 936
- On Active Service in South Africa With 'The Silent Sixth.'*, 752

- On Active Service with the Northumberland and Durham Yeomanry, Under Lord Methuen: South Africa 1900-1901*, 1180
- On Active Service with St. John's Ambulance Brigade. South African War, 1899-1902. A Diary of Life and Events in the War Hospitals at Wynberg, Nourse Deep, Johannesburg, and Other Places*, 634
- On Active Service with the S. J. A. B., South African War, 1899-1902; A Diary of Life and Events in the War Hospitals at Wynberg, Nourse Deep, Johannesburg, and Other Places*, 1148
- On Commando*, 1260, 14
- On the Eve of the War*, 222
- On the Heels of De Wet*, 637
- On the Psychology of Military Incompetence*, 332
- On the Transvaal Border (War Pictures)*, 451
- On the Veldt: A Plain Narrative of Service Afeld in South Africa*, 744
- Ondergang van een wereld: historisch-oeconomische studie over de oorzaken van den Anglo-Boer Oorlog*, De 1278
- One Thousand Miles With the C.I.V.*, 754
- One Who Knows*, 937
- One Who Was In It*, 938
- O'Neil, Patrick Michael, 939
- Only an Anguish to Live Here: Olive Schreiner and the Boer War*, 1111
- Ons parool, dae uit die dagboek van 'n krygsgevangene*, 1005
- Ontplooiing van die Engelse Oorlog, 1899-1900*, Die, 530
- O'okiep, Siege of, 173, 687, 35
- O'okiep: The Defense and Relief of O'okiep, Cape Colony, 4 April to 4 May 1902*, 687
- Oom Paul's People: A Narrative of the British-Boer Troubles in South Africa, With a History of the Boers, the Country and Its Institutions*, 592
- Oorlog en ballingskap*, 145
- oorlog in Zuid-Afrika*, Die, 1015
- Oorlog in Zuid-Afrika: een beschrijving*, De, 375
- Oorlogsavonture van Generaal Wynand Malan*, 982
- Oorlogsdagboekie van H. S. Oosterhagen, Januarie-Junie 1902.*, 940
- Oorlogsdagboek van Jan F. E. Celliers 1899-1902*, 224
- Oorlogsdakboek van 'n Transvaalse burger te velde*, 1087
- Oorlogsjoernaal van S. J. Burger*, 172
- Oorlogsherinneringe*, 898
- Oorsake van die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*, Die, 1114
- Oosterhagen, H. S., 940
- Oosthuizen, A. V., 941
- Oosthuizen J., 942
- Oosthuizen, S.P.R., 943
- "Op Amajuba," 757
- Op die Bermudas beland, my herinneringe uit de tweede vryheidsoorlog*, 109
- Op die natalse front (1 Oktober 1899-31 Mei 1900)*, 1308
- Op die Transvaalse front, 1 Junie 1900-31 Oktober 1900*, 1309
- Oppenheim, L., 944
- Opsaal: Herinneringe aan die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog*, 4
- Orange Free State, 54-55, 241, 281, 323, 927, 1011, 2, 4, 7, 17, 21-22, 24, 36
- Orange River, 2
- Organization, Equipment, and Despatch and Service of the Canadian Contingents During the War In South Africa, 1899-1900*, 203
- Origin of the Anglo-Boer War Revealed*, 1219
- Origins of the Boer War*, 1209
- Origins of the South African War, 1899-1902, The*, 1161
- Origins of the South African War: Joseph Chamberlain and the Diplomacy of Imperialism, The*, 995
- Orpen, Neil, 945
- Orr, A. S., 946
- Otis, James, 947
- Otto, J. C., 948, 37
- Our Boys under Fire or Maritime Volunteers in South Africa*, 846
- Our Little Army in the Field: The Canadians in South Africa*, 1042
- Our Regiments in South Africa 1899-1902: Their Record, Based on the Despatches*, 1194
- Outlanders: A Study of Imperial Expansion in South Africa, 1877-1902*, 1279
- Outlanders: The Men Who Made Johannesburg, The*, 275
- Outlaw Trails: A Yankee Hobo Soldier of the Queen*, 1347
- Out of the Crucible Being the Romantic Story of the Witwatersrand Goldfields*, 232
- Outpost Duties as Learnt in South Africa*, 97
- Outposts and Convoys With the Ayrshire Volunteers in South Africa*, 779
- Ovendale, Richie, 949
- Oxford History of South Africa, The*, 1222
- Oxfordshire Light Infantry Chronicle, The*, 872
- Oxfordshire Light Infantry in South Africa, The*, 873

- P. Kruger en de Opkomst der Zuid Afrikaansche Republiek*, 1257
- Paardeberg, Battle of, 43, 47, 64, 172, 725, 883, 892, 957, 1306, **30, 32, 40**
- Pace of the Ox: The Life of Paul Kruger, The*, 670
- Pagaard, Stephen A., 950
- Page, A. H., 951
- Page, Jesse, 952
- Painting the Map Red: Canada and the South African War*, 861
- Pakenham, Elizabeth, 853, 6
- Pakenham, Thomas, 954-55, **10, 13, 18-20, 22, 29, 31**
- "Pamphlet Campaign on the Boer War. The," 428
- Papers on the Political Situation in South Africa, 1885-1895*, 738
- Papers Relating to the Administration of Martial Law in South Africa*, 480
- Park, C. W., 956
- Parkyn, H. G., 957
- Parry, D. H., 958
- "Participation in the Boer War: People's War, People's Non-War or Non-People's War?," 318
- Participation of Non-Europeans in the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902, The, 1152
- Patterson, A. B. "Banjo," 1134
- Paul Kruger and His Times*, 1183
- Paul Kruger die Volksman*, 758
- Paul Kruger: His Life and Times*, 395
- Paul Kruger: His Life and Times*, 912
- Paul Kruger: His Life Story*, 790
- Paul Kruger: The Life Story of the President of the Transvaal*, 611
- Pax Britannica in South Africa*, 405
- Peace and War in the Transvaal: An Account of the Defense of Fort Mary*, 761
- Peace Negotiations Between the Governments of the South African Republic and the Orange Free State, and the Representatives of the British Government Which Terminated in the Peace Concluded at Vereeniging on the 31st May, 1902, The*, 683
- Peace or War in South Africa*, 857
- Peach, Victor, 959
- Pearse, Henry H. S., 960-61
- Pearse, H. W., 962
- Pease, A. E., 963
- Peel, Sidney, 964
- "Peep Over the Barleycorn" *In the Firing Line with the P.O.W., 2nd West Yorkshire Regiment, Through the Relief of Ladysmith* A, 642
- Pemberton, William B., 965, **14, 29**
- Pen Pictures of the War by Men at the Front*, 849
- Penner, Cornelius D., 966
- Penning, L., 967
- Pennington, R.L.A., 968
- Perham, Frank, 969
- Perry, James M., 970
- "Personal Reminiscences of a Free State Burgher During the Investment of Ladysmith," 971
- Petre, F. Lorraine, 972
- Petrie, Charles, 973
- Petticoat Commando, or Boer Women in the Secret Service. The*, 131
- Phelan, T., 974
- Pictures of War*, 1203
- Phillipps, L. M., 975
- Phillips, Lionel, 976
- Phillips, Mrs. Lionel, 977
- Pickman, Fred James, 978
- Pickman's Progress in the City Imperial Volunteers in South Africa, 1900, 978*
- Pienar, Philip, 979-80
- Pieterse, D. J., 981
- Pieterse, H. J. C., 982
- Piety of Afrikaans Women: Diaries of Guilt. The*, 721
- Pillars of Empire, Studies & Impressions*, 267
- Pimblett, W. M., 983
- Piper of Pax: The Life Story of Sir Robert Baden-Powell, The*, 1281
- Pirow, Oswald, 984
- Plaattje, Sol T., 985-86, 1324, **15, 38**
- Plain and Veldt*, 2
- Ploeger, J., 987
- Plokhoooy, C., 988
- Plomer, William, 989
- Plumer, Herbert, 568, 1002
- Plumer of Messines*, 568
- Plumer: The Soldiers' General*, 1002
- Poel, Jean van der, 990, 5-6
- Pohl, Victor, 991, 14
- Poinvin, Capitaine, 420
- Policy of South African Confederation, 1870-81, The, 465
- Political Institutions and Military Change: Lessons from Peripheral Wars*, 32
- Politique Boer. Faits et documents en réponse au docteur Kuyper* La, 533
- Pollak, Oliver B. and Karen, 992
- Pollock, A.W.A., 993-94
- Poplar Grove, Battle of, 218
- Porter, A. N., 995-97, **8, 10**
- Porter, Dilwin, 923, 6
- Portraits*, 778
- Post Office Militant, 1899-1902: The Anglo-Boer War. The*, 72
- Postal History of the Canadian Contingents in*

- the Anglo-Boer War, The*, 1089
 Pottinger, Brian, 998
 Powell, F. H., 999
 Powell, Geoffrey, 1000-02, **13**, **19**, **22-23**, **29**
 Pratt, Edwin, 1003
 Preller, Gustav S., 370, 1004-07
President Briand and His Times, 55
President Johannes Henricus Brand, 1115
President Kruger aan die Woord, 356
President Paul Kruger, 842
President Steyn, 843
President Steyn in die Krisisjare, 1896-1899, 689
President Thomas François Burgers, 368
 Pretoria, 62, 64-65, 74, 78, 297, 330, 798, 835, 892, 905, 1008, 1029-30, 1084, 1338
Pretoria From Within During the War, 74
 Pretoria, Treaty of, **3**
 Pretoria Prisoner, 1008
 Pretorius, Fransjohan, 1009-11
 Price, John E., 1012-13
 Price, Richard, 1014
 Priem, G. H., 1015
 Prime, Peter, 1016
 Prior, John C., 767
 Prior, Melton, 1017
 prisoners of war, 60, 90, 109, 145, 172, 513, 616, 620, 843, 1005, 1085, 1091, 1093, **13**, **32**
Private Memoir of Sir Thomas Fowler, Bart, A, 963
Private Tucker's Boer War Diary: The Transvaal War of 1899, 1900, 1901, & 1902 With the Natal Field Force, 1230, **32**
 Pro-Boer Liberals in Britain During the Boer War, The, 31
 pro-Boers, 31, 588, 698, 783, 786, **12**
Pro-Boers: The Anatomy of an Antiwar Movement, The, 698
Proclamations Issued by Field-Marshal Lord Roberts in South Africa., 475
Proconsul and Paramouncy in South Africa, 93
Proconsul in Politics: A Study of Lord Milner in Opposition and in Power, 463
Professional Papers of the Corps of Royal Engineers, 365
 "Profit or Patriotism, Natal, The Transvaal and the Coming of the Second Anglo-Boer War," 949
Protesbeweging van die Transvaalse Afrikaners, Die, 1262
 Prussia. Armee. Grosser Generalstab, 1018
Psychology of Jingoism, The, 604
Public Schools and the War in South Africa, 794
 Pyrah, G. B., 1019
Queen or President? An Indictment of Paul Kruger, 457
Queen Victoria's Little Wars, 382
 "Question of Imperial Complicity in the Jameson Raid, The," 341
 Raal, Sarah, 1020
 Raath, A.W.G., 1021-26, 1312, **14**, **37**
Radical Joe: A Life of Joseph Chamberlain, 668
 Radicalization of a Ministering Angel: A Biography of Emily Hobhouse, The, 671
 Radziwill, Princess, 1027
Raid and Reform, 1008
Raid on the Transvaal by Dr. Jameson, The, 27
 railroads, 454, 500
 Ralph, Julian, 693, 720, 1028-31
Rand at War, 1899-1902, The, 201
 "Rand Capitalists and the Coming of the South African War 1896-1899, The," 654
 Randell, Jack, 1032
Randlords, 366
 Randolph, Spencer, 1033
 Ranger, Terence, 1034
 Rankin, Reginald, 1205
 Ransford, Oliver, 1035-36, **21**, **28**
 Raoul-Duval, Roger, 1037
 Rawlinson, Lord, 831
 Ray, Cyril, 1038
 Reade, R. E., 1039
 "Reading History: The Boer War," 1162
Real Kruger and the Transvaal, The, 169
 Reay, W. T., 1040
Rebelle van die Stormberge: Tweede Vryheidsoorlog 1899-1902: 'n streekgeskiedenis van die Tweede vryheidsoorlog in Noordoos-Kaapland, 941
 "Rebelle-vetthoor in Kaapland gedurende die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog met spesiale verwysing na die militêre howe (1899-1902)," 1169
Récente guerre Sud-Africaine et ses enseignements, La, 118
 Reckitt, B. N., 1041
Recollections, 890
Record of a Regiment of the Line: Being a Regimental History of the 1st Battalion Devonshire Regiment During the Boer War, 1899-1902, A, 644
Record of Services of the 3rd Battn. The Prince of Wales's Leinster Regiment (Royal Canadians) in the South African War, 1900, 1901, 1902, 774
Record of the Cape Mounted Riflemen, 1328

- Record of the Mounted Infantry of the City Imperial Volunteers, The*, 1128
- Records and Reactions, 1856-1939*, 860
- Records of 'I' Company. A Brief History of the East Surrey Volunteers' Service in the South African War, The*, 437
- Records of the Dorset Imperial Yeomanry*, 426
- Records of the Norfolk Yeomanry Cavalry; To Which Is Added the Fencible and Provisional Cavalry of the Same County From 1780 to 1908; Together With the Account of the 43rd and 44th Squadrons of Imperial Yeomanry, Who Volunteered for the South African War*, 574
- Records of the Rough Riders (XXth Battalion Imperial Yeomanry) Boer War*, 1050
- refugee camps, see concentration camps
- Regimental Records of the Royal Welch Fusiliers*, 218
- Reid, Brian A., 1042
- Reitz, Deneys, 1043-45, 1099, **14**, **34**
- Reitz, F. W., 1046
- Relief of Ladysmith, The*, 28
- "Relief of Ladysmith, The," 304
- Relief of Ladysmith: The Artillery in Natal. The*, 1335
- Relief of Mafeking: How It Was Accomplished by Mahon's Flying Column with an Account of Some Earlier Episodes in the Boer War of 1899-1900, The*, 1371
- Rembe, A. C., 372
- Remember Butler: The Story of Sir William Butler*, 782
- Reminiscences of Kimberley*, 252
- Reminiscences of Sport and War*, 315
- Reminiscences of Three Campaigns*, 932
- Renar, Frank, 1047
- Repington, Charles à Court, 1048, **29**
- Report and Evidence of the War Commission Collated and Arranged by C. E. Hobhouse. M. P.*, 598
- Report by the Central British Red Cross Committee on Voluntary Organizations in Aid of the Sick and Wounded During the South African War*, 148, 499
- Report of His Majesty's Commissioners Appointed to Inquire Into the Military Preparations and Other Matters Connected With the War in South Africa*, 481
- Report of the Cape of Good Hope Society for Aid to Sick and Wounded in War*, 378
- Report of the Committee of the Portland Hospital*, 128
- Reports of the Select Committee Appointed to Inquire into the Purchase of Emergency Rations for the Use of the Canadian Troops in South Africa, Also With Minutes of Proceedings and Evidence of and Exhibits*, 204
- Report of the Select Committee of the Cape of Good Hope House of Assembly on the Jameson Raid into the Territory of the South African Republic: Presented to Parliament by Command of Her Majesty, March 1897*, 208
- Report of the Work of the Edinburgh and East of Scotland South African Hospital*, 1287
- Reports on Military Operations in South Africa and China*, 1244
- Report on the Medical Arrangements in the South African War*, 1341
- "Report on the Papers of Joseph Chamberlain Relating to the Jameson Raid and the Inquiry, A," 342
- Report on the Surgical Cases Noted in the South African War, 1899-1902*, 1189
- Reports on the Working of the Refugee Camps in the Transvaal, Orange River Colony, Cape Colony, and Natal*, 482
- Retrospect on the South African War (from the Artillery Standpoint). A*, 833
- "Returns Showing Casualties and Expenditure of Horses and Ammunition in the Royal Artillery During the Campaign in South Africa," 1049
- Revolution From Above. Rebellion From Below: The Agrarian Transvaal at the Turn of the Century*, 703
- Rew, H. G. McKenzie, 1050
- Reynolds, E. E., 1051
- Rhodes, 756
- Rhodes, 865
- Rhodes, 1217
- Rhodes: A Life*, 785
- Rhodes, Cecil, 25, 46, 104, 184, 245-46, 267, 335, 406, 427, 432, 531, 587, 618, 666, 740, 756, 778, 785, 865, 871, 934, 989, 1027, 1034, 1056, 1086, 1102, 1217, 1276, 1327, **3-7**, **16**, **19-21**, **23**, **38**, **41**
- Rhodes, Frank, 630
- Rhodes of Africa*, 531
- Rhodesia--and After Being the Story of the 17th and 18th Battalions of Imperial Yeomanry in South Africa.*, 448
- Rhodesia Served the Queen: Rhodesian Forces in the Boer War, 1899-1902*, 589
- Rhodie, Denys, 1052
- Richard Harding Davis, 337
- Richardson, Lawrence, 299
- Richardson, Wodehouse, 1053
- Ridpath, John Clark, 1054
- Rifle Brigade Chronicle for 1900, The*, 1264

- Rifle Brigade, 1800-1900, The*, 1356
Riflesman and Hussar, 812
Right o' the Line: Being Some Stories from the History of the Royal Regiment of Artillery, The, 95
Rights and Wrongs of the Transvaal War, 260
Riley, P., 1055
Rise and Fall of Krugerism, The, 1127
Roberts, Brian, 1056-58
Roberts, Cecil, 1059
Roberts, Frederick Sleight, 1st Earl, 24, 193, 249, 380, 404, 410, 414, 475, 486, 511-12, 532, 564, 646, 656, 835, 1028, 1031, 1060, 1063, 1100, 1178, 1268, 1303, **16, 19, 25-27, 30-34, 36**
Roberts of Pretoria, 404
"Roberts' March to Pretoria," 65
Robertson, John M., 1061-62
Robertson, William, 1063
Robinson, Ronald, 1064, 6
Rodwell, E. H., 1065
Rolleston, Lancelot, 1066
Rolleston, Maud, 1067
Romance of the Boer War, Humour and Chivalry of the Campaign, The, 936
Romer, C. F., 1068
Rompel, Frederick, 1069-71
Roncetti, Gary A., 1072
Rondom die Anglo-Boereoorlog, 700
Rooke, Robert Percy, 1073
Rooke, Walter G., 1073
Roos, J. C., 1074
Rorke, Melina de Fonseca, 1075
Rose, E. B., 1076
Rose, J. Markham, 888
Rose-Innes, Cosmo, 1077
Rose-Innes, James, 1078-79
Rosenthal, Eric, 1080
Rosenthal, Michael, 1081, 17
Rosny, J.-H., 1082
Ross, P. T., 1083
Ross, Edward, 1325
Rosslyn, Earl of, 1084-85
Rotbert, Robert I., 1086
Rothmann, Frederick Lindeberg, 1087
"Rough but Ready": An Official History of the Natal Mounted Rifles and Its Antecedent and Associated Units, 1854-1969, 460
Rowat, G., 1088
Rowe, Kenneth, 1089
Royal Army Service Corps: A History of Transport and supply in the British Army, The, 414
Royal Canadians in South Africa, The, 781
Royal Commission on South African Hospitals. Report of the Royal Commission Appointed to Consider and Report Upon the Care and Treatment of the Sick and Wounded During the South African Campaign, 483
Royal Commission on the War in South Africa. Minutes of Evidence Taken Before the Royal Commission on the War in South Africa, 484
Royal Commission on War Stores in South Africa, The, 498
Royal New South Wales Lancers, 1885-1960, The, 1226
Royals in South Africa (1899-1902), 803
Royle, Stephen A., 1091
Ruda, Richard, 1092
Ruijsenaers, L. C., 1093
Ruitveruur: Dramatiese hoogtepunte van die Boereoorlog, 1202
Runck, Richard, 1094
Rusher, Edward A., 1120
Russell, A., 753
Russell, A. F., 1095
Russell, A.V.F.V., 1096
Russia and the Anglo-Boer War, 673
Rustenburg at War: The Story of Rustenburg and Its Citizens in the First and Second Anglo-Boer Wars, 1365
Ryerson, G. Sterling, 1097
Rywell, Martin, 106
- Salisbury, Marquis of, 343, 996
Salt, G.E.S., 1098
Salvation Army at Work in the Boer War, 901
Sam Steele: Lion of the Frontier, 1191
Sampson, Victor, 1099
Sand River Convention, 2
Sanderson, Edgar, 1100
Sangree, Allen, 1101
Sanna' Post, Battle of, 64, 255, **31**
Sauer, Hans, 1102
Savage, Raymond, 1103
Scaife, A. H., 1104
Scapegoats of the Empire: The True Story of Breaker Morant's Bushveldt Carbineers, 1348
Scarlet and Khaki, 819
Scarlet into Khaki: The British Army on the Eve of the Boer War, 520
Scheepers se dagboek en die stryd in Kaapland, 1007
Scheibert, J., 1105
Schiell, Adolf, 1106, 1256
Schiele, Wolfgang, 1107
Science of War: A Collection of Essays and Lectures, 1892-1903, The, 585
Schikkerling, R. W., 1108
Schmidl, Erwin A., 1197
Schmidt, Max, 1109
Schoeman, Karel, 1110-12

- Scholtz, G. D., 1113-17, 10
 Scholtz, Leopold, 1118
 Scholtz, W. L. von Ranke, 1119
 Schooling, Frederick, 1120
Scouting on Two Continents, 178
 Schowalter, A., 1121
 Schreiner, Olive, 1111, 1122-24, 14
 Schreuder, D. M., 1125-26
 Scoble, John, 1127
Scots Guards, The, 466
 Scott, Guy H. Guillum, 1128
Scottish Yeomanry in South Africa, 946
Scramble for Africa : The Great Trek to the Boer War, 928
Scramble for Africa: The White Man's Conquest of the Dark Continent From 1876 to 1912, The, 955
Scramble for Southern Africa, The, 1126
Seaforth Highlanders South Africa, The, 300
Second Battalion Royal Dublin Fusiliers in the South African War, The, 1067
2nd Battalion South Wales Borderers. South African War, 1129
Second Boer War, The, 1344
Secret Service in South Africa, 103
 Secrett, T., 1130
 Selby, John M., 1131-32, 32
Select Bibliography of South African History: A Guide for Historical Research, A, 897
 "Select Documents From the Chamberlain Papers Concerning Anglo-Transvaal Relations, 1896-1899," 343
Selected Official Documents of the South African Republic and Great Britain, 1333
Selected Translations Pertaining to the Boer War, 1245
Selections from the Correspondence of J. X. Merriman, 855
Selections from the Correspondence of Percy Alport Molteno, 1892-1914, 1170
Selections from the Smuts Papers, 562
 Sellers, W. E., 1133
 Semmler, Clement, 1134
 Sessions, Harold, 1135
 Seton, A. M., 1136
 Seton-Karr, Henry, 1137
 Settle, J. H., 1138
Settlement After the War in South Africa, The, 379
Seventh (Princess Royal's) Dragoon Guards. The Story of the Regiment/ With the Regiment in South Africa, 1221
 Severance, John B., 1139
 Sevin Desplaces, L., 1140
 Seymour Vandelluer, 832
Shadows of the War, 43
Shamrock and Springbok: The Irish Impact on South African Military History, 881
 Shannon, Richard, 1141
 Sharp, G., 1142
 Shearing, David & Taffy, 1143
 Sheppard, Eric William, 1144
 Shields, Frank, 210
Short Account of the Part Played by the First Battalion the Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers During the South African Campaign, A, 1090
Short History of the Black Watch (Royal Highlanders), A, 1239
Short History of the Black Watch (Royal Highlanders) 1725-1907. To Which is Added an Account of the Second Battalion in the South African War, A, 1304
Short History of the Border Regiment, A, 1145
Short History of the British Army, A, 1144
Short History of the Cameronians, A, 1368
Short History of the 16th/5th Lancers, 957
Short History of the 3rd Battalion The Prince of Wales's Volunteers (South Lancashire Regiment) Formerly 4th Royal Lancashire (The Duke of Lancaster's Own) Light Infantry Militia, Being Principally Extracts From the Regimental Records, A, 1146
Should We Forget?, 916
 Sibbald, Raymond, 1147
Sick and Wounded in South Africa: What I Saw and Said of Them and of the Army Medical System, The 170
Sidelights on the March: the Experiences of an American Journalist in South Africa, 792
 Sidney, William, 1148
Siege Diary of William Watson, The, 1302
Siege of Kimberley Its Humorous and Social Side, The, 974
Siege of Ladysmith in 120 Pictures, The, 694
Siege of Ladysmith, The, 788
Siege of Ladysmith, The, 1142
Siege of Mafeking, The, 555
Siege of O'Okiep: Guerrilla Campaign in the Anglo-Boer War, The, 173
 "Siege of Pretoria, 1880-1881, The," 297
Siener van Rensberg en die Rebellie, 1026
Simple Lectures for Company Field Training: With an Epitome of Tactics and Lessons form the Boer War, 993
 Simpson, R. J. S., 1149
 Sims, M., 1150
Sir Alfred Milner and the Outbreak of the Anglo-Boer War, 345
 "Sir Alfred Milner on British Policy in South Africa in 1897," 185
Sir Charles Warren and Spion Kop: A

- Vindication*, 309
 "Sir Frederick Hamilton's Narrative of Events Relative to the Jameson Raid.", 569
Sir Frederick Treves: The Extra-Ordinary Edwardian, 1237
Sir George White, 248
Sir James Rose-Innes: Selected Correspondence, 1079
Sir John French: An Authentic Biography, 234
Sir Redvers Buller, 187
Sir Redvers Buller, 657
Sir Redvers Buller in the Post-Cardwellian Army: A Study of the Rise and Fall of a Military Reputation, 1220
Sir William Buller: An Autobiography, 189
Sir Winston Churchill, 111
 Sister X, 1151
 "Situation in South Africa: Further Personal Observations and Impressions, The," 1275
 Siwundhala, Hulme T., 1152
Six Years in the Transvaal, 127
 Sixsmith, E. K. G., 1153, 1154
Sketches in Mafeking and East Africa, 41
Slaan en vlug, 122
 "Slag van Spion Kop (24 Januarie 1900), Die," 223
Slegtkamp van Spionkop, 895
 Slocum, S. H., 1155
 Smail, J. L., 1156
Small Wars, Their Principles and Practice, 197
 Smit, F. P., 1157
 Smith, F., 1158
 Smith, Godfrey H., 1159
 Smith, H. Babington., 1160
 Smith, Iain R., 1161, 1162, 8-10
 Smith-Dorrien, Horace, 412, 1163, 1164
 Smithers, A. J., 1164
 Smithers, Elizabeth (Dietrich), 1165
Smuts, 561
 Smuts, J. C., 1166
 Smuts, Jan, 13, 19, 173, 269, 561, 562, 636, 687, 742, 760, 845, 865, 958, 1045-46, 1061, 1166, 1167, 1326, 5, 8, 15, 31, 33, 35, 40
Smuts: The Patriot, 845
 Smyth, B., 1168
 Snyman, J. H., 1169
Sol Plaatje: A Biography, 1325
Soldier and Padre. the Experiences of a Chaplain at the Front, 999
Soldier, Artist, Sportsman: The Life of General Lord Rawlinson of Trent, 831
Soldier in South Africa, A, 1
Soldier Who Did His Duty. The Record of Sergeant-Major Rowat While on Active Service For Twelve Years In India and South Africa, A, 1088
Soldier's Diary, A, 643
Soldiering On Being the Memoirs of General Sir Hubert Gough, 470
Soldiers and Others I Have Known, 34
Soldier's Memories in Peace and War, A, 1375
Soldier's Saga, A, 538
Soldiers, The, 1185
 Solomon, Vivian, 1170
Some Austral-African Notes and Anecdotes, 1232
 "Some Impressions of the War in South Africa," 239
Some Notes on the Queen's Royal West Surrey Regiment Together With an Account of the 2nd and 3rd Battalions in the Late South African Campaign and Guildford's Aid to the Troops During Peace and War, 302
Some Reminiscences, 976
Someone Has Blundered: Calamities of the British Army in the Victorian Age, 669
South Africa, 907
 "South Africa," 1223
South Africa: A Modern History, 295
South Africa: A Short History, 678
South Africa After the War A Narrative of Recent Travel, 695
South Africa: An Historical Introduction, 1238
South Africa and the Boer-British War, 619
South Africa and the Transvaal War, 274
South Africa. Correspondence Relating to the Despatch of Colonial Military Contingents to South Africa, 485
South Africa Despatches, 486, 508
South Africa Despatches. Natal Field Army, 487
South Africa. Further Correspondence Relating to Affairs in South Africa, 488
South Africa. Further Correspondence Relating to Affairs in South Africa, 489
South Africa. Further Correspondence Relating to Affairs in South Africa, 490
South Africa. Further Papers Relating to the Working of the Refugee Camps in South Africa, 491
South Africa in Peace and War, 917
South Africa: Its History, Heroes and Wars, 791
South Africa: Its Medical History, 719
South Africa of To-day, 1373
South Africa. Report of the Lands Settlement Commission. South Africa. Dated 28th November 1900. Part II. Documents, Evidence, &c., 492
South Africa. Report of the Transvaal Concessions Commission, Dated 19th April

- 1901, 493
South Africa Review Book of 50 Famous Cartoons: A Unique Souvenir of the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1900, The, 1172
South Africa: Supplementary Reconnaissance Reports, Sept./Nov. 1899, 509
South Africa. Telegrams, 510
South Africa. Telegrams and Letters Sent by F. M. Lord Roberts, 511
South Africa. The Spion Kop Despatches, 494
South African Album, 880
South African Campaign, The, 547
South African Casualty Roll: The "South African Field Force" 11th Oct. 1899-June 1902, The, 1171
South African Conspiracy: or The Aims of Afrikanerdom, The, 86
South African History: A Bibliographical Guide with Special Reference to Territorial Expansion and Colonization, 906, 11
South African History Before 1900: A Select Bibliography of Articles, 1223
"South African Hospitals Commission, The," 1233
South African League, 7
South African Memories, 400
South African Memories Social, Warlike & Sporting From Diaries Written at the Time, 1340
South African Predicament., 1179
South African Recollections, 977
South African Remembers, A, 462
South African Republic. Correspondence Relating to the Bloemfontein Conference, 1899, 476
South African Republic. Further Correspondence Relating to the Political Affairs of the South African Republic, 496
South African Republic. Papers Relating to the Complaints of British Subjects in the South African Republic, 497
South African Republic, see Transvaal
South African Review, 1172
South African War Books: An Illustrated Bibliography of English Language Publications Relating to the Boer War of 1899-1902, 535, 11
South African War Casualty Roll: The Natal Field Force, 20th Oct. 1899-26th Oct. 1900, The, 474
South African War, 1899-1900: Home and Overseas Correspondence by F. M. Lord Roberts, 512
South African War, 1899-1900: A Military Retrospect Up to the Relief of Ladysmith, 926
South African War, 1899-1902. A Bibliography of Books and Articles in Periodicals, with an Index, The, 536
"South African War (1899-1902): Context and Motive Reconsidered., The," 997
South African War, 1899-1902: New Brunswick Men at War, 658
South African War, 1899-1902. Telegrams Relating to Censorship, Prisoners of War Etc., 513
South African War Honours and Awards, 1899-1920: Officers and Men of the Army and Navy Mentioned in Despatches, 1173
South African War Record of the 1st Battalion Queen's Own Cameron Highlanders, 200
"South African War, The," 115
South African War, The, 909a
South African War: The Anglo-Boer War 1899-1902, The, 1296, 13
"South African Year of Crisis 1899," A, 130
Southern Africa Since 1800, 319
Southern Cross Scots: The Australian and New Zealand Participation in the Marquis of Tullibardine's Scottish Horse During the South African War of 1899-1902, 1013
Southworth, Samuel A., 195
Souvenir of the Siege of Mafeking, 1214
Souvenirs de la guerre du Transvaal: journal d'un volontaire, 732
Spender, Harold, 1174
Spicer, A. R. W., 1175
Spiers, Edward M., 1176
Spies, S. B., 1177, 1178, 37
Spion Kop, 219
Spion Kop, Battle of, 57, 121, 142, 209, 219, 223, 250, 309, 494, 895, 944, 965, 1036, 1048, 1334, 27-29
"Spion Kop—Hill of Valour," 209
Spooner, F. P., 1179
Spotprente van de Anglo-Boereoorlog, 1258
Spur and the Sprocket: The Story of the Royal Canadian Dragoons, The, 1362
Spurgin, Karl B., 1180
Staatskundige Ontwikkeling van die Suid Afrikaanse Republiek onder Kruger en Leyds: Transvaal, Die, 125
Staatsopvattinge van Paul Kruger, Die, 1157
"Staff in the War, The," 540
Staff Work of the Anglo-Boer War, The, 144
Stals, W. A., 1254
Staniforth, J. M., 1182
"States of Injury: Josephine Butler on Slavery, Citizenship and the Boer War," 182
Statham, F. R., 1183
Steele, S. B., 1184
Steenkamp, Willem, 1185

- Steevens G. W., 1186
 Sternberg, Adalbert Wenceslaus Heinrich
 Leopold Maria, Graf von., 1187
 Stevens, F. T., 1188
 Stevenson, W. F., 1189
 Steyn, Marthinus, 258, 595, 681, 689, 843, 979-
 80, 1070, 1110, 1251, 7, 24, 34, 41
 Stewart, Patrick F., 1190
 Stewart, Robert, 1191
 Stickney, A., 1192
 Stirling, John., 1193, 1194
 Stokes, Eric, 1195-96, 10
 Stokes, Kathleen Rooke, 1073
 "St. Helena as a Boer Prisoner of War Camp,
 1900-02: Information from the Alice
 Stopford Green Papers," 1091
 Stone, Jay . 1197
 Stormberg, Battle of, 941, 994, 22-25
*Story of an African Crisis: Being the Truth
 About the Jameson Raid and the
 Johannesburg Revolt of 1896, The*, 436
Story of 'G' Troop Royal Horse Artillery, The,
 308
*Story of H.M.S. Powerful, From the Diary of a
 Powerful Man, The*, 1198
*Story of Majuba Hill: A Tale of Highland
 Heroism Told by Officers of the 92nd
 Regiment, The*, 277
Story of Melina Rorke, R.R.C., The, 1075
*Story of My Captivity During the Transvaal
 War, The*, 607
Story of My Life, The, 242
*Story of South Africa. An Account of the
 Despatch of Contingents from Australia and
 New Zealand and Their Exploits on the
 Battle Fields, The*, 69
Story of South Africa, The, 1054
*Story of the Australian Bushmen (Being Notes
 of a Chaplain), The*, 516
*Story of the Boers: Narrated by Their Own
 Leaders. Prepared Under the Authority of
 the South African Republics, The* 1250
*Story of the Cape Mounted Riflemen 1st August,
 1878-31st March, 1913, A*, 762
*Story of the Imperial Light Horse in the South
 African War, The*, 445
*Story of the Royal Scots (The Lothian
 Regiment), 1306*
Story of the Royal Welsh Fusiliers, The, 1228
*Story of the 34th Company (Middlesex)
 Imperial Yeomanry, The*, 264
 Stowers, Richard, 1199
 Strachey, Ray, 1200
*Strategische Taktik der Schlachten. Mit
 Berücksichtigung des Burenkriegs*, 107
Strategy of Victory, 1914-1915, The, 117
Stray Recollections, 198
Struggle for South Africa 1875-1899, The, 768
 Strydom, C.J.S., 1201-02
 "Studies in the Generalship of the Boer
 Commanders," 59
 Stuart, John, 1203
 Sturrock, J. P., 1204
Subaltern's Letters to His Wife, A, 1205
*Summary of Tactics for Examination With
 Lessons of the South African War*, 889
*Sunshine and Battle-Smoke: Reminiscences of
 a War Correspondent*, 456
 supplies, 498, 951
 Supply Services of the British Army in the South
 African War, The, 951
Surgical Experience in South Africa, 804
 Surrridge, Keith, 1206-07
 Sutton, Ralph, 1208
 "Swaziland Question and a Road to the Sea,
 1887-1895, The," 438
 Sweig, Martin, 1209
 Swinton, E. D., 1210
*Sword in the Sand The Life and Death of
 Gideon Scheepers*, 844
 Symons, Julian, 1211-12, 14, 27, 29
 Symons, William Penn, 20

Tactical Lectures., 1065
 tactics, 14, 18, 91, 107, 113, 118, 197, 199,
 230, 407, 415, 420, 423, 726, 763, 889, 968,
 993, 1018, 1037, 1065, 1321, 12
Tactics of To-Day, The, 199
Tagebuchblätter aus dem Boerenkriege, 828
*Tagebuchblätter eines deutschen Arztes aus
 dem Burenkriege*, 1227
*Taktische Folgerungen aus dem Burenkriege
 und der Gruppenangriff*, 113
*Talana, die drie generaals-slag by Dundee,
 met lewensskets van genl. Daniel Erasmus*,
 1006
 Talana Hill, Battle of, 728, 1006, 20-21
 "Talana Hill: Opening Shots of the Boer War,"
 728
Tale of a Field Hospital, The, 1234
*Tant Alie of the Transvaal, Her Diary 1880-
 1902*, 38
Tasmanians in the Transvaal War, 165
 Tatham, G. F., 1213
 Taylor, D., 1214
 telegraph, 597
*Ten Months in the Field with the Boers by an
 Ex-Lieutenant of General de Villebois-
 Mareuil*, 377
 Terblanche, Annette, 1215
*Terug na kommando. Avonture van Willie
 Steyn en vier ander krygsgevangenes*, 1277

- Terugblik op my oorlogsjare*, 'n, 787
That Miss Hobhouse, 396
 Theron, Danie, 138
They Proved to All the Earth: A Source Book of Victoria's Dead in the South African War, 1012
 Theal, G. McCall, 1216
 Themaat, H. Ver Loren van, 1217
Theses and Dissertations on Southern Africa, 992
They Came to South Africa, 645
They Dared Mightily, 1318
 Thomas, Anthony, 1218
 Thomas, C. H., 1219
Thomas François Burgers; Staatspresident, 1872-1877, 15
 Thomas, James Brown, 1220
 Thompson, C. W., 1221
 Thompson, L. M., 1222-24
 Thomson, Ada, 1225
 Tomasson, W. H., 1231
 Thomson, S. J., 1226
 Thorneycroft, A. W., 28-29
 "Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry on Spion Kop," 944
Those Bloody Women: Three Heroines of the Boer War, 1058
Those Restless Years, 1156
Thoughts on South Africa, 1124
Three Years' War, 326, 14, 34, 41
Thrilling Experiences in the War in South Africa, 376
Through Fifteen Reigns: A Complete History of the Household Cavalry, 1301
Through Shot and Flame, 681, 14, 41
 Tilemann, Hero, 1227
Times' History of the War in South Africa, The, 12, 12
 Tipping, H. Avary, 1228
To Love One's Enemies: The Work and Life of Emily Hobhouse Compiled from Letters and Writings, Newspaper Cuttings and Official Documents, 50
 "To Paardeberg," 723
To the Bitter End: a Photographic History of the Boer War, 733
To the Committee of the Distress Fund for South African Women and Children. Report of a Visit to the Camps of Women and Children in the Cape and Orange River Colonies., 601
To the Modder River with Methuen, 691
 Tobin, R. F., 1229
 Todd, Pamela, 1230
Toll for the Brave: The Tragedy of General Hector Macdonald, 883
Tommy Cornstalk, 3
 Tongoland, 3
Tour d'Afrique, de Paris a Lourenço-Marques, au camp des Boers, chasse et retour, 764
Towards Pretoria: A Record of the War Between Briton and Boer, to the Hoisting of the British Flag at Bloemfontein, 1030
Townshend of Kul, 53
Tragedy and Comedy of War Hospitals, The, 1151
Tragedy of Sir John French, The, 218
Tragedy of South Africa, The, 857
Transvaal, 35, 77, 87, 167, 198, 241, 281, 346, 397, 399, 475, 478, 493, 644, 655, 706, 746, 927, 981, 1046, 1076, 1333, 1337, 1342, 2-4, 7-10, 16-17, 21-22, 36
Transvaal and the Boers, The, 397
Transvaal Boer Speaking for Himself, The, 353
Transvaal Burgher Camps, South Africa, The, 1226
 "Transvaal en Britse Susereinteit, 1881-1884," 981
Transvaal et dans le Sud-Africain avec les attachés militaires, 361
Transvaal et la Chartered, Le, 855
Transvaal From Within, The, 399
Transvaal in War and Peace, 364
Transvaal Outlook, The, 1192
Transvaal Surrounded, The, 747
Transvaal Today, The, 35
 "Transvaal Trouble; How It Arose, The," 826
Transvaal War: Campaigning with the Durban Light Infantry, 930
Transvaal War, 1880-81. A Bibliography, The, 664
Transvaal War 1880-1, The, 89
 Trapido, Stanley, 811
 Tremearne, A.J.N., 1232
 Treves, Frederick, 1233-34, 1237
 Trevor, Tudor G., 1235
 Trew, Peter, 1235a
 Trichardt, S. P. E., 1236
 Trombley, Stephen, 1237
Trooper 8008 I.Y., 964
 Troup, Freda, 1238
True History of the War: Being the Official Despatches and Enclosures from the General Commanding-in-Chief of the Forces In South Africa, The, 1060
Truth About the Jameson Raid, The, 558
Truth About the Transvaal, The, 1076
Tugela River, 20, 25, 27-29, 31
 Tugman, H. St. J., 694
 Tullibardine, Marchioness of, 1239
 Turton, Robert Bell, 1240
Twee Jaren in den Boerenoorlog, 1217

- Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, Die*, 140
Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, Die, 1116
 "Tweede Vryheidsoorlog in wêreldverband, Die," 1117
Twelve Months With General Buller in South Africa, 848
Twenty-Five Years' Soldiering in South Africa, 254
Twenty-Five Years With Earl Haig, 1130
23 Jahre Sturm und Sonnenschein in Südafrika, 1106
23rd London Regiment, 1789-1919, The, 409
Twice Captured, 1085
Twice Interned: Transvaal 1901-02, Germany 1914-18, 620
 Twistleton, F., 1241
Two Years at the Front With the Mounted Infantry, 874
Two Years on Trek: Being Some Account of the Royal Sussex Regiment in South Africa, 348
Two Years with the Remount Commissions, 1135
Über den Krieg in Süd-Afrika, 1349
Uit die dagboek van 'n predikantsvrou, 16 Mei 1900 to 12 Januarie 1906, 904
Uit die Dagboek van 'n wildeboer, 759
Uit die donker woud, 98
Uit den tweeden vryheidsoorlog; schetsen en portretten, 1071
 Uitlanders, 201, 275, 678, 738, 741, 926, 1279, 3-10, 12
 Unger, Frederick William, 1242
 United States. Adjutant General's Office, 1243-4
 United States. War Department, 1245
Unofficial Despatches on the Boer War, 1288
Unter Buren, Briten, Bantus, 649
Unter dem deutschen roten Kreuz im Südafrikanischen Kriege, 715
Unter dem Roten Kreuz in Transvaal, 389
V.C. and D.S.O. A Complete Record of All Those Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of His Majesty's Naval, Military and Air Forces Who Have Been Awarded These Decorations From the Time of Their Institution, Which won the Distinction and With Many Biographical and Other Details, The, 273
 Vaal Krantz, Battle of, 142, 1048, 29
Vaillants Boers, Les, 1140
 Vallentin, W., 1246
 Van Coller, H. P., 1247
 Van Dalsen, J., 1248
 Van den Heever, C. M., 1249
 Van der Hoogt, C. W., 1250
 Van der Merwe, N. J., 1251
 Van Hartesveldt, Fred R., 1251a
 Van Jaarsveld, F. A., 897, 1252-4
 Van Niekerk, L. E., 1255
 Van Niekerk, M., 1256
 Van Oordt, J. F., 1257
 van Rensburg, A.P.J., 1254
 Van Schoor, M. C. E., 1258-9
 Van Velden, D. E., 683, 39
 Van Warmelo, Dietlof, 1260, 14
 Van Warmelo, Hansie, 1058
 Van Wijk, Theo, 897
 Van Wyk, Johannes, 1261
 Van Zyl, M. C., 1262
 Van Zyl, Nellie, 1026
 Veitch, E. Hardinge, 1263
Vengeance as a Policy in Afrikanerland, 335
Verdedigers en verdrukkers der afrikaansche vryheid, 967
Vereeniging, 736
Vereeniging het Nederlandsche Roods Kruis in den Transvaalsch-Englschen oorlog, De, 915
Vereeniging, Peace of, 560, 683, 865, 39
 Verner, Willoughby, 1264
 Verney, Ralph, 1265
 Vernon-Harcourt, F. C., 1267
Vestigia, 1048
Veterinary History of the War in South Africa, 1899-1902, A, 1158
 Vickers, Roy, 1268
Victorian Army & the Staff College, 1854-1914, The, 116
Victorian Military Campaigns, 115
 Viljoen, Ben, 837, 1269-70, 15
 "Villebois-Mareuil and the Boers," 797
 Villebois-Mareuil, Georges de, 258, 377, 384, 421, 674, 796-97, 1771-72
 Villiers, J. L. de., 1273, 1285
 Vincent, Howard, 1274-75
 Vindex, 1276
Vinnicombe's Trek, 286, 14
Vir vaderland, vryheid en eer: oorlogs-herinneringe van Wilhelm Mangold, 807
Vir vryheid en vir reg, 677
 Visagie, L. A., 1277
 Visscher, Joh, 1278
Volunteer Service Company (1st South Lancashire Regiment) in South Africa During the Boer War, The, 16
Vredesonderhandelinge tusschen Boer en Brit in Zuid Afrika, De, 683
Vrouleed: die lotge valle die vroue en kinders buite die konsentrasiekamp, 1024
 Vuilliamy, C. E., 1279

Vyfswemmers: die ontsnapping van Willie Steyn en vier medekrygsgerangenes mit Ceylon 1901, Die, 60

W. P. Schreiner: *A South African*, 1286

"W. T. Stead and the Boer War: The Irony of Idealism," 76

Wade, A. G., 1280

Wade, E. K., 1281

Walker, Eric A., 1282-86, 6

Wallace, D., 1287

Wallace, Edgar, 1288

Wallace, Robert L., 1289-90

Wallis, J.P.R., 1291

Walters, John, 1292

War Against the Boers: When is a War Not a War?, When It Is Carried on by Methods of Barbarism, as in South Africa, The, 809

War Against the Dutch Republics in South Africa, 931

War and Its Causes, The, 464

War and Policy: Essays by Spenser Wilkinson, 1322

War and the Arme Blanche, 230

War Horses, Present and Future, or Remount Life in South Africa, 430

War in Practice: Tactical and Other Lessons of the Campaign in South Africa, 39

War in South Africa, The, 1018

War in South Africa: A Narrative of the Anglo-Boer War From the Beginning of Hostilities to the Conclusion of Peace, 802

War in South Africa and the Dark Continent from Savagery to Civilization, 566

War in South Africa, in the Light of Facts and History, The, 1293

War in South Africa: Its Cause and Conduct, The, 339

War in South Africa: Its Causes and Effects, The, 605

War in South Africa, 1899-1900, The, 626

War Memoirs of Commandant Ludwig Krause, The, 699

War Notes: The Diary of Colonel de Villebois-Mareuil from November 24, 1899 to March 7, 1900, 1271

"War of Abraham Esau 1899-1901: Martyrdom, Myth and Folk Memory in Calvinia, South Africa, The," 910

War Office, 21, 501-13, 726, 777, 789, 1178, 1205

War Office, The Army, and the Empire, The, 21

War Record of the York and Lancaster Regiment, 675

War Sketches in Colour, 1181

War Termination: Why Does a State Decide to

Stop Fighting?, 367

War to Date (March 1, 1900), The, 1104

War Without Glamour: Women's Experiences Written by Themselves, 603

War's Brighter Side: The Story of 'The Friend' Newspaper Edited by the Correspondents with Lord Roberts's Forces, March-April, 1900, 1031

Ward, C. H. Dudley, 217

Warchope, Andrew, 45, 336, 24-25

Warner, Philip, 1294

Warren, Charles, 250, 309, 1036, 1334, 14, 27-29

Warwick, Peter, 1295-96, 13-14, 18, 39

Waters, R. S., 1297

Waters, W.H.H., 1018

Waterston, Jane Elizabeth, 79

Waterval, 30

Watkins, Owen Spencer, 1298

Watkins, Yeardley J., 1299

Watkins-Pitchford, Herbert, 1300

Watson, J.N.P., 1301

Watson, William, 1302

Watteville, H. de, 1303

Wauchope, A. G., 1304

Wavell, Archibald, 1305

weapons, 443, 542, 545, 1329, 1335-36, 1339, 12, 19, 26

Weaver, Lawrence, 1306

Webster, F.A.M., 1307

Weeber, E. J., 1308-09

"Weg na die See, Die," 706

Weir, Charles, 1310

Wernher, Julius, 10

Wessels, Andre, 1311-12

West Pointer With the Boers, A, 105

Westlake, Ray, 1313

Wetton, Thomas Charles, 1314

What I Remember, 383, 15

What I Saw in South Africa, September and October, 786

Whetherly, W. S., 1221

Whigham, H. J., 1315-16

White, George, 248, 358, 20-21, 26-27

"White Man's Burden"? Imperial Wars in the 1890's, The," 731

Whiteorne, A. C., 1317

Who Ought to Win, Oom Paul or Queen Victoria?, 1033

Why Kruger Made War, 190

Wigmore, Lionel, 1318

Wilde, R. H., 1319, 6

Wilkinson, Frank, 1320

Wilkinson, Spenser, 1321-22

Wilkinson-Latham, Christopher, 1323

Willan, Brian, 1324-25

William II, 4, 6

- Williams, Basil, 1326-29
 Williams, Charles, 1330
 Williams, Eric, 1331
 Williams, Godfrey Trevelyan, 1332
 Williams, Hugh, 1333
 Williams, Watkin W., 1334, 29
 Wilson, C. H., 1335-36
 Wilson, David MacKay, 1337
 Wilson, Herbert Wrigley, 1338-39
 Wilson, Sarah, 1057-58, 1340
 Wilson, W. D., 1341
 Wilson, W. L., 1342
 Winburg, 1297, 1307
 Winkler, Henry R., 1343
Winnowed Memories, 1354
Winston Churchill: Soldier, Statesman, Artist, 1139
Winston S. Churchill War Correspondent, 1895-1900, 1358
Winston S. Churchill's Philosophy of Empire, 939
 Wisser, John P., 1344
 Witwatersrand, 3
With a Show Through Southern Africa, 360
With 'Bobs' and Kruger: Experiences and Observations of an American War Correspondent in the Field With Both Armies, 1242
With Boer and Britisher in the Transvaal, 471
With Both Armies in South Africa, 305
 "With De Wet," 979
With General French and the Cavalry in South Africa, 461
With Lord Methuen in South Africa February 1900 to June 1901 Being Some Notes on the War With Extracts From Letters and Diaries, 440
With Lumsden's Horse Agin the Boers, 180
With Methuen's Column on an Ambulance Train, 92
With Milner in South Africa, 287
With Number Three: Surgical & Medical; and New Poems. Also Letters from Julian Ralph, Charles E. Hands and Douglas Story, 694
With Our Soldiers at the Front, 661
With Paget's Horse to the Front, 1077
 "With Plumer to the Relief of Mafeking, by One of His Troopers," 1346
With Rimington, 975
With Rundle's Eighth Division in South Africa, 1314
With Seven Generals in the Boer War, 994
 "With Smuts on Commando," 1045
With Steyn and De Wet, 980
With Sword and Statute, 617
With the Army Service Corps in South Africa, 1053
 "With the Artillery in Natal," 1336
With the Boer Forces, 593
With the Boers, 152
 "With the Boers around Mafeking 1899-1900," 1345
With the Boers in the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1880-1, 927
With the Border Volunteers to Pretoria, 615
With 'The Buffs' in South Africa, 37
With the Central Column in South Africa, 82
With the Eighth Division, 875
With the Flag to Pretoria, 1339
With the 4th Battalion the Cameronians (Scottish Rifles) in South Africa, 266
With the Fourth New Zealand Rough Riders, 888
With the Gordon Highlanders to the Boer War and Beyond: The Story of Captain Lachlan Gordon-Duff, 468
With the Green Howards in South Africa, 387
With the Guards' Brigade From Bloemfontein to Koomati Poort and Back, 769
With the Guns in South Africa, 891
With the Imperial Light Infantry Through Natal, 122
With the Inniskilling Dragoons, 1299
With the Inniskilling Dragoons: The Record of a Cavalry Regiment During the Boer War, 1899-1902, 1370
With the Irregulars in the Transvaal and Zululand, 1231
With the Mounted Infantry in South Africa Being Side-Lights on the Boer Campaign, 283
With the Naval Brigade in Natal 1899-1900, 175
With the New Zealanders at the Front, 1241
With the Royal Canadians, 154
With the Scottish Rifle Volunteers at the Front, 1159
With the Scottish Yeomanry, 325
With the Warwickshire Yeomanry in South Africa, 627
Witnesses to War: Personal Documents of the Anglo-Boer War From the Collections of the South African Library, 1112
 Witton, George, 1347-8
 Wojcik, Carl, 1349
Wolf that Never Sleeps, The, 84
 Wolseley, Lord, 380, 412, 734, 829, 1350, 30
Woman's Part in a Revolution, A, 559
Woman's Wanderings and Trials During the Anglo-Boer War, 314
 Wood, A. A., 1351
 Wood, Clement, 1352

- Wood, Elliott, 1353
 Wood, Evelyn, 380, 1330, 1354
 Wood, Walter, 1355, 1356
 Woodgate, Edward, 28
 Woodhouse, C. M., 756, 1357, 6
 Woods, Frederick, 1358
 Woollright, H. H., 1359
 Woolseley, Lord, 300, 412, 734, 829
Words By an Eyewitness: The Struggle in Natal, 751
Work of the Ninth Division in South Africa in 1901, The, 255
Work of War Artists in South Africa, The, 213
 Wormser, J. A., 1360
 Worsfold, W. B., 1361
Worsteljare: heinneringe van ds. A. P. Burger, veldprediker by die republikeinse magte tydens die Tweede Vryheidsoorlog, 171
 Worthington, Larry, 1362
 Wortley, R. M. Stuart, 851-52
 Woulds, J., 302
Wrecking the Empire, 1062
 Wrench, J.E.L., 1363
 Wulfsohn, L., 1364
 Wulfsohn, Lionel, 1365
 Wyll, H. C., 1366-8
 Wyndham, George, 789
 Wyndham, Guy, 789
 Wyndham Malet, 1369
 Yardley, J. Watkins, 1370
Yellow Man Looks On, The, 233
Yeoman Service Being the Diary of the Wife of an Imperial Yeomanry Officer During the Boer War, 1067
Yeomanry Cavalry or Mounted Infantry, 1066
Yeomanry of Devon, The, 417
Yeoman's Letters, A, 1083
 Young, Filson., 1371
 Young, P. J., 1372
 Young, Peter, 1131
Young South African: A Memoir of Ferrar Reginald Mostyn Cleaver, Advocate and Veldcornet, A, 244
 Younghusband, Francis., 1373
 Younghusband, George, 1374-5
 Yule, James, 21
 Zand River, Battle of, 135
 Zeigesar, Haller von, 748
 Zepper, G. L., 1376
Zes maanden bij die commando's, 608
 Zietlre, C., 1377
Zuid-Afrikaansche oorlog: historisch gedenkboek, De, 1376
 Zulu, 2
 Zululand, 3
 Zyl, Paul Hendrik Stefanus van, 1378

About the Author

FRED R. VAN HARTESVELDT is Professor of History at Fort Valley State University. He is the author of *The Battles of the Somme: Historiography and Annotated Bibliography* (Greenwood, 1996) and *The Dardanelles Campaign, 1915: Historiography and Annotated Bibliography* (Greenwood, 1997).